



GUIDE



New

Hello!

& Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors

FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

للفصل الأول الثانوي



تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلي

طبعة
جديدة
طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات
الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣-٢٠٢٤

1st
Sec.
2024

SECOND TERM
عام - أزهري

CONTENTS



قاموس المعاصر
الناطق

Module 3

Education

UNIT 7

Health and safety page 9

UNIT 8

Robots page 50

UNIT 9

A good education page 96

Revision 3

..... page 140

Module 4

The world of work

UNIT 10

What's your job ? page 146

UNIT 11

Amazing people page 194

UNIT 12

Hard work page 234

Revision 4

..... page 270

Monthly assessments

..... page 274

STORY

Treasure Island

page 280

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الثانوي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٣/٢٠٢٤ Second Term

Months	New Hello! English for Secondary Schools Year One (SB+WB)
February	Units 7 + 8
March	Unit 8 cont. + Unit 9 + Revision 3 + Unit 10
April	Unit 10 cont. + Unit 11 + Unit 12
May	General Revision + Final Tests



UNIT 7

Health and safety

SB pages 6 : 15

WB pages 86 : 91

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

✪ **Reading :** Leaflet about hygiene around the home

✪ **Writing :** An email giving advice

✪ **Listening :** How to give first aid

✪ **Speaking :** Giving advice

✪ **Language :** Should/shouldn't, must/mustn't

✪ **Critical thinking :** Interpreting research : the importance of hygiene



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

allergy(n)	حساسية	dust(ed) (n - v)	غبار - يلفظ الغبار
at least	على الأقل	emergency	خَدَمَات الطَّوَارِئ
bacteria(n)	بكتريا	services(n)	إسعافات أولية
bedding(n)	أغطية الفراش	first aid(n)	ينمو - يزداد - يزرع
bin(n)	سلة مهملات	grow - grew -	
breath(n)	النفس	grown (v)	النظافة (الشخصية)
breathe(v)	يتنفس	hygiene(n)	بَحْث - يجري بَحْث
CPR =	إنعاش قلبيّ رئويّ	research(ed) (n - v)	يستجيب - يجب
cardiopulmonary		respond(ed) (v)	تربة (زراعية)
resuscitation		soil(n)	
danger(n)	خطر		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

available(adj)	مُتاح - متوافر	medical(adj)	طبيّ
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنّب - يتحاشى	messy(adj)	فوضوي / غير مُرتّب
basic (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي	nearby(adj)	قريب / مجاور
blog(n)	مُدوّنَة على الإنترنت	pet(n)	حيوان أليف
board(n)	لوح - لوحة - سطح	pollution(n)	التلوث
bottom(n)	أسفل - قاع - نعل	possibility(n)	إمكانية
cable(n)	كابل (سلك توصيل)	properly(adv)	جيداً - بشكل مناسب
cause(d) (v - n)	يسبب - سبب	question(ed) (v)	يتحقق من صحّة - يناقش
check(ed) (v)	يفحص - يتحقق من	regularly(adv)	بانتظام
chop(ped) (v)	يَقطع	remove(d) (v)	يُزيل
cleaner (n)	مادة مُنظّفة - عامل نظافة	replace(d) (v)	يستبدل - يحل محل
contact(ed) (n - v)	ملامسة / مخالطة - تواصل - يتواصل	rule(n)	قاعدة
contain(ed) (v)	يحتوي علي	safety(n)	الآمان
cough(ed) (v)	يَسْغَل - يَكُح	scientific(adj)	علمي
dirt(n)	قذارة / اتساخ	separate (d) (adj - v)	مفصل - يفصل
disease(n)	مَرَض	sneeze(d) (v)	يعطس
DOs and DON'Ts	الأوامر والمحظورات	soapy(adj)	به صابون - صابوني

electrical(adj)	كهربائي	special(adj)	خاص
equipment(n)	مُجَدَّات / أجهزة	sponge(n)	إسفنجة
extra(adj)	إضافي	spreading(n)	انتشار
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع - يلي - يلتزم بـ	suggestion(n)	اقتراح
gardening(n)	العمل في البستان	tissue(n)	منديل ورقي
gloves(n)	قُفَّاز (جوانتي)	topic(n)	موضوع - فكرة
ingredients(n)	مكونات - عناصر	trust(ed) (v - n)	يثق بـ - الثقة
interpret(ed) (v)	يُفسِّر - يترجم	warm(ed)(adj - v)	دافئ - يَدْفئ
law(n)	قانون	waste(d) (n - v)	فضلات - يهدر / يبدد
leaflet(n)	كُتَيْب - نشرة		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
allergy(n) الحساسية	a medical condition حالة طبية in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful مؤلم because you have eaten or touched a particular substance مادة معينة
bacteria(n) البكتريا	very small living things that cause diseases امراض
bedding(n) اغطية الفراش	sheets ملايات, covers أغطية etc. that you put on a bed
breathe(v) يتنفس	to take air in and out of your body
CPR الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	= Cardiopulmonary resuscitation : something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body
danger(n) الخطر	the possibility إمكانية of being hurt or killed
DOs and DON'Ts الأوامر والمحظورات	things that you should and should not do in a particular محدد situation
dust(n) الغبار	dry powder مسحوق consisting of extremely small bits of dirt that is in buildings on furniture, floors etc. if they are not kept clean
emergency services(n) خَدَمَات الطوارئ	basic medical help given quickly
first aid(n) إسعاف أولية	simple medical treatment علاج that is given as soon as possible to someone who is injured مُصاب or who suddenly becomes ill
hygiene(n) النظافة (الشخصية)	keeping yourself and the things around you clean
research(n) بحث / أبحاث	studying something to find new facts about it

respond(v)	يستجيب	to do something when someone talks to you
soil(n)	التربة	the top layer of the earth in which plants grow

Exercise On Vocabulary

● Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- I have a/an to certain foods, so I can't eat any of them.
a. emergency b. fluency c. allergy d. experience
(منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
- To stay healthy, always remember to change your bedding twice a week.
a. at last b. lastly c. at least d. at most
(غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
- My father felt pain in his stomach because of a harmful type of
a. dusty b. wrapper c. bacteria d. bacterial
(جرجا ٢٠٢٣)
- The on the book shows that it hasn't been opened for a long time.
a. dust b. bacteria c. hygiene d. aid
(زفتي ٢٠٢٣)
- Warm, wet places like a kitchen sponge are the places where bacteria like to in.
a. know b. grow c. blow d. invest
(إطسا ٢٠٢٣)
- We should change the regularly to avoid infection.
a. service b. leaflet c. blog d. bedding
(مغاغة ٢٠٢٣)
- Open the window, please! The children are unable to because of the smoke.
a. sneeze b. skin c. blanket d. breathe
(أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
- When my father's breathing stopped, I did him to make him breathe again.
a. CRC b. CBC c. CPR d. MBC
(الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
- The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt about
a. danger b. first aid c. hygiene d. first ad
(شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
- A healthy lifestyle includes having a nutritious diet and good personal
a. statement b. emergency c. fantasy d. hygiene
(القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)
- All the doctors are hopeful that the patient will to the new treatment.
a. respond b. ruin c. reply d. answer
(لنوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
- The in our field is very fertile. It is suitable for growing vegetables.
a. seal b. sail c. soil d. sale
(دكو ٢٠٢٣)

13. Doctors ask patients to take a deep while being examined. (ارشيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. breeze b. breathless c. breathe d. breath

2 Important Vocabulary

14. We can't make a cake without sugar. It is an important (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
a. tool b. compound c. ingredient d. factor

15. The government is trying to improve measures on all railways.
a. safety b. risk c. danger d. threat

(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

16. Air has reached dangerous levels in some cities. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
a. pollution b. population c. expression d. evacuation

17. We must book in advance. There is only a limited number of tickets

(المرج ٢٠٢٣)

.....
a. possible b. avoidable c. unavailable d. available

18. I think it's a of money to buy this expensive car. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)
a. waist b. benefit c. waste d. challenge

19. Try to contact with people who have infectious diseases. أمراض معدية.
a. avoid b. contain c. interpret d. separate

20. He used a sharp knife to the meat.

a. chop b. warn c. explain d. offer

21. Hygiene reduces the of being ill.

a. help b. link c. possibility d. suggestion

22. My bag everything needed for the trip.

a. avoids b. contains c. interprets d. separates

23. We do not advice from people we love and respect.

a. question b. sneeze c. cause d. remove

24. I believe what you say because I you.

a. hate b. doubt c. distrust d. trust

25. My sister wears when she does the washing up to protect her hands.

a. socks b. gloves c. slippers d. bottoms

26. Smoking much harm to your health.

a. questions b. sneezes c. causes d. removes

27. No one is allowed to shout at others in our house. It is an important family

a. rule b. ruler c. role d. member

28. A patient needs help.

a. surprising b. strange c. separate d. medical

29. When my children play in their room, it becomes

a. proper b. messy c. regular d. soapy

30. I her silence صمت as anger.

a. avoided b. contained c. interpreted d. separated

3 Definitions

31. The word means the possibility of being killed or hurt.
a. hunger b. danger c. anger d. vinegar
(Tablet Exam 2022)
32. Which of the following means "the things that you should and should not do in a particular situation"?
a. DOs and DON'Ts b. Do and does
c. Pros and cons d. Ups and downs
33. is the top layer of the earth in which plants grow.
a. The earth b. Soil c. Rock d. Stone
34. are very small living things that cause diseases.
a. Bacterium b. Bacteria c. Cells d. Tissues
35. To is to take air in and out of your body.
a. evacuate b. take c. breath d. breathe
36. A is something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body.
a. UK b. CPR c. USA d. UN
37. means studying something to find new facts about it.
a. A research b. Research c. Report d. Helmet
38. To is to do something when someone talks to you.
a. offer b. chop c. contain d. respond
39. is a medical condition in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful because you have eaten or touched a particular substance.
a. Aid b. Allergy c. Asleep d. Damage
40. The word means sheets, covers etc. that you put on a bed.
a. bedding b. response c. danger d. argument

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

carry	bacteria	تنقل العدوي البكتيرية	a shower	يستحم
contain	bacteria	تحتوي على بكتيريا	have	تحتوي على بكتيريا
do	CPR	يقوم بعمل الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي		لديه حساسية من
feel	clean	يبدو نظيفاً	keep	يحافظ علي ... نظيفاً
follow	the rules	يتبع القواعد	make	يجعل ... أكثر صعوبة
get	dirty	يتسخ	post	يلشر ... على الإنترنت

give	advice	يلصح	spend	time with	يقضي وقتاً مع
	an extra clean	يقوم بعملية نظافة إضافية	stay	clean	يحافظ على نظافته
	first aid	يقوم بعمل الإسعافات الأولية	take	air in and out	يتنفس

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
available	مُتاح - متوافر
danger	الخطر
dirty	متسخ
follow	يتبع / يلتزم بـ
interpret	يُفسّر / يوضح
messy	فوضوي / غير مُرتّب
respond	يستجيب - يتجاوب مع
respond	يجيب - يرد علي
safe	آمن
safety	الأمان

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
available	غير متاح - مشغول
bottom	قاع
danger	الخطر
follow	يتبع / يلتزم بـ
interpret	يُفسّر / يوضح
messy	فوضوي / غير مُرتّب
respond	يستجيب - يتجاوب مع

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

allergy		
allergy(n)	حساسية	- I have allergy to wool.
allergen(n)	مادة مُسبّبة للحساسية	- To me, wool is an allergen.
allergic(adj)	لديه حساسية	- I am allergic to wool.
bacteria		
bacteria(n)	بكتيريا	- Some bacteria are useful.
bacteriology(n)	علم البكتيريا	- He studies bacteriology.
bacterial(adj)	بكتيري	- She has a bacterial infection. عدوي

breathe		
breathe(v)	يَتَنَفَّس	- Healthy people breathe normally.
breath(n)	النَّفَس	- Healthy people have normal breath.
breathing(n)	التَّنَفُّس	- Breathing provides the body with oxygen.
dust		
dust(v)	يلفّض التراب	- I dust the windows regularly.
dust(n)	الغُبَار / التراب	- I remove dust from the windows regularly.
dusty(adj)	مُغْبَر / مُتْرِب	- The windows are dusty. I need to clean them.
danger		
endanger(v)	يُعْزِض للخطر	- Never endanger your life.
danger(n)	الخطر	- Never put yourself in danger.
dangerous(adj)	خطير	- Never put yourself in dangerous situations.
grow		
grow(v)	يزرع	- We grow potatoes in this field.
grow(v)	ينمو / يترعرع	- Potatoes grow well in this field.
growth(n)	النمو / الزيادة	- The growth of potatoes in this field is good.
growing(adj)	متزايد / نامٍ	- There's a growing interest in using technology for education.
respond		
respond(v)	يستجيب	- She responded to my email.
response(n)	استجابة	- I received her response to my letter.

5

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a home for / to	موطن لـ	No more dust!	لا مزيد من الغبار
as often as you can	كثيراً قدر المُستطاع	once a week	مرة في الأسبوع
breathe a word	يفشي سر	research into hygiene	بحث عن النظافة الشخصية
contact with pets	مخالطة الحيوانات الأليفة	do research on the same topic	يقوم بأبحاث على نفس الموضوع
full of	مملوء بـ	scientific research	البحث العلمي
in an emergency	في حالة الطوارئ		
it's most important	من المهم جداً		
stop the bacteria spreading	يمنع انتشار البكتيريا		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	يلتمي إلي / - يخص	protect ... against / from	يحمي ... من
come back	يعود / يرجع	respond to	يستجيب لـ / يتجاوب مع
drink from	يشرب من	return from	يعود من
find about	يعرف عن	shout at	يصيح في (يزعق لـ)
go into	يدخل	take ... off	يخلع / يزلع (ملابس / ريش / شعر)
lie on	يستلقي علي	take off	تُقلع الطائرة
live on	يعيش على - يتغذى علي	talk to	يتحدث إلي / مع
move ... away from	ينقل ... بعيداً عن	move around	يتجول في أرجاء

7 لاحظ الفرق Clear the confusion

allergy / sensitivity

- **allergy (n)** حساسية
 - I have an allergy to wool. الصوف.
- **sensitivity (n)** الحساسية (تخص أي عضو بالجسم / المشاعر)
 - Sama has sensitivity to milk.
- **sensitive (adj)** شخص حساس
 - A sensitive child would cry if you shout at them.

bacteria / virus

- **bacteria (n)** بكتيريا (كائنات حية دقيقة منها الضار ومنها النافع)
 - This disease is caused by a type of bacteria.
- **viruses (n)** فيروسات (كائنات دقيقة تسبب أمراض خطيرة)
 - This disease is caused by the AIDS virus.

miss / Miss / mess / messy

- **miss (v)** يفتقد - يفقد / يفوته
 - I miss my grandmother very much. أفتقد
 - Ali missed the school bus. فاتته
- **Miss (n)** أنسة (لقب لـ (غير) المتزوجة يوضع قبل اسم العائلة)
 - Sama received a call from Miss Zaki.
- **mess (n)** فوضي - لخبطة
 - Everything is on the floor. What a mess!
- **messy (adj)** فوضوي - ملخبط
 - Why don't you tidy your messy room?

properly / property

- **properly (adv)** بشكل صحيح - بطريقة ملائمة
 - You must do your jobs properly.
- **property (n)** ممتلكات - أملاك
 - The thief stole some property.

General Exercise on Vocabulary Study

- ☆ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "Parents give their children security and love." The synonyms of "security" are
 (سوق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. protection b. danger c. sorrow
 d. safety e. honesty
2. Don't a word of that to anyone. It is a top-secret conversation between us.
 (سوق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. breathe b. wrap c. hear
 d. listen e. say
3. Wearing a helmet reduces the of head injuries.
 (سوق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. risk b. safety c. danger
 d. security e. health
4. Check all your electrical regularly to avoid electric accidents.
 (لخص ٢٠٢٣)
 a. equipment b. settlements c. requirements
 d. experiments e. cables
5. Don't worry! These toys are; they aren't dangerous.
 (نبا القمح ٢٠٢٣)
 a. difficult b. secure c. serious
 d. safe e. heavy
6. Your room is messy. It is not
 (نفر شكر ٢٠٢٣)
 a. untidy b. needy c. clean
 d. former e. tidy
7. "She found the keys at the bottom of her handbag." The antonyms of the word "bottom" are
 (منتزه اول ٢٠٢٣)
 a. back b. base c. top
 d. rule e. peak
8. "You have to follow your goal." The synonyms of "follow" are
 (بت غمر ٢٠٢٣)
 a. chase b. leave c. pursue
 d. miss e. lose
9. A pile of plates was left in the kitchen sink.
 (جع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. filthy b. clean c. clear
 d. dirty e. care
10. "The main reason for living here is the good weather." The synonyms of the word "main" are
 (نزهة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. major b. secondary c. minor
 d. basic e. dependable

11. Dirty places bacteria.

- a. have b. spend c. contain
d. stay e. make

12. When you breathe, you take air and

- a. up b. down c. off
d. in e. out

• ☆ **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. On returning from our long holiday, the house didn't feel clean since everything was (بطس ٢٠٢٣)

- a. dust b. dusty c. rust d. sparkling

2. People who have an allergy always if they smell smoke. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. sneeze b. freeze c. breeze d. tweeze

3. My daughter is to wool. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. allergic b. optimistic c. paramedic d. hygienic

4. Make sure that the place does not dirty.

- a. put b. get c. have d. make

5. The first aid you have to the injured boy has saved his life.

- a. kept b. said c. given d. felt

6. This place clean.

- a. keeps b. says c. gives d. feels

7. "....." is to ignore as argument is to agreement.

- a. Respond b. Package c. Tidy d. Orderly

8. Smoking is for your health.

- a. endangers b. danger c. dangerous d. dangerously

9. Keeping clean stops the bacteria

- a. to spread b. to spreading c. spreading d. spread

10. Factories that cause pollution must be moved cities.

- a. away from b. away c. into d. in

11. They have done important research how to avoid catching coronavirus.

- a. for b. of c. to d. into

12. The engine of my car does not work

- a. proper b. properly c. property d. a & c

13. He has to milk products.

- a. allergy b. sensitivity c. a & b d. sensibility

1 Reading Texts

Lesson 2 SB page 8

Hygiene⁽¹⁾ at home :**Seven DOs and DON'Ts⁽²⁾ for a healthy life****1. Take your shoes off⁽³⁾**

The **bottoms⁽⁴⁾** of your shoes can carry a lot of bacteria into your house. You should always take your shoes off at the door.

**2. No more⁽⁵⁾ dust⁽⁶⁾**

Dust quickly comes back again after you've cleaned. However, dust can make it difficult to breathe and it can **cause⁽⁷⁾ skin⁽⁸⁾** problems. You should clean your house or flat as often as you can.

3. Wash the kitchen floor

Food and drinks can easily fall on the kitchen **floor⁽⁹⁾**. You should clean your kitchen floor **at least⁽¹⁰⁾ once⁽¹¹⁾** a week. You should use warm, **soapy water⁽¹²⁾** so you can **remove⁽¹³⁾** all the bacteria.

**4. Change your bedding**

We spend a lot of our time **asleep⁽¹⁴⁾** in bed. You should change your **bedding⁽¹⁵⁾** at least once every week so bacteria can't live in it.

5. Wash your hands after spending time with your pets

Research⁽¹⁶⁾ has **shown⁽¹⁷⁾** that **contact⁽¹⁸⁾** with **pets⁽¹⁹⁾** early in life can protect you against **allergies⁽²⁰⁾**. But animals can also carry bacteria. If you touch your pet, you shouldn't touch anything **else⁽²¹⁾** until you've washed your hands.

- (1) النظافة الشخصية
- (2) الأوامر والمحظورات
- (3) اخلع حذاءك
- (4) أسفل - أدنى
- (5) لا مزيد من
- (6) الغبار
- (7) يُسبب
- (8) الجلد
- (9) الأرضية
- (10) على الأقل
- (11) مرة واحدة
- (12) ماء بالصابون
- (13) يُزال
- (14) نائم
- (15) أغطية الفراش
- (16) البحث
- (17) يُظهر
- (18) ملامسة
- (19) الحيوانات الأليفة
- (20) الحساسية
- (21) آخر

6. Stay clean in the garden

You should wear **gloves**⁽²²⁾ if you're going to touch **soil**⁽²³⁾ in the garden because it can **contain**⁽²⁴⁾ bacteria. You should wash your hands when you've finished **gardening**⁽²⁵⁾ too.

7. Don't forget to keep your bins clean

A lot of bacteria can **grow**⁽²⁶⁾ in your **bin**⁽²⁷⁾. You shouldn't leave your bin open.

Hygiene rules around the world

In the **UK**⁽²⁸⁾, you must put your food **waste**⁽²⁹⁾ in a **separate**⁽³⁰⁾ bin. In Thailand, you must take your shoes off before going into someone's house.

In the USA, you should **offer**⁽³¹⁾ to help clean up after dinner at a friend's house.

(22) قفاز (جواني)

(23) التربة

(24) يحتوي على

(25) العمل في البستان

(26) يلمو

(27) النسلة

(28) المملكة المتحدة (بريطانيا)

(29) فضلات

(30) منفصل

(31) يعرض

How clean is your home?

Lesson 1 WB page 86

Most people like to keep their homes clean, but there are many places that we don't think about and so they become full of **dirt**⁽¹⁾ and bacteria.



Research shows that the **deep**⁽²⁾ **cuts**⁽³⁾ in **chopping boards**⁽⁴⁾ are often a home for bacteria because people don't clean them **properly**⁽⁵⁾. Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things, so phones, tablets and computer keyboards often have a lot of bacteria on them, too. **However**⁽⁶⁾, bacteria **really**⁽⁷⁾ love warm, **wet**⁽⁸⁾ places and so your kitchen **sponge**⁽⁹⁾ probably has more bacteria than anything else in your home.

Experts say that it's most important to wash our hands **regularly**⁽¹⁰⁾. If we **touch**⁽¹¹⁾ animals, we should wash our hands, and we need to use a **tissue**⁽¹²⁾ when we **sneeze**⁽¹³⁾ to stop the bacteria **spreading**⁽¹⁴⁾ in the air. They suggest using plastic chopping boards and giving them an **extra**⁽¹⁵⁾ clean once a week. We should **replace**⁽¹⁶⁾ kitchen sponges every two weeks, and we can buy **special**⁽¹⁷⁾ **cleaners**⁽¹⁸⁾ for phones, tablets and computers.

(1) قذارة - اتساخ

(2) عميق - غائر

(3) جروح

(4) ألواح التقطيع

(5) جيدًا - بشكل مناسب

(6) مع ذلك

(7) حقًا

(8) مبلل - رطب

(9) إسفنجة

(10) بانتظام

(11) يلمس

(12) منديل ورقي

(13) يعطس

(14) انتشار

(15) إضافي

(16) يستبدل

(17) خاص

(18) منظفات

2 Listening Text

Lesson 1 SB page 6

Nurse : Today, I'm going to tell you what to do if you find a person who is **lying on the ground**⁽¹⁾ and not moving. Call the **emergency services**⁽²⁾ **immediately**⁽³⁾. Then you must check if there are any **dangers**⁽⁴⁾ near to the person, like **electrical cables**⁽⁵⁾. If there are any dangers, move the person away from them.



- (1) راقد / مستلقى على الأرض
- (2) خدمات الطوارئ
- (3) فوراً
- (4) مخاطر
- (5) كابلات كهربائية
- (6) يستجيب
- (7) تنفس
- (8) يقوم بعمل انعاش قلبي رئوي

When you know they're safe, shout "Hello !" or "Wake up!" and see if the person **responds**⁽⁶⁾. If the person doesn't respond to you, put your face next to their face so you can check their **breathing**⁽⁷⁾. If the person isn't breathing, the emergency services will tell you how to **do CPR**⁽⁸⁾ so you can help the person start to breathe again.

3 Video script section

Health and safety

We need food to live, but if our food isn't prepared **hygienically**⁽¹⁾, we can have some **serious health problems**⁽²⁾. That's the reason why food **hygiene**⁽³⁾ is very important, both in restaurants and shops, and at home.

Before you start cooking, you must wash your hands, so that there's no **bacteria**⁽⁴⁾ on them.

If you have long hair, you should **tie it up**⁽⁵⁾ so no hairs will go into the food you're cooking.

After that, you can take your **ingredients**⁽⁶⁾, knives and other equipment and start preparing the food. You must wash fruit and vegetables first. You mustn't touch the **metal part**⁽⁷⁾ of the knife while you're using it.

- (1) صحياً / بطريقة صحية
- (2) مشاكل صحية خطيرة
- (3) النظافة / الصحة العامة
- (4) بكتيريا
- (5) يربط
- (6) مكونات
- (7) الجزء المعدني

PART IV LANGUAGE

should / shouldn't - must / mustn't

1 should / shouldn't + inf.

١ تُستخدم لتقديم النصيحة :

- ex. - You should work hard.
- You shouldn't get up late.

٢ تُستخدم في صيغة الاستفهام لطلب النصيحة :

- ex. - Should I take a rest after school ?
- What should I do to get high marks ?

٣ تُستخدم لعمل اقتراحات :

- ex. - You should travel by plane. It's much faster.

٤ تُستخدم لإبداء الرأي الشخصي :

- ex. - She should join a sports club. It will help her keep fit.

٥ لاحظ بناء الجملة في الصيغ المختلفة :

- ex. - Sama should be careful to pass the driving test. (إثبات)
- Sama shouldn't be careless to pass the driving test. (نفي)
- Should Sama be careful to pass the driving test ? (سؤال بهل)
- Why should Sama be careful ? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

٦ لاحظ بناء الجملة في المبني للمجهول :

Obj. مفعول + should / shouldn't + be + p.p.

- ex. - You should revise your essay again. (معلوم)
- Your essay should be revised again. (مجهول)

2 must / mustn't + inf.

١ تعبر عن قاعدة عامة أو نص القانون :

- ex. - Drivers must follow traffic rules.
- You mustn't smoke in hospitals.

٢ تعبر عن ضرورة أو إلزام من داخل الشخص مع (I / We) :

- ex. - I must go and buy some bread before the bakery is closed.
- We mustn't go out without telling our parents.

٣ تستخدم في الدعوة القوية أو التحذير من شيء خطير (مع الأشخاص المقربين) :

- ex. - You must come and try mum's food. I'm sure you will like it. (دعوة)
- You mustn't make friends with this bad person. (تحذير)

٤ تستخدم في تقديم نصيحة قوية لشخص مقرب :

- ex. - You must stop smoking. It's destroying your health.
- You mustn't smoke. It's harmful for health.

٥ لاحظ بناء الجملة في الصيغ المختلفة :

- ex. - You must stop using your mobile while driving. (إثبات)
 - You mustn't use your mobile while driving. (نفي)
 - Must we stop using our mobile while driving ? (سؤال بهل)
 - What must we stop doing while driving ? (سؤال به أداة استفهام)

٦ لاحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Obj. مفعول + must / mustn't + be + p.p.

- ex. - Everyone must follow the traffic rules. (معلوم)
 - The traffic rules must be followed (by everyone). (مجهول)

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

١ تستخدم (should have + p.p.) في لوم شخص على عدم فعل شيء كان ينبغي أن يفعله :

- I blame you for not cleaning your room.
 = You should have cleaned your room.

٢ تستخدم (shouldn't have + p.p.) في لوم شخص على فعل شيء كان ينبغي ألا يفعله :

- I don't think it was a good idea to get up so late.
 = You shouldn't have got up so late.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ طرق أخرى لإعطاء النصيحة :

Something to do

- You ought to + inf.
- It's better to + inf.
- It's desirable to + inf.
- It's advisable to + inf.
- I advise you to + inf.
- My advice to you is to + inf.
- You ('d) had better + inf.
- It will be a good idea to + inf.
- It would be sensible to + inf.
- The best thing to do is to + inf.
- If I were you, I'd + inf.
- It would be better if + ماضى بسيط

Something not to do

- You ought not to + inf.
- It's better not to + inf.
- It's undesirable to + inf.
- It's inadvisable to + inf.
- I advise you not to + inf.
- My advice to you is not to + inf.
- You had better not + inf.
- It will be a good idea not to + inf.
- It would be insensible to + inf.
- The best thing to do is not to + inf.
- If I were you, I wouldn't + inf.
- It wouldn't be better if + ماضى بسيط

- You should do your best to pass the exam.
- = It is advisable to do your best to pass the exam.
- You shouldn't eat too much food.
- = If I were you, I wouldn't eat too much food.

٢ لاحظ الطرق المختلفة للتعبير عن الضرورة :

1 have to / has to + inf. مصدر.....

- تعبر (have to) عن الزام خارجي مثل الالتزام بالقوانين أو القواعد في مواقف وحالات محددة (أي لا يوجد اختيار للفرد) :

- I have to arrive at work at 9 sharp. My boss is very strict صارم.
- He has to pass his exams or the university will not accept him.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have / has to) هو (don't / doesn't have to) :

- don't / doesn't + have to + inf. ليس ضرورياً أن / لست مضطراً لـ

- You don't have to get up early on holidays. (Not: You haven't to)
- He doesn't have to leave now. (Not: He hasn't to)

- لاحظ الفرق بين (don't / doesn't have to) و (mustn't) :

- You mustn't leave now. (غير مسموح لك أن تغادر الآن)
- You don't have to leave now. (لست مضطراً أن تغادر (لكن القرار لك))

- لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي لـ (must / has to / have to) هي :

- had to + inf. (كان من الضروري أن / كان لابد أن)

- I had to break the door because I had lost my keys.
- Rodayna didn't have to do the shopping. (Not: Rodayna hadn't to)

- لاحظ استخدام (need to / needs to) للتعبير عن الضرورة :

2 need to / needs to + inf. مصدر.....

- I need to go to bed earlier.
- He needs to do something about his old house.

- لاحظ أن نفي (need / needs to) هو :

- don't / doesn't need to + inf. ... ليس ضرورياً أن / لست مضطراً لـ ...
= needn't + inf. ...

- You don't need to carry all these bags.
- You needn't carry all these bags. (Not: needn't to carry)

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (to) بعد (needn't) كما في المثال السابق.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't have to) و (needn't have) :

- didn't have to + inf. ... لم يفعل الشيء لأن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً
- needn't have + p.p. ... فعل الشيء ثم اتضح أن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً

- I didn't have to buy cheese because we have much. (لم اشترى)
- I needn't have bought cheese. We have much. (اشتريت)

3 It is necessary for + فاعل / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. مصدر.....

- It is necessary for Amir to arrive early.
- It is necessary for us to follow the rules.

4 It is a necessity (a must) for + فاعل / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. مصدر.....

- It is a necessity for Amir to arrive early.
- It is a must for us to follow the rules.

٢ لاحظ الطرق المختلفة للتعبير عن المنع أو التحذير:

1 mustn't + inf. مصدر.....

- You mustn't park here.

2 (be) not allowed / It is against the law + to + inf. مصدر.....

- You aren't allowed to park here. = Parking here isn't allowed.
- = It's against the law to park here.

3 (be) not permitted to + inf. مصدر..... = It isn't permitted to + inf.

- You aren't permitted to park here. = Parking here isn't permitted.
- = It's not permitted to park here.

4 It is banned + to + inf. مصدر..... = (be) banned from + (inf. + ing) ...

- It is banned to park here. = You are banned from parking here.

5 It is prohibited + to + inf. مصدر.....

= (be) prohibited from + (inf. + ing)

- It is prohibited to park here. = You are prohibited from parking here.

6 It is forbidden / illegal + to + inf. مصدر.....

= (be) forbidden from + (inf. + ing)

- It is forbidden to park here. = You are forbidden from parking here.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. You try this cake; it's delicious!

- a. mustn't b. must c. shouldn't d. necessary

2. I can give you a lift to the airport. You to take a taxi.

- a. needn't b. don't need c. must d. have

3. It's a/an to get a doctor at once.

- a. necessary b. must c. should d. advice

4. You turn this music down before your dad gets angry. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. need b. ought c. had better d. must to

5. You allowed to drive at more than 110 kph on the motorway.

- a. aren't b. don't c. haven't d. hadn't

(كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

6. You pass our exams to get into university.

(شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

- a. have to b. mustn't c. need d. must have

7. We still have time. We hurry.

(سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

- a. needn't b. don't have c. should d. have got to

8. You buy a pen. I'll lend you one.

(الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. have b. needn't c. don't have to d. b and c

9. Emad cut his leg and go to hospital for treatment.

(غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

- a. should b. needs to c. had to d. has to

10. Students follow the rules of the school.

(بولاق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. can b. must c. may d. might

11. There is a "No Smoking" sign. We smoke here.

(ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. must

12. You come and try mum's food. I'm sure you will like it.

(ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. should b. must c. have to d. ought to

2 Special cases

13. Your essay has some mistakes. It again.

(الدلتا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. should revise b. should have revised
c. shouldn't be revised d. should be revised

14. The car You are starting to lose control.

(كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

- a. must be stopped b. should not stop
c. must stop d. should have stopped

Check your understanding

15. Hany shouldn't have talked rudely to his teacher. This means Hany to his teacher.

(الدلتا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. didn't talk rudely b. talked politely
c. talked rudely d. doesn't talk rudely



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

blanket(n)	بطانية	evacuate(d) (v)	يُخْلِي / يغادر (مكان)
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	immediately(adv)	حالاً / على الفور
burn (n)	حرق	injured (adj)	نصاب
calm(adj)	هادئ	wrap(ped) (v)	يُغَلِّف (يلف) - يُغَطِّي
emergency (n)	(حالة) طوارئ		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

apologise(d) (v)	يعتذر	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يؤلم
argument(n)	جدال - خلاف	living thing (n)	كائن حي
back(n)	الظهر	offer(ed) (n - v)	تعرض - يعرض
borrow(ed) (v)	يستعير / يقترض	plaster(n)	شريط لاصق
complain(ed) (v)	يشكو	pressure(d) (n - v)	ضغط - يضغط
cut (n - v)	جرح - يجرح	realise(d) (v)	درك
damage (n)	ضرر / تلف	serious(adj)	خطير - جاد
damage(d) (v)	يُضَرِّ / يُتَلَف	smell - smelled/	شم - يُضِدِّر رائحة
explain(ed) (v)	يوضِّح - يشرح	smelt (v)	
fire (n)	حريق - لهب	smell (n)	رائحة
fire(d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	smoke(d) (n - v)	خان - يُدَخِّن
helmet(n)	خوذة		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
blanket(n) بطانية	a warm cover on a bed
burn(n) حرق	damage ضرر to the body caused by fire or heat
evacuate(v) يُخْلِي / يغادر (مكان)	to leave a place because it is not safe
immediately(adv) حالاً / على الفور	very quickly, without waiting
wrap(v) يُغَلِّف (يلف) - يُغَطِّي	to cover something with cloth or paper

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

1. If there is an accident and someone is injured, you should them in a blanket immediately to keep them warm. (اطسا ٢٠٢٣)
a. cover b. wrap c. hide d. sleeps
2. In Turkey, after the destructive earthquake, the government had to many people from their homes. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. evacuate b. travel c. leave d. develop
3. The man was taken to hospital in an ambulance.
a. injured b. calm c. serious d. warm
4. We need a doctor in the room.
a. back b. helmet c. blanket d. emergency
5. In summer, we do not need as it is not cold.
a. fans b. blankets c. clothes d. water
6. An ambulance took the injured man to the nearest hospital.
a. immediately b. sleepy c. messily d. dirtily
7. Staying in the hot sun for a long time our skin.
a. wraps b. complains c. evacuates d. burns
8. When your baby sister is asleep, keep
a. injured b. calm c. dangerous d. warm

2 Important Vocabulary

9. She often about not feeling appreciated at work. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. suggests b. realizes c. complains d. concentrates
10. After the crash, there had been much caused to my car. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. damages b. injury c. damage d. hurt
11. It was not fair to that hard-working secretary.
a. damage b. fire c. offer d. smoke
12. Pollution is a/an problem.
a. injured b. calm c. serious d. warm
13. He suffers from some pain in his
a. back b. helmet c. blanket d. emergency
14. The on my leg is very painful مؤلم.
a. cut b. toes c. foot d. fingers

15. These people need much help because the has destroyed their house completely.
a. report b. sponge c. tissue d. fire
16. Bacteria are things.
a. alive b. living c. asleep d. away
17. I need a medical to cover the cut.
a. damage b. fire c. plaster d. pressure
18. You must wear a/an when riding a motorbike.
a. back b. helmet c. blanket d. emergency
19. "Cutting down trees cause much damage to the environment."
The word 'damage' here is a/an
a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. pronoun
20. The you put on a child has bad effects on them.
a. damage b. fire c. plaster d. pressure

3 Definitions

21. To is to cover something with cloth or paper.
a. grow b. evacuate c. wrap d. respond
22. A is a warm cover on a bed.
a. blanket b. pillow c. sheet d. bedding
23. is damage to the body caused by fire or heat.
a. research b. breath c. fire d. burn
24. To is to leave a place because it is not safe.
a. grow b. evacuate c. wrap d. respond
25. means very quickly, without waiting.
a. At least b. Asleep c. Immediately d. Properly

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

get	angry	يغضب		a mistake	يخطئ
have	an argument with	يقع في خلاف مع	make		
	problems	لديه مشاكل		sure	يتأكد
	an accident	يقع له حادث	put	pressure on	يضغط علي
	exams coming up	لديه امتحانات قريباً	receive	advice	يتلقى النصيحة
take	action	يتصرف	say	sorry	يعتذر
			stay	calm	يحافظ بهدونه

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
argument	جدال - خلاف
cut	جرح
evacuate	يُخلى (مكان)
immediately	حالاً/على الفور
remove	يزيل
serious	خطير
wrap	يُغلف (يلف) - يغطي
	disagreement, dispute
	injury, wound
	leave, remove, move out, clear, empty, take away
	instantly, at once
	clear, stop
	dangerous, hazardous
	cover, bundle up, package

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
argument	agreement
evacuate	stay, remain
immediately	later on
serious	secure, safe
wrap	unwrap, uncover
worried	calm, relaxed
	إتفاق / توافق
	يبقى/يظل
	فيما بعد
	آمن
	يكشف/يزيل الغلاف
	هادئ

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

evacuate	
evacuate(v) يُجلى - يُفرّغ	- We evacuated the burning house quickly.
evacuation(n) الإجلاء - التفريغ	- The evacuation of the burning house was necessary.
evacuee(n) لاجئ	- The evacuees from the burning house are all safe.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at / on the beach	على الشاطئ	forget about it	ينسي الأمر
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	if possible	إذا كان ذلك ممكناً
be sorry for	يأسف على	keep a person still	يبقى الشخص ساكناً
close to	قريب من	on fire	مُشتعل

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

ask for	يطلب	get to	يصل إلي
come up	يُخدّث	go out	يخرج
complain about	يشكو من	help with	يساعد في
cover ... with	يغطي ... بـ	offer to	يعرض أن

decide on
evacuate ... from
evacuate ... to
warn about / against

يختار / يحدد
يُجلى / يُبعد ... عن
ينقل ... إلى
يحذر من

put ... on
think about/of
travel around

يضع ... علي - يرتدي
يفكر في
تنتشر في - يتجول في

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- ★ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "Doctors are worried about the possible spread of the disease." The antonyms of the word "worried" are and (طلبا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. anxious b. astonishing c. cautious
 d. relaxed e. calm
2. The present was beautifully with gold paper. (فرب طنطا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. remained b. evacuated c. wrapped
 d. confused e. covered
3. "Helicopters were used to evacuate people from their homes." The synonyms of the word "evacuate" are (فرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. empty b. take away c. fill
 d. pack e. evaluate
4. "For our safety, we should cover our cuts not to be infected or polluted." The synonyms of the word "cuts" are (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)
 a. organs b. members c. wounds
 d. remedies e. injuries
5. "Eiad should use soapy water to remove all the bacteria." "Remove" gives the meaning of (القوصية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. carry b. clear c. contain
 d. stop e. contact
6. You advice.
 a. give b. make c. spend
 d. stay e. receive
7. Please, don't get
 a. better b. dirty c. clean
 d. angry e. real
8. A place clean when you it clean.
 a. feels - stay b. stays - feel c. feels - keep
 d. stays - keep e. keeps - feel
9. My grandfather warned me bad company الضحبة.
 a. against b. to c. from
 d. with e. about

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend can't decide his goal! (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
a. in b. to c. on d. for
2. He feels awfully sorry for the mistake he has
a. put b. got c. had d. made
3. He is upset. Don't more pressure on him.
a. put b. get c. have d. make
4. He bowed his head and sorry.
a. kept b. said c. gave d. filled
5. The police found that the of people from the area near the burning factory necessary.
a. evacuate b. evacuation c. respond d. response
6. He is a loving father who is close his children.
a. of b. from c. with d. to
7. Stop complaining everything and solve your problems.
a. as b. about c. with d. onto
8. It is the right thing to an injured person still.
a. keep b. do c. give d. tell
9. I thanked her when she offered me.
a. helping b. to help c. for helping d. help
10. I'll call you if
a. is possible b. possible c. possibly d. b & c

PART III READING

Reading Texts

To :(name).....

Lesson 3 SB page 10

Subject : Advice

Dear,

How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some advice. Do you remember my **neighbour**⁽¹⁾, Mrs Zeinab? She had an **accident**⁽²⁾ last year and now she doesn't go out much. It isn't easy for her to clean. I went to her flat yesterday and the bins were **full**⁽³⁾. The floor and kitchen were **dirty**⁽⁴⁾, too. She **complained**⁽⁵⁾ about her **back**⁽⁶⁾ hurting and I think she needs help, but I have a lot of exams **coming up**⁽⁷⁾. What do you think I should do?

I hope you can help me.

Best wishes,

.....

(1) جار / جارة

(2) حادث

(3) مملوء

(4) مُتسخ - غير نظيف

(5) يشكو

(6) الظهر

(7) تقترب

To : Amir

Subject : Help !

Hi Amir,

How are you? I hope you had a good weekend at the beach. Samy told me about the **argument**⁽¹⁾ you had with Hany. I think it would be a good idea to say that you are sorry for getting angry. Stay **calm**⁽²⁾ and **explain**⁽³⁾ that he should ask you before he borrows your things. I'm sure he will **realise**⁽⁴⁾ that he made a **mistake**⁽⁵⁾ and he will say sorry too. Why don't you talk to him tomorrow?

I suggest talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons.

Now I hope you can help me with my problem. Do you remember that I was **planning**⁽⁶⁾ to clean my house at the weekend? Well, I was busy and I forgot about it! 😞 The problem is that my parents are coming home tomorrow and the house is really dirty. There's dust **everywhere**⁽⁷⁾ and there's a **strange**⁽⁸⁾ **smell**⁽⁹⁾ in the kitchen!

What should I do? Help!

Regards,

Maher

بدال - خلاف
مادى
وضوح - يشرح
درك
خطا
خطط
في كل مكان
غريب
إلحة

PART IV

LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تنويه

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. We learn computer skills at school because they are very useful.
a. mustn't b. should c. can't d. don't

2. You use your phone while you're driving. It's dangerous.
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. should

3. You do the shopping now. I'll do it later.
a. mustn't b. needn't c. must d. have to

4. You make noise in the library. It isn't allowed.
a. needn't b. mustn't c. had better d. ought to

(نطقة البحيرة الزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

(لرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)

(وسيم ٢٠٢٣)

(نوف ٢٠٢٣)

5. My friend has sent me an email this morning. I reply soon or he will start to worry. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. don't have to b. mustn't c. don't need to d. need to

6. Passengers cross the crossroads in their cars when the traffic light is red.

- a. ought to b. mustn't c. must d. should

7. You should vegetables before you cook them.

- a. wash b. be washed c. to wash d. washing

8. Vegetables should before you cook them.

- a. wash b. be washed c. to wash d. washing

9. You must your mother with the housework. She looks tired.

- a. help b. be helped c. to help d. helping

10. Your mother must with the housework. She looks tired.

- a. help b. be helped c. to help d. helping

11. You go to the Pyramids when you are in Giza. They're great.

- a. mustn't b. need c. should d. shouldn't

12. A: You drink any coffee. It's not good for your weak heart.

B: OK, doctor.

- a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. must d. should

13. You lies, son!

- a. shouldn't telling b. mustn't tell c. should tell d. must tell

14. I obey my parents all the time.

- a. mustn't b. don't have to c. must d. 'll have to be

15. To drive a car, one get a licence first.

- a. mustn't b. must c. shouldn't d. should

16. You look tired. I think you a few days off.

- a. must be taken b. mustn't take c. shouldn't take d. should take

17. If you are still in Egypt, you attend my wedding. You are my closest friend.

- a. ought b. must c. shouldn't d. mustn't

18. Before you go to the dentist's, you brush your teeth.

- a. ought b. shouldn't c. should d. mustn't

19. Ali is very tall. He play basketball.

- a. shouldn't b. should c. can't d. ought

20. I'm taking an early train tomorrow. I drink too much coffee.

- a. should b. must c. mustn't d. need to

2 Special cases

21. We run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there. (إطسا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. needn't have b. didn't have to c. don't have to d. don't need to

22. When driving, you must always stop at the red light. It is a/an
 a. law b. invitation c. advice d. suggestion
23. You them yesterday. Now, it's too late.
 a. should call b. should have called
 c. shouldn't have called d. shouldn't call
24. It is advisable to do exercise. You to follow a diet.
 a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. don't have
25. A: Do you think I can cycle on the pavement? B: No, you
 a. must b. mustn't c. should d. aren't
26. If you want to get high marks, it is necessary to study hard. It's
 a/an
 a. advice b. advise c. must d. ought
27. Haven't they given you the money back yet? They that last week.
 a. should have done b. shouldn't have done
 c. should do d. shouldn't do
28. You the second project before you finished the first one completely.
 a. shouldn't start b. should start
 c. should have started d. shouldn't have started
29. A: I'm really tired. B: You to bed earlier last night.
 a. should go b. shouldn't go
 c. should have gone d. shouldn't have gone
30. A: I'm often tired during the day. B: You to bed earlier.
 a. should go b. shouldn't go
 c. should have gone d. shouldn't have gone
31. It would be to go on smoking.
 a. advisable b. better c. sensible d. insensible
32. My advice to you friends with those bad people.
 a. is to make b. is not to make c. is to be made d. is not to be made
33. I'm your boss. You leave without my permission.
 a. have to b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. must

3 Check your understanding

34. Which of the following structures is correct and logical?
 a. You mustn't get up late on holidays.
 b. You mustn't get up early on holidays.
 c. You haven't to get up late on holidays.
 d. You don't have to get up early on holidays.
35. "I have to wear my uniform to work."
 a. This is a personal obligation b. This is a personal necessity
 c. I have no choice d. It is up to me



PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ عند استخدام كلمة (**research**) كإسم بمعنى (بحث / أبحاث) فهي لا تُغَد ولا تأخذ (s) الجمع وتُعامل معاملة المفرد:

ex. - research needed a lot of time and effort.

- a. It b. This c. These d. Those
- Your research very important.
a. has b. have c. is d. are

٢ عند استخدام كلمة (**research**) كفعل بمعنى (يقوم بعمل أبحاث على) فإنها تساوي :

research (v) = do research on / into

ex. - Professor Mustafa is researching some new medicines.
= Professor Mustafa is doing research on / into some new medicines.

٣ كلمة (**rubbish**) بمعنى (قمامة) هي اسم لا يُغَد ولا يأخذ (s) الجمع ويُعامل معاملة المفرد :

ex. - Rubbish bacteria multiply quickly.

- a. make b. have made c. are made d. makes

٤ كلمة (**bacteria**) هي اسم جمع ويأخذ فعل جمع دائماً أما المفرد منه فهو (**bacterium**) :

ex. - These bacteria killed by heating.

- a. is b. are c. has been d. was

٥ يُستخدم الفعل (**burn**) بمعنى (يُحرق - يحترق / يُضئ) :

ex. - The candle burnt for six hours. يحترق / يُضئ

- He burnt some old paper. يُحرق

٦ الأسماء التي تتكون من جزئين أو طرفين مثل (**trousers – gloves – shoes ...etc.**) دائماً جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع :

ex. - My shoes to be polished.

- a. needs b. is needed c. has needed d. need

٧ الأسماء التي تتكون من جزئين أو طرفين مثل (**trousers – gloves – shoes ...etc.**) يمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد إذا سبقها كلمة (**pair**) :

ex. - This pair of shoes to be polished.

- a. needs b. is needed c. have needed d. needing

٨ لاحظ استخدام (**a / an**) بمعنى (كُل / في كُل / لكل) في التعبير التالي :

once / twice / three times ... + a / an + noun اسم

ex. - I take this medicine once a week. (= every week)

- His employer pays him five dollars an hour. (= every hour)

اسم noun + a / an + تعبيرات كمية / مسافة

ex. - He was driving at 80 kilometres an hour. (= per / every hour)

٩ كلمة (allergy) بمعنى (حساسية) تأخذ حرف الجر (to) :

ex. - I have an allergy penicillin.

a. from b. to c. with d. at

١٠ يُستخدم التعبير (at least) بمعنى (على الأقل) أو (على أقل تقدير / في أسوأ الأحوال) :

ex. - I drink at least two litres of water a day. علي الأقل

- I may not be able to visit you, but at least I will call you. في أسوأ الأحوال

١١ البادئة (en) تحول الاسم (danger) إلى فعل بمعنى (يُعرض للخطر) بينما الناهية (ous) تحول (danger) إلى صفة بمعنى (خطير) :

danger(n)	الخطر
endanger(v)	يُعرض للخطر
dangerous(adj)	خطير

ex. - A careless driver puts passengers' lives in danger.

- A careless driver endangers passengers' lives.

- A careless driver is dangerous for passengers' lives.

١٢ الفعل (grow) بمعنى (يزرع) فعل متعدي (أي أنه يحتاج مفعول)، لكن بمعنى (يصبح / ينمو) فهو فعل لازم :

ex. - Farmers in this area grow cotton and sugar cane. يزرع

- The tree grew tall. نمت

١٣ تُستخدم (else) بمعنى (آخر) بعد الكلمات التالية :

- someone – anyone – everyone – no one
- somebody – anybody – everybody – nobody
- something – anything – everything – nothing
- somewhere – anywhere – everywhere – nowhere

ex. - I don't want to go to the park. I want to go somewhere else.

- Did you say anything else at the meeting ?

١٤ تُستخدم (else) بمعنى (أيضاً) بعد أدوات الاستفهام مثل (What – Where – Who...) :

ex. - Who else called me?

- What else have you eaten?

١٥ لاحظ التعبير التالي :

... make it + adj. صفة + to + inf. يجعل من ال... أن ...

ex. - Too much smoke makes it harder to breathe.

- Studying hard makes it easy to pass an exam.

١٦ لاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (spend) بمعنى (ينفق مال):

spend money on + n. / (inf. + ing)

- ex. - She spent a lot of money on new clothes.
- She spent a lot of money on buying new clothes.

١٧ ولاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (spend) بمعنى (يقضي وقت):

spend time + (inf. + ing) / adj.

- ex. - Ahmed spent two weeks revising physics.
- Sama spent five hours asleep in her bed.

١٨ لاحظ أن :

- ex. - It's a waste of time / money + (inf. + ing) المال / مضيعة للوقت
- It's a waste of money buying this expensive car.

١٩ لاحظ التعبير التالي : فعل verb ... + مفعول obj. + adj. صفة ...

- ex. - She left the door open.
- Mum always keeps the kitchen floor clean.

٢٠ لاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (stop) بمعنى (يمنع / يوقف) :

stop + obj. مفعول + from + (inf. + ing) = stop + obj. + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - Cleaning kitchens stops bacteria from spreading.
- Cleaning kitchens stops bacteria spreading.

٢١ كلمة (soil) تعني (التربة) وتعني أيضاً (الوضع أو البيئة المناسبة لانتشار / لنمو شيء ما):

- ex. - Plants grow well in fertile soil تربة خصبة.
- Ignorance and poverty الجهل والفقر provide fertile soil بيئة for terrorism الإرهاب.

Exercise On Language Hints

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This team a new vaccine مصل to COVID-19.
a. researches b. does research into
c. searches d. a & b
- I was driving at a speed of 60 km hour.
a. a b. an c. all d. of
- My son has a severe allergy woolen blankets.
a. by b. off c. to d. a & c
- Perhaps I won't be able to return all your money tomorrow, but at I will pay back half of it.
a. less b. least c. list d. last

5. People who lived with COVID- 19 patients were really
 a. dangers b. dangerously c. endangered d. a & c
6. "My cousin Ali has grown tall." The verb 'grown' in this sentence means
 a. increased in height b. planted
 c. shrank d. lengthened
7. I don't want coffee. I'd like to have something
 a. else b. also c. too d. as well
8. Your objection to the plan made it difficult for me it.
 a. accept b. accepted c. accepting d. to accept
9. Close the window before going to bed. Don't leave it
 a. open b. opens c. opening d. to open
10. We stopped him at her again.
 a. shouting b. from shouting c. a & b d. to shout
11. We spent a lot of money our new house.
 a. are decorating b. to decorate c. on decorating d. b & c
12. We spent three months our new house.
 a. decorating b. to decorate c. on decorating d. b & c

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(سومسط ۲۰۲۳)

Many people don't have the knowledge or awareness of health care. This is a great problem because they can't bear the responsibility to stay healthy. So, it's the role of people who are aware to persuade them to start learning about such issues, like boosting their immune system. We all want our immune system to be strong so we can stay healthy. We can boost our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables with green leaves.

Fitness and health seem to be the same for everyone, but they have two different meanings. Fitness is the physical ability to perform work, sports, etc. while health is a condition in which the body should have resistance capacity from all diseases and all parts of the body should work well without any problem.

Health can be **maintained** by a proper diet, exercise and hygiene in which we must wash our hands before meals. To keep your body healthy, you need to do proper exercise. Usually, Sportspeople have a fit body.

They shape their body in such a way that it will be fit for their sport. But coming to healthy body is just a matter of controlling weight and making your body immune to diseases.

For a healthy and fit body, walking is very good exercise which helps in burning the excess fat in your body. A fit body doesn't mean that it should look good from outside. A fit and healthy body should be physically active and energetic and smart enough to accept any tasks given to them.

Due to more demand for a fit and healthy body, many gyms and workout centres are opened. To maintain a healthy and fit body, this requires self-control and determination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Burning the excess fat makes us
a. enormous b. colossal c. healthy d. ill
2. Many gyms and workout centres are opened because of the demand for a fit and healthy body.
a. low b. little c. decreasing d. increasing
3. The immune system's function is to our bodies.
a. deteriorate b. infect c. protect d. damage
4. The underlined word "**maintained**" means
a. kept b. wasted c. damaged d. spent
5. Washing your hands before meals is a form of
a. sanitation b. hygiene c. personality d. energy
6. The awareness of health care is its importance.
a. recognising b. neglecting c. ignoring d. forgetting
7. How can people maintain fit and healthy bodies?
a. By eating healthy food. b. By doing exercise.
c. By doing sports. d. All of these choices.

2 كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني Email Writing

① كتابة مجموعة من التعليمات بغرض إعطاء النصيحة المتعلقة بالصحة:

- ١ كتابة العنوان
- ٢ ا طرح الموضوع أو الفكرة الرئيسية
- ٣ اختر حوالى ستة أفكار عن الموضوع
- ٤ رتب الأفكار حسب الأهمية
- ٥ عبر عن الأفكار ببساطة ووضوح
- ٦ اختر بعض صيغ إعطاء النصح أو الأمر مثل:
- ... should / shouldn't, must/mustn't ... / (Drive / Don't drive ... etc).
- ٧ اختر بعض الصيغ الترتيبية (كلمات التسلسل) مثل:
- First of all, Next, Thirdly

Model email

✪ Write an email of about 150 words on "How to keep healthy" :

From : (Sender's email address)

To : (recepient email address)

Subject : How to keep healthy

Dear,

Have you ever imagined يتخيل how it is like being unhealthy or unfit? You have surely seen someone suffer because of health problems. Health is a treasure that only patients appreciate يُقدّر its value قيمة. No one can be happy in their lives unless they enjoy good health. If you want to keep healthy, you need to eat good food, do exercise and get enough sleep.

The food you eat plays an important role in keeping you healthy. You need to eat the right quantities. It is necessary to have balance توازن in your meals. You should eat proteins, carbohydrates and fats. Fruit and vegetables are necessary to give you the vitamins you need. It is inadvisable to eat more than enough. Following a diet is very important.

Exercise is not less important than good food in keeping you healthy and fit. It helps you get rid of تتخلص من the fats you don't need. It keeps your body flexible and lively. You don't need to do violent عنيف exercise. You can just go for a walk for half an hour every day.

Sleep is also very necessary. Your body needs about eight hours of sleep every day. This helps the body to refresh its energy. One can't go on يستمر في work without having enough sleep.

Finally, health is a crown تاج on the heads of healthy people that only patients can see. One should do their best to have good health.

Best wishes,

.....

3 الترجمة Translation

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. To prevent the spread of infectious diseases or being infected, take care of your personal hygiene regularly.

(المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. اهتمامك بنظافتك الشخصية بشكل أساسي هو الطريق لمنع انتشار الأمراض المزمنة وإصاباتنا.
- b. لمنع انتشار الأمراض المعدية أو العدوي بها اعتن بنظافتك الشخصية بانتظام.
- c. لوقف انتشار أي مرض مُعدي والإصابة له، عليك بالنظافة بشكل شخصي وباهتمام.
- d. منع انتشار الأمراض الفتاكة، يبدأ بالاهتمام بالنظافة بشكل شخصي ويومي ومنظم.

2. Planting trees helps the environment. They provide shade in summer and absorb carbon dioxide.

(شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة، فهي توفر الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- b. نباتات الأشجار تساعد البيئة، فهي توفر الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- c. غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة، فهي تحد من الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- d. غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة، فهي توفر الظل في الصيف وتنتج ثاني أكسيد الكربون.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

١. علينا الاهتمام بالنظافة الشخصية لتجنب الإصابة بالكثير من الأمراض المعدية والأوبئة الخطيرة مثل فيروس كورونا المُستجد.

(فارسكور ٢٠٢٣)

- a. We must care about sanitation to remove infection and dangerous diseases such as new Corona virus.
- b. We shouldn't be interested in healthcare not to catch flu and dangerous disease like Corona virus.
- c. We should care about personal cleanliness to avoid catching many infections and dangerous epidemics such as new Corona virus.
- d. We should not care about personal cleanliness to avoid bringing many infections and horrible epidemics such as new Corona virus.

٢. مما لا شك فيه أن المياه الملوثة غير صالحة للشرب وخطيرة لأنها تسبب الأمراض وتدمر البيئة والحيوانات والأسماك.

- a. There is no doubt that pollution is dangerous because it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals, and fish.
- b. There is no doubt that polluted water is drinkable and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals, and fish.
- c. There is no doubt that polluted water isn't drink and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals, and fish.
- d. There is no doubt that polluted water is not drinkable and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals, and fish.

evacuate

- **evacuate (v)** يُخلى السكان من مكان - يُخلى الناس
 - Thousands of people were evacuated from their homes because of the floods الفيضان.
- **evacuate ... from** يُخلى ... من
 - The government evacuated the poor families from their old houses to protect them.
- **evacuate ... to** يُخلى ... إلى
 - The government evacuated the poor families to new houses.
- **evacuation (n)** إجلاء - إخلاء المكان
 - The evacuation of the people from the burning house was not easy.

respond

- **respond (to / with / by) = react (v)** يستجيب (ل) - يتجاوب (مع)
 - The government responded to the problem by building new roads.
 - **respond (to / that) (v)** يجيب (علي) - يرد (علي)
 - Give me five minutes to respond to the email.
 - **respond (to) (v)** يتحسن (نتيجة ل)
 - He responded well to the treatment علاج in this hospital.
 - **response (to) (n)** استجابة (ل) - رد (علي)
 - The manager's response to my suggestion was encouraging مُشجّع.
 - I am waiting for your response to my offer.
- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :
- a positive response رد إيجابي - استحسان - a negative response رد سلبي
 - get / receive a response يتلقى رد - يلقي استجابة
 - in response to رداً علي - استجابة ل
 - **responsive (to) (adj)** غير مستجيب ل - مُستجيب ل - متجاوب مع **unresponsive (to)**
 - My headache was responsive to this medicine.

wrap

- **wrap (v)** يغطي - يُغلف - يحيط بـ - يُدثر
 - Rodayna wrapped the present in colourful paper.
 - He wrapped a bandage ضمادة around his injured arm.

• **wrap / wrapper / wrapping (n)**

غِطاء - إزار - ورق أو بلاستيك تغليف

- Remove the wrap / wrapper / wrapping of the present carefully.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- keep something under wraps يُنقى ... سزا
- He kept his illness under wraps because he didn't want his family to be sad.
- take the wraps off something يُفشي سر ...
- He took the wraps off his new invention and it was published in all newspapers.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Which of the following is correct?
 - a. I saw an asleep person.
 - b. I saw some asleep people.
 - c. I saw some asleep persons.
 - d. I saw some people asleep.
2. They're doing into the causes of swine flu انفلونزا الخنازير.
 - a. a research
 - b. research
 - c. researches
 - d. searching
3. Bacteria is to as feet is to foot.
 - a. bacteria
 - b. bacterias
 - c. bacterium
 - d. bacterial
4. Walking for half an hour every morning is good exercise to calories السعرات الحرارية.
 - a. make
 - b. burn
 - c. gain
 - d. increase
5. Strong must be kept away from children.
 - a. diseases
 - b. attractions
 - c. cleaners
 - d. infections

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. to smoke in a petrol station.
 - a. You shouldn't
 - b. It is a must
 - c. You are banned
 - d. It is banned
2. I using my mobile at home.
 - a. am forbidden from
 - b. am banned
 - c. am allowed to
 - d. am prohibited
3. It is a to get a doctor at once.
 - a. necessary
 - b. a necessity
 - c. must
 - d. should
4. He at 10, but he was almost half an hour late.
 - a. should arrive
 - b. didn't arrive
 - c. should have arrived
 - d. shouldn't arrive
5. All the reports before the end of last September.
 - a. should have written
 - b. should have been written
 - c. should write
 - d. shouldn't write

Test on Unit 7

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تجربة

التقييمات
الشهرية في
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "After the violent earthquakes in Turkey, all the old houses were evacuated". The word "evacuated" can be replaced by and

- a. searched b. abandoned c. destroyed
d. deserted e. built

(إدفو ٢٠٢٣)

2. "You should keep calm to deal with this problem." The word "calm" has a similar meaning to

- a. tired b. relaxed c. peaceful
d. angry e. excited

(حدائق القبة ٢٠٢٣)

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. My brother has to avoid eating fish because he has an to it.

- a. energy b. allergy c. allege d. allergic

(غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

2. My mother usually changes our twice a week. She is determined to make our bedroom healthy.

- a. drink b. food c. pudding d. bedding

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

3. I was unable to take my as the film was very scary.

- a. breath b. breathe c. breathing d. breathless

(الحوامدية ٢٠٢٣)

4. To help a patient breathe normally again, we do

- a. vehicle b. CPR c. translation d. GPS

(شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)

5. When my children play in their room, it becomes

- a. proper b. messy c. regular d. soapy

6. An ambulance took the injured man to the nearest hospital.

- a. immediately b. sleepy c. messily d. dirtily

7. It is the right thing to an injured person still.

- a. keep b. do c. give d. tell

8. You to eat a lot of sweets; this isn't healthy.

- a. shouldn't b. ought not c. mustn't d. needn't

(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

9. You have got plenty of time. You hurry.

- a. must b. should c. have to d. don't have to

(منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

10. All the tasks before the end of this month.

- a. should have finish b. should have been finished
c. should finish d. shouldn't finish

(جرجا ٢٠٢٣)

11. It is to evacuate your old house now.

- a. should b. must c. a necessity d. necessary

12. We learn computer skills at school because they are very useful.

- a. mustn't b. should c. ought d. needn't

(ساقية ٢٠٢٣)

13. You make a loud noise in the library or you will get into trouble.
 a. can b. should c. mustn't d. must (بهيئة ٢٠٢٣)
14. We have a lot of monuments in Aswan. You come and see them.
 a. ought b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. must (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

We all know the importance of water. It is the secret of life for all living things. No creature could live without it. Some doctors think that you should drink a glass of water each morning. You should drink this water first thing, before doing anything else. The temperature of the water should be similar to the temperatures of your body neither too hot nor too cold. Why should you drink this water? Water helps your body in many ways. It helps clean out your kidneys. It prepares your stomach for digestion. Water can also help your intestines work better. After drinking water, the intestines can more easily take out nutrients from our food. Water also helps us go to the bathroom more easily.

Scientists suggest that people take in 1,600 milliliters of water each day. But don't drink all of that water in one sitting. If you do, your kidneys will have to work much harder to **eliminate** it. It's better to drink some in the morning and some in the afternoon.

Some people think it's better to drink between meals and not during meals. They think water dilutes the juices produced in our stomachs. This can interfere with normal digestion. Are you drinking enough water every day? Check the color of your urine. If it is light yellow, you are probably drinking enough. If your urine is very dark yellow, you probably need to drink more water. A little more water each day could make you much healthier!

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- What is the best title for this passage?
 a. Water helps plants to grow b. When should people drink water?
 c. Animals need little water each day
 d. Why should people drink water?
- Why is it helpful to drink water in the morning?
 a. Your kidneys will work harder. b. Your intestines will work well.
 c. Your juices will be diluted. d. Your urine will be pale yellow.
- Why is it better to drink between meals?
 a. So you eat enough food. b. So you don't dilute stomach juices.
 c. So your urine will not smell bad. d. So you don't overwork your kidneys.
- Why is dark-coloured urine a sign to drink more water?
 a. It shows our body is healthy.
 b. It means our kidneys are working too hard.
 c. Less water makes the colour darker.
 d. It is the same colour as our digestive juices.

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

a. تعتمد التعاسة وراحة البال على القدرة على التحكم في أفكار الإنسان وإدارتها، ويجب على المرء أن يتجنب ما يؤذيهِ.

b. تعتمد السعادة وسلام العقل على القدرة على التحكم في أفكار الإنسان دورتها، ويجب على المرء أن يتجنب ما يؤديه.

تجنب ما يؤديه.
تعتمد السعادة وراحة البال على القدرة على التحكم في أفكار الإنسان وإدارتها، ويجب على المرء أن
تجنب ما يؤديه.

د. تعتمد السعادة وراحة البال على القدرة على التحكم في أفكار الإنسان وإدارتها، ويجب على المرأة أن تتجنب ما قد يؤدي.

بفضل بعض الناس حياة الريف البسيطة والصحية، حيث يستمتعون بهواء الريف النقي وجمال الطبيعة. (سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

a. Some people prefer the simple and healthy life of the country, where they enjoy the fresh country air and the beauty of nature.

b. Some people prefer the hard and healthy life of the country, where they enjoy the fresh country air and the beauty of nature.

c. Some people prefer the simple and unhealthy life of the country, where they enjoy the fresh country air and the beauty of nature.

d. Some people prefer the simple and healthy life of the country, where they enjoy the polluted country air and the beauty of nature.

1. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to enter the form with Jim ?

2. Doctor Livesey proved to be generous. Show how.

3. What do you think of Silver as a negotiator?

"The keys of good health"

Mini-Test on Unit 7 for Al-Azhar Students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Sami and Hani are talking about spending the mid-year holiday.

Sami : Hi, where will you spend the midyear holiday ?

Hani : (1).....

Sami : Well, the weather is fine in Luxor in winter. (2)..... ?

Hani : I will go with my family.

Sami : (3)..... ?

Hani : We will stay at my uncle's house.

Sami : (4)..... ?

Hani : We will stay about seven days.

2. Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

“Public cleanliness”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. (A) Translate into Arabic :

Young men often waste their time keeping company with bad people who spoil their character.

.....

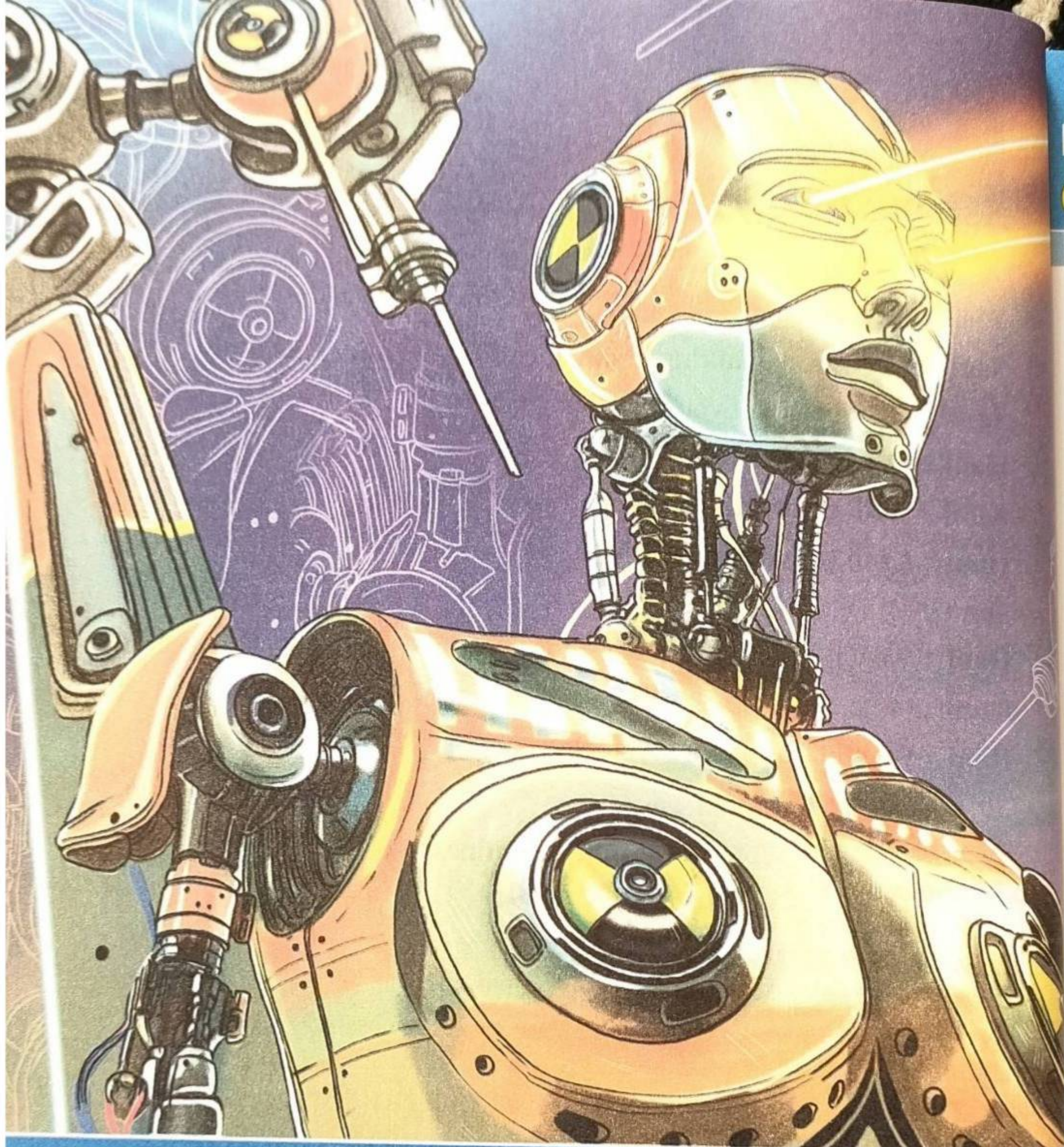
.....

(B) Translate into English :

يجب تعليم أطفالنا الولاء لبلدنا وأن يكونوا أعضاء إيجابيين ومنتجين.

.....

.....



UNIT 8

Robots

SB pages 16 : 25

WB pages 92 : 97

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- 🔊 **Reading** : Online posts about the advantages of new technology
- 📝 **Writing** : An essay about the advantages and disadvantages of having technology in the house
- 🔊 **Listening** : Discussion on how technology can improve learning
- 🗣️ **Speaking** : Discussing consequences
- 🗣️ **Language** : Zero, first and second conditionals
- 🧠 **Critical thinking** : Is technology always good?
- 🌍 **Respect for diversity** : People have different views related to technology



PART I

VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

benefit(ed) (n-v)	فائدة - يستفيد	hybrid(adj)	هجين
click(ed) (v-n)	ينقر - نقرة (على الماوس)	hybrid vehicle	سيارة هجينة (ذات مصدرين للطاقة)
click (n)	صوت طقطقة		
familiar(adj)	مشهور - مألوف - علي علم بـ	invent(ed)(n)	يخترع - يخلق
find out (phr. v)	يكتشف - يعرف	invention(n)	اختراع
get around (phr. v)	يسافر - يتجول	navigate(d)(v)	يُوجّه - يُبجّر - يقود
go out (phr. v)	يخرج - يقابل بالخارج	robot(n)	إنسان آلي
GPS = Global Positioning System	نظام تحديد المواقع الدولي	the internet(n)	شبكة المعلومات الدولية
		vehicle(n)	مركبة - وسيط / وسيلة

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

abroad(adv)	خارج البلاد	fortunately(adv)	لحسن الحظ
air-conditioning(n)	(نظام) تكييف الهواء	global(adj)	عالمي
annoying(adj)	مزعج	lead - led - led(v)	يؤدي إلي - يقود
blog(ged) (v-n)	يُدوّن - مَدوّنَة	luxurious(adj)	فخم - فاخر
button(n)	زر	luxury(n)	الرفاهية
charge(d) (v)	يشحن	position(ed)(n-v)	موقع - مكانة - يحدد موقع
communicate(d) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	positioning(n)	تحديد المكان
concentrate(d) (v)	يُرَكّز	post(ed) (n-v)	منشور (على الإنترنت) - ينشر
consequences(n)	نتائج - توابع	project(n)	مشروع - بحث
direction(n)	اتجاه - ارشاد	result(n)	نتيجة
distance(n)	مسافة	shopping list(n)	قائمة التسوق
electric(adj)	كهربائي - يعمل بالكهرباء	smart(adj)	ذكي
electricity(n)	الكهرباء	statement(n)	بيان
engine(n)	مُحرّك	terrible(adj)	فظيع
exactly(adv)	بدقة - بالضبط	useful(adj)	مفيد
fail(ed)(v)	يفشل - يرسب	waste(d) (v)	يُسرف - يبدد
feel like (phr. v)	يشعر وكأنه - يرغب في	wheel (n)	إطار (سيارة/دراجة ...)

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
click(v) ينقر (على الماوس)	to press يضغط a button زر on a computer mouse to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do
familiar(adj) معروف	well-known مشهور to you and easy to recognize يتعرف علي
find out(phr.v) يكتشف - يعرف	to learn something that you didn't know before
get around(phr.v) يسافر - يتجول	to travel from place to place
go out(phr.v) يخرج مع ضجه	to leave your home to do something fun with other people
internet(n) شبكة الإنترنت	a network of computer systems that allows users all over the world to exchange information
invention(n) اختراع	a useful machine, tool, instrument جهاز , etc. that has been invented
navigate(d) (v) يحدد اتجاه	to find which way you need to go when you are travelling from one place to another
vehicle(n) مركبه	a machine آلة with an engine محرّك that is used to take people or things from one place to another, such as a car, bus, or truck

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- It is important for people to from their spare time. (نفي ٢٠٢٣)
a. protect b. benefit c. deny d. decline
- The of her high-heeled shoes can be easily heard from outside the office. (نوف ٢٠٢٣)
a. treks b. tricks c. clicks d. tracks
- The clever pilot expertly the plane through thick fog. (والمطامير ٢٠٢٣)
a. clicked b. navigated c. boarded d. blogged
- It's very easy to around in that city because the public transport is cheap and efficient. (نطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
a. get b. find c. stay d. say
- Scientists have a lot of things that help people live better. (سليم ٢٠٢٣)
a. covered b. invented c. explored d. found

6. My friend uses if he doesn't know which road to take.

- a. vehicle b. GPS c. CRR d. knife

(منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

7. use both petrol and electricity to power their engine.

(منوف ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Gas cars b. Steam trains c. Search engines d. Hybrid vehicles

8. Do you agree that the internet is the best ?

(حلوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. invitation b. invention c. recovery d. exploration

9. Old can cause more pollution because their engines don't burn petrol well.

(أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)

- a. vehicles b. phones c. inventions d. computers

10. The 'G' in 'GPS' stands for

- a. Ground b. Global c. Gear d. Gas

11. Sama was very angry when she that I had eaten her chocolate.

- a. got around b. found out c. went out d. led to

12. This voice is to me. I'm sure I've heard it before.

- a. extreme b. stressful c. familiar d. beneficial

13. At weekends, my friends and I and have fun.

- a. benefit from b. find out c. go out d. write down

14. GPS is short for Global System.

- a. Population b. Positioning c. Press d. Philosophy

15. The has made communication and sharing information easier.

- a. website b. blog c. internet d. technology

16. "Click on the speaker symbol to hear the pronunciation of the word."

Here, 'click' is a/an

- a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective

17. The can do some of the dangerous jobs in factories that man used to do in the past.

- a. robot b. tablet c. internet d. consequence

2 Important Vocabulary

18. Most young people dream of travelling to make money. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. aboard b. a board c. abroad d. broad

19. To operate this machine, just press this

(التبين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. desk b. button c. patron d. bitty

20. He later realized the of his bad deeds.

(كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

- a. sequences b. consequences c. squads d. squires

21. I'm happy with my friend's positive on my project.

(بولاق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. comments b. offers c. collections d. links

22. A successful student never their time.

- a. charges b. concentrates c. positions d. wastes

23. Secondary school students will take the second term exams on their tablets.
 a. written b. traditional c. smart d. social
24. I have a on the internet where I write about my opinions and activities.
 a. media b. blog c. form d. survey
25. GPS helped the police the stolen car.
 a. charge b. concentrate c. position d. waste
26. Can you this letter for me on your way home ?
 a. network b. attach c. spend d. post
27. Healthy food, doing sport and getting enough sleep to enjoying good health.
 a. cause b. improve c. lead d. appear
28. The minister is giving a on the exam system tomorrow.
 a. statement b. consequence c. button d. luxury
29. A quiet place helps you on your study.
 a. charge b. concentrate c. position d. waste
30. Make sure you have your tablet before an electronic exam.
 a. charged b. concentrated c. positioned d. wasted
31. Being the son of a wealthy businessman, he enjoyed a life of
 a. statement b. consequence c. button d. luxury

3 Definitions

32. To is to travel from place to place. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
 a. find out b. go out c. get around d. feel like
33. which stands for Global Positioning System, is a radio navigation system. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
 a. GTS b. GVS c. GPS d. NGS
34. The is a network of computer systems that allows users all over the world to exchange information.
 a. website b. blog
 c. internet d. mobile computer
35. To is to press a button on a computer mouse to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do.
 a. benefit b. invent c. click d. translate
36. means well-known to you and easy to recognize.
 a. Familiar b. Clear c. Stressful d. Technological
37. To is to leave your home to do something fun with other people.
 a. find out b. get around c. go out d. feel like
38. A/An is a useful machine, tool, instrument, etc. that has been invented.
 a. vehicle b. invention c. quiz d. invitation

39. To is to find which way you need to go when you are travelling from one place to another.

- a. brainstorm b. find out c. notice d. navigate

40. A/An is a machine with an engine that is used to take people or things from one place to another, such as a car, bus, or truck.

- a. account b. button c. vehicle d. robot

41. To is to learn something that you didn't know before.

- a. find out b. get around c. go out d. feel like

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

cause	a problem	يسبب مشكلة	discuss	consequences	يناقش النتائج
do	exercise	يقوم بتمرينات	give	opinions about / on / of	يعبر عن رأيه في
	... faster	يقوم بـ ... بشكل أسرع		directions	يعطى الاتجاهات
	things	يقوم بأشياء		online	يدخل على الانترنت
drive	an engine	يشغل محرك	go	long distances	يسافر / ينطلق لمسافات طويلة
get	an answer to	يجد إجابة / حل لـ	have	abroad	يسافر للخارج
	lost	يتوه		free time	لديه وقت فراغ
	nervous	يتعصب - يتوتر		a comment	يعلق
	somewhere	يصل مكان ما		make things	يصنع أشياء

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
consequences	نتائج
familiar	مشهور
familiar	مقرب
get around	يسافر - يتجول
get around	يتغلب على
	results, effects
	well known, common
	close, dear
	travel
	overcome, get over, solve

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
consequences	أسباب
familiar	غير مشهور - غير مألوف
	causes, reasons
	unfamiliar

4

Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

benefit		
benefit(v)	يستفيد - يفيد	- We benefit from modern technology a lot. - Modern technology benefits us a lot.
benefit(n)	استفادة - منفعة	- Modern technology has a lot of benefits.
beneficial(adj)	مفيد - إيجابي	- Modern technology is beneficial.
click		
click(v)	ينقر (على الماوس)	- Click on the link below for more information
click(n)	نقرة (على الماوس) - صوت طقطقة	- I heard the click of the mouse.
familiar		
familiarize(v)	يتعلم - يُعلِّم	- Mr Mohammed familiarized us with the uses of "should" and "must".
familiarity(n)	المعرفة - الدراية	- Mr Mohammed increased our familiarity with the uses of "should" and "must".
familiar(adj)	على دراية بـ	- Mr Mohammed made us familiar with the uses of "should" and "must".
hybrid		
hybridise / -ize(v)	يُهجِّن	- Scientists hybridise poultry الدواجن.
hybridisation(n)	التهجين	- Are you for or against the hybridisation of poultry
hybrid(adj)	هجين	- This type of poultry is hybrid.
navigate		
navigate(v)	يحدد اتجاه - يبحر	- GPS helps you to navigate safely.
navigation(n)	الملاحة - تحديد الاتجاه	- GPS makes navigation safe.

5

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

argue (that) + جملة	يطالب - يثبت أن	for this reason	هذا السبب
be familiar with	لديه معرفة بـ	know how to	عرف كيف
discussion on how	مناقشة عن كيفية	live abroad	عيش خارج البلاد
even if	حتى لو	make a difference to	حسن - يصنع الفارق في
even more useful	أكثر إفادة بكثير	putting parts together	جميع الأشياء
find ... useful to / for	يكتشف أن ... مفيد لـ	with a click of a button	بضغط زر

6

Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with	يتفق مع	go down	خفض - يهبط
communicate with	يتواصل مع	help with	ساعد في

concentrate on	يركز على	lead to + (n / inf. + ing)	يؤدي إلى
connect to	يتصل بـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
find out (about)	يكتشف - يعرف (عن)	walk around	يتجول في أرجاء

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

discover - invent - explore - find out

- **discover** يكتشف (شيء كان موجود ولكنه غير معروف)
 - Columbus discovered America.
 - Discover (a medicine / the femtosecond)
- **invent** يخترع / يبتكر (شيء لم يكن موجود من قبل)
 - Do you know who invented smart phones ?
- **explore** يستكشف شيء أو مكان غريب ويعرف شيء عنه
 - I want to explore that forest.
 - I need more time to explore this plan.
- **find out** يكتشف (مصادفة أو بشكل غير مقصود)
 - While I was watering the plants in the garden, I found out that there was rabbit hole جحر.

do things - make things

- **do things** يقوم بأشياء (يفعل)
 - I have many things to do.
- **make things** يصنع أشياء
 - This vase is one of the best things you have made.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "I'll do my best to get around this problem." The phrasal verb "get around" here means and (برج العرب ٢٠٢٣)
 - a. overcome b. travel c. invent
 - d. solve e. persuade
2. Good thinking helps me my problems. (السادات ٢٠٢٣)
 - a. for b. to c. from
 - d. with e. to find solutions to
3. It is good to a comment expressing your opinion under the post.
 - a. leave b. do c. get
 - d. take e. make

4. It is possible to say you or things, but the meaning is different.
a. are b. do c. make
d. be e. were
5. If you go, you will see surprising things.
a. board b. progress c. online
d. the shopping e. abroad
6. "The symptoms أعراض of COVID-19 have become familiar to most people." We can replace the word 'familiar' with
a. dear b. close c. known
d. strange e. common
7. No one can argue helping the poor is not a must.
a. that b. to c. with
d. on e. no word
8. I don't know how they have found the secret plan?
a. in b. out about c. up with
d. information about e. down into

• ☆ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Robots can a lot of things that can help us in our daily life. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
a. do b. go c. give d. take
2. Although the internet has a lot of advantages, it has also a lot of problems. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
a. resulted b. caused c. reasoned d. ceased
3. When I lost in a strange city, I ask a passer-by to help me find my destination.
a. take b. get c. go d. do
4. "A lot of people in Cairo use the underground to get around." The phrasal verb 'get around' in this sentence means
a. travel b. overcome c. get over d. b & c
5. Scientists have this type of poultry in laboratories from different types.
a. hybeard b. hybrid c. hybridised d. hybridisation
6. A GPS helps travellers with in strange places.
a. navigate b. navigated c. navigation d. navigator

1 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 16

What is the best invention that we have today and why is it so great? Please leave your comments⁽¹⁾ below.

Baher 12 minutes ago

The internet is the best **invention**⁽²⁾ that we have today. You can find information about anything you're **interested**⁽³⁾ in. It's really useful if you need to **find out**⁽⁴⁾ something for a school **project**⁽⁵⁾, for example. I'd never be able to do my homework **without**⁽⁶⁾ it! The internet also **makes**⁽⁷⁾ life easier in your **free time**⁽⁸⁾.

You can buy anything you want **online**⁽⁹⁾ with a **click**⁽¹⁰⁾ of a **button**⁽¹¹⁾. You can also **communicate**⁽¹²⁾ with your friends easily, **even if**⁽¹³⁾ they live **abroad**⁽¹⁴⁾.

Khadeeja 23 minutes ago

In my opinion, **GPS**⁽¹⁵⁾ (Global Positioning System) is the best invention. GPS helps you to **navigate**⁽¹⁶⁾ your journey from one place to another. You can use it when you visit a town that you aren't **familiar with**⁽¹⁷⁾. In the past, people needed **maps**⁽¹⁸⁾ to **get around**⁽¹⁹⁾, but GPS is more useful because it just tells you what to do. If you don't know how to **get somewhere**⁽²⁰⁾, the **technology**⁽²¹⁾ will tell you **exactly**⁽²²⁾ where to go.

Rami 40 minutes ago

Most cars, buses and other vehicles need **petrol**⁽²³⁾, but petrol is becoming more expensive. What would we do if we didn't have petrol? **Fortunately**⁽²⁴⁾, we now have **hybrid vehicles**⁽²⁵⁾. Hybrid vehicles use both petrol and **electricity**⁽²⁶⁾ to drive the engine. For this reason, the vehicle uses a lot less petrol. There are also cars that are only electric. At the moment, they cannot go long distances, although they are useful to travel short **distances**⁽²⁷⁾, like to school or to the shops.

(1) تعليقات

(2) اختراع

(3) مهتم

(4) يكتشف

(5) مشروع - بحث

(6) بدون

(7) يجعل

(8) وقت فراغ

(9) على الإنترنت

(10) نقرة

(11) زر

(12) يتواصل

(13) حتى لو

(14) خارج البلاد

(15) نظام تحديد المواقع

(16) يحدد الاتجاه

(17) على علم بـ

(18) خرائط

(19) يسافر - يتجول

(20) يصل إلى مكان ما

(21) التكنولوجيا

(22) بدقة - بالضبط

(23) البنزين

(24) لحسن الحظ

(25) مركبات هجينة

(26) الكهرباء

(27) مسافات

Match the people to the inventions.

Lesson 1 WB page 92

Marwan : I love riding on my bicycle but I don't have much time and I need to get to places quickly.

Nadia : I'm really busy and I love cooking, but I also have a terrible memory! I forgot to buy the things I need.

Manal : I love travelling and discovering new cultures and meeting new people.



1. **The TL8** will help you communicate when you go abroad. Choose a language and when you speak, the translation will appear on your phone. **Manal**
2. **The Direct 1** is for people who like to travel on two wheels. It connects to your bicycle and gives you directions as you cycle around town. You will never get lost on your bike again ! **Marwan**
3. Do you ever forget to buy things that you need ? **The FrigiNote** goes in your fridge and sends a shopping list to your phone. **Nadia**

2 Listening Text

Lesson 2 SB page 19

Ahmed : Well, **the reason**⁽¹⁾ that we have the internet is so that people in different countries can talk to each other very easily and **get answers**⁽²⁾ to their questions very quickly. Although we need this fast and easy **communication**⁽³⁾, it can **lead to**⁽⁴⁾ problems if people spend too much time talking online and don't work or study enough. I wouldn't say that the internet has caused a lot of problems, but I think it has caused some.



Mustafa : The problem with the internet is that it makes people feel like they aren't good enough. If you go online, you see all these photos of beautiful people on **luxury**⁽⁵⁾ holidays and you think "Why isn't my life like that ?" This makes some people really unhappy. Perhaps we should all **concentrate on**⁽⁶⁾ our own lives and our own friends and not use the internet anymore.

السبب
يحصل على إجابات
الاتصال
يؤدي إلى
مخامة - متعة
يركز على

1

Zero Conditional :

الحالة الشرطية الصفرية :

Formation التكوين

١ تتكون الحالة الشرطية الصفرية من :

جملة مضارع بسيط , جملة مضارع بسيط + عندما / When إذا / If

ex. - If / When we mix red and yellow, we get orange.
= We get orange if / when we mix red and yellow.

٢ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «هل» كالتالي :

If / When + جملة مضارع بسيط , do / does + subj. + inf. ?

ex. - If / When we mix red and yellow, do we get orange?
= Do we get orange if / when we mix red and yellow?

٣ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» كالتالي :

If / When + جملة مضارع بسيط , Q.W. أداة استفهام , do / does + subj. + inf. ?

ex. - If / When we mix red and yellow, what do we get?
= What do we get if / when we mix red and yellow?

Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن الحقائق العامة :

ex. - If / When we freeze water, it turns into ice.

٢ التعبير عن العادات الثابتة أو المواقف التي لها نتيجة منطقية :

ex. - If / When I'm late for work, I take a taxi.
- If / When I go to bed late, I feel tired the next morning.

٣ مع الحقيقة التي تخص موقف معين أو محددة بوقت معين يُفضل أن نستخدم الحالة الأولى وليس الحالة الصفرية :

ex. - If you drop glass, it breaks. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفرية)
- If you drop this glass, it will break. (موقف محدد - حالة أولى)

٤ لاحظ أن المضارع البسيط قد يكون مثبت أو منفي :

ex. - If / when we put water in a freezer, it doesn't turn into steam بخار.

٥ لاحظ أن المضارع البسيط قد يكون معلوم أو مجهول :

ex. - If / When water is put in a freezer, it isn't turned into steam.

2

First Conditional :

الحالة الأولى :

Formation التكوين

١ تتكون الحالة الشرطية الأولى من :

If / Unless إذا لم / إذا + جملة مضارع بسيط , will + inf. +

- ex. - If he works hard, he will earn a lot of money.
 = He will earn a lot of money if he works hard.
 = Unless he works hard, he won't earn a lot of money.
 = He won't earn a lot of money unless he works hard.

٢ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «هل» كالتالي :

If / Unless + جملة مضارع بسيط , will + subj. + inf. ?

- ex. - If he works hard, will he earn a lot of money?
 = Will he earn a lot of money if he works hard?

٣ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» كالتالي :

If / Unless + جملة مضارع بسيط , Q.W. أداة استفهام , will + subj. + inf. ?

- ex. - If he works hard, what will he earn?
 = What will he earn if he works hard?

Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن مواقف قابلة للحدث في المستقبل :

- ex. - If I have enough money, I will buy a car.

٢ يمكن استخدام (can – may – might – must – should) بدلاً من (will) للتعبير عن

القدرة أو الاحتمال أو الضرورة أو النصيحة في المستقبل في جملة جواب الشرط :

- ex. - If you feel tired, you should stop the car and take a rest. (نصيحة)
 - If I want to come first, I must study hard. (ضرورة)

If - In case

تعني (if) أن الحدث سيقع فقط إذا توفر شرط معين :

- ex. - I'll buy some sandwiches if I feel hungry. (سأشتري فقط إذا شعرت بالجوع)

بينما تُستخدم (in case) بمعنى (في حالة) لتدل على القيام بشئ تحسباً للحاجة إليه مستقبلاً :

- ex. - I'll buy some sandwiches in case I feel hungry.

(سأشتري في كل الأحوال تحسباً لأنني قد أشعر بالجوع فيما بعد)

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ استخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المستقبل في فعل الشرط بعد (if):

ex. - If Ahmed (will call - calls) me, I will tell him the truth.

٢ استخدم المضارع البسيط بعد (if) اذا كانت جملة جواب الشرط تتكون من أحدي الصيغ التالية:

1. inf. / don't + inf. / never + inf. (صيغة الأمر)

ex. - If anyone (finds - found - had found - will find) my mobile, please take it to the manager's office.

- Don't run away if you (will see - see - saw - seen) a dog in the street.

2. Let's + inf.

ex. - Let's go to the cinema if you (will be - are - were - had been) bored شاعر بالملل.

3. had better ('d better) + inf.

ex. - If mum (has - had - had had - will have) too much housework, you'd better help her.

4. would rather ('d rather) + inf.

ex. - I'd rather revise for tomorrow's exam if I (will want - want - wanted - had wanted) to get high marks.

5. can / could you + inf.?

- في حالة الطلب المهذب :

ex. - If I (will need - need - needed - had needed) money, could you lend me some?

6. It is + صفة + to + inf.

ex. - It is easy to get married if I (will find - find - found - had found) a good flat.

٣ استخدم (will + inf.) في جملة جواب الشرط إذا كان فعل الشرط أحد الصيغ التالية:

1. If + subj. + (would like / would love / would prefer)

ex. - If you'd like to travel by plane, I (get - will get - would get - would have got) a ticket for you.

2. If + subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing (مضارع مستمر للمستقبل)

ex. - If you're travelling to Aswan next week, I (go - will go - would go - would have gone) with you.

3. If + subj. + have / has + p.p. (مضارع تام)

ex. - If you have done your homework, I (let - will let - would let - would have let) you go out.

Formation التكوين

١ تتكون الحالة الشرطية الثانية من :

If - Unless إذا لم - إذا + would + inf. + جملة ماضى بسيط

- ex.** - If he studied more, he would get better marks.
 = He would get better marks if he studied more.
 = He wouldn't get better marks unless he studied more.

٢ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «هل» كالتالى :

If / Unless + جملة ماضى بسيط , would + subj. + inf. ?

- ex.** - If he studied more, would he get better marks?

٣ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» كالتالى :

If / When + جملة ماضى بسيط , Q.W. أداة استفهام + would + subj. + inf. ?

- ex.** - If he studied more, what would he get?
 = What would he get if he studied more?

Uses استخدامات

١ تعبر الحالة الثانية عن مواقف غير محتملة الحدوث فى المستقبل :

- ex.** - I'm extremely overweight. If I lost much weight, I would run in tomorrow's marathon.

- فى المثال السابق يقول المتحدث أنه زائد جدًا فى الوزن، ولو أنه فقد الكثير من الوزن سيشارك فى ماراثون الغد، لكن هذا غير منطقي لأنه لا أحد يفقد الكثير من الوزن فى يوم واحد
 - أما إذا كان الموقف محتملاً فنستخدم الحالة الأولى، لاحظ المثال التالى :

- I'm fit. If I have the chance, I will run in tomorrow's marathon.

٢ التعبير عن مواقف تخيلية مستحيلة الحدوث فى المضارع أو المستقبل :

- ex.** - If people had wings, they would fly like birds.

٣ إعطاء النصيحة بالصيغة (If I were) :

- ex.** - You should study hard.
 = If I were you, I would study hard.

٤ يمكن استخدام (could - might) بدلاً من (would) للتعبير عن الإمكانية أو الاحتمال أو النصيحة والافتراض :

- ex.** - If I were a bird, I could fly high in the sky.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- ١ لاحظ إمكانية استخدام (was / were) مع المفرد في حالة التخيّل و النصيحة :
- I have much work today. If I was / were not busy, I would play football.
- ٢ الأفعال (cut - put - hit - shut - read) لا تتغير عند تصريفها وتعتبر في الماضي البسيط إذا لم يضاف لها (s) مع (he - she - it) :
- If he read today's newspapers, he (will - would) know the latest news.
- ٣ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had + noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار (would + inf.) :
- If I had a car, I (will drive - would drive - would have driven) you to the airport.
- ٤ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had to + inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار (would + inf.) :
- If she had to work, she (will look - would look - would have looked) for a job as a secretary.
- ٥ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have + noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار ماضي بسيط :
- If my son (pass - passed - had passed) the exam, he would have a present.
- ٦ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have to + inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار ماضي بسيط :
- If Nada (gets - got - had got) late, she would have to take a taxi.

Remember

4 Third Conditional :

الحالة الثالثة :

Statement الجملة الخبرية	If + subj. + had + p.p. , subj. + would / could / might + have + p.p. ex. - If he had trained hard, he would / could / might have won yesterday's match. = He would / could / might have won yesterday's match if he had trained hard.
Yes / No Question السؤال بـ «هل»	Would / Could / Might + subj. + have + p.p. + if + subj. + ... had + p.p.? ex. - If he had trained hard, would he have won yesterday's match ? = Would he have won yesterday's match if he had trained hard ?
(Wh-) Question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + would / could / might + subj. + have + p.p. + if + subj. + ... had + p.p.? ex. - If he had trained hard, what would he have done ? = What would he have done if he had trained hard ?

استخدامات Uses

- ١ تستخدم الحالة الثالثة لتخيل عكس ما حدث في الماضي :
- ex.** - I worked hard on this project. If I hadn't worked hard, I wouldn't have succeeded.
- ٢ تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن الندم على شيء حدث في الماضي :
- ex.** - The traffic policeman fined me yesterday. If I had left my car in the parking area, I wouldn't have been fined.

ملاحظات عامة على الجمل الشرطية General Notes on Conditionals

- ١ يمكن استخدام الروابط التالية بدلا من (if) ويأتي بعدها جملة :
- If = as long as طالما = providing (that) = provided (that)
- ex.** - If he takes the medicine, he will get better.
- As long as he takes the medicine, he will get better.
- ٢ يمكن استخدام حروف الجر والظروف التالية بدلا من (if) ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing / noun) :
- If + جملة = with / by / in case of + noun / (inf. + ing)
- ex.** - If she comes first, she will get a car as a present.
- In case of coming first, she will get a car as a present.
- With your help, I'll succeed. = (If you help me, I'll succeed.)
- ٣ يمكن استخدام (unless) بدلا من (if) مع مراعاة النفي والإثبات حسب المعنى :
- ex.** - If she sleeps early, she will get up early.
- Unless she sleeps early, she won't get up early.
- ٤ يمكن استخدام (without / but for) بدلا من (unless) ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing / noun) :
- Unless + جملة = Without / But for لولا / بدون + (inf. + ing) / noun
- ex.** - Unless he has enough money, he won't buy this flat.
- Without (having) enough money, he won't buy this flat.
- ٥ يمكن استخدام (If it weren't for) بدلا من (unless) في الحالة الثانية ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing / noun) :
- Unless + جملة ماضي بسيط = If it weren't for + (inf. + ing) / noun
- ex.** - Unless he had enough money, he wouldn't buy this flat.
- If it weren't for (having) enough money, he wouldn't buy this flat.

٦ لاحظ صيغ إعطاء النصيحة

If I were you, I'd + inf. = You + should / had better / ought to + inf.

- ex. - You'd better eat healthy food.
- If I were you, I would eat healthy food.

٧ لاحظ استخدام (Were) بدلاً من (If) في الحالة الثانية :

If + جملة ماضى بسيط = Were + subj. + (to + inf.) ...

- ex. - If you told me, I would understand.
- Were you to tell me, I would understand.

لاحظ أنه إذا كانت (were) فعلًا أساسيًا للجملة لا تستخدم (to + inf.) بعد الفاعل :

- ex. - If I were a good footballer, I would be famous.
- Were I a good footballer, I would be famous.

٨ لاحظ استخدام (Had) بدلاً من (If) في الحالة الثانية عندما تكون فعلًا أساسيًا للشرط :

If + subj. + had + ... = Had + subj. + ...

- ex. - If I had enough time, I would help you.
- Had I enough time, I would help you.

كما يمكن استخدام (Had) بدلاً من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الثالثة :

If + subj. + had + p.p. = Had + subj. + p.p.

- ex. - If he had already left, I would have called him.
= Had he already left, I would have called him.

٩ لاحظ صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) في الجمل الشرطية :

If + subj. + مفعول لأجله + had + obj. + مفعول (حالة ثانية)

If + subj. + مفعول لأجله + had had + obj. + مفعول (حالة ثالثة)

- ex. - If he had his camera repaired, he would lend it to me.
- If he had had his camera repaired, he would have lent it to me.

١٠ يمكن استخدام (p.p.) أو صفة بعد (if) كما يلي :

- ... if + p.p. / adj. صفة

- ... if + it / this / that / he / she ... + be + p.p. / p.p.

- ex. - I will buy another fan if needed.
= I will buy another fan if that is needed.
- She wouldn't use her mobile at work again if warned.
= She wouldn't use her mobile at work again if she was warned.
- I would have helped you if possible.
= I would have helped you if it had been possible.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. If Magda a language course, she would be able to speak to foreigners. (شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
a. does b. will do c. did d. would do
2. What do if you get lost in a big city? (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
a. you will b. will you c. would you d. you would
3. If it rains tomorrow, we the picnic. (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. will have to cancel b. had to cancel
c. cancel d. would cancel
4. What you do if you lost your mobile? (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. will b. do c. would d. did
5. I would travel to Alexandria if my car (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. had checked b. was checked c. is check d. had been checked
6. What would you do if your friend an accident? (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. have b. would have c. has d. had
7. If Ali all his money, he would have to borrow. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
a. spends b. spent c. had spent d. was spending
8. If I much money, I would have a villa. (بو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
a. have b. had had c. had d. have had
9. If you water these plants, they faster. (ورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. grown b. would grow c. will grow d. grew
10. If Samia the test, she will go to Cairo University next year.
a. would pass b. will pass c. passes d. passed
11. You can't get a driving license you are over 18 years old. (نطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)
a. without b. in case of c. if d. unless

2 Special cases

12. Were you the truth, I would help you. (جا ٢٠٢٣)
a. tell b. told c. to tell d. telling
13. their help; I wouldn't have done any remarkable progress. (قلقة ٢٠٢٣)
a. If b. Unless c. Without d. If only

14. I will buy some tablets I feel a headache in the meeting room.

There is no pharmacy near here.

(ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. if b. in case c. unless d. a & b

15. Had I had a good memory, I his name.

(الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. would remember b. will remember
c. remembered d. would have remembered

16. He make that mistake if he read the question carefully. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. won't b. would c. should d. wouldn't

17. In case of very fast, he'd have an accident.

(الحوامدية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. had driven b. drove c. driven d. driving

18. They have not decided on they will leave or not.

(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. if b. weather c. whether d. where

19. he to study harder, he could get high marks.

(ابو قرقاص ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Had b. Should c. Were d. In case

20. If he read a lot on his mobile, he his eyes.

(ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. damaged b. won't damage c. would damage d. will damage

3 Check your understanding

21. If Marwa were a doctor, she would help the injured woman. This means that Marwa

(اطسا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. can't help the injured woman since she isn't a doctor
b. wasn't a doctor so she couldn't help the injured woman
c. wasn't a doctor but she could help the injured woman
d. isn't a doctor as she can't help the injured woman



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advantages (n)	مزايا	feedback (n)	غذية راجعة - تقييم
app = application (n)	تطبيق	quiz (zed) (n - v)	مسابقة أسئلة - امتحان
application (n)	طلب التحاق		قصير - يستجوب
chat(ted) (v - n)	يحدث - دردشة	translation (n)	ترجمة
disadvantages (n)	عيوب		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

account (n)	حساب (مصرفي / على الإنترنت)	negative (adj)	سلبى
admit(ted) (v)	يقر بـ - يعترف بـ	offer (ed) (v)	يضع - يعرض
argue(d) (v)	يجادل - يناقش	online (adj / adv)	على الإنترنت
brainstorm(ed) (n-v)	العصف الذهني - يستثير الفكر	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	popular (adj)	شعبى - ذو شعبية
collection (n)	مجموعة	positive (adj)	إيجابي
comment(n)	تعليق	press(ed) (v - n)	ضغط - ضغط
completely (adv)	تماماً	press(n)	صحافة
conclusion (n)	خاتمة - خلاصة	printing (n - adj)	طباعة - مطبوع
cost-cost (v - n)	يتكلف - التكلفة	progress(n)	تقدم
details (n)	تفاصيل	seem(ed) (v)	يبدو
device(n)	جهاز - أداة	share(d) (v)	يشارك - ينشر على الإنترنت
documentary (n-adj)	برنامج وثائقي - توثيقي	software(n)	أمج رقمية
download(ed) (v - n)	يُنزل - التنزيل (من الإنترنت)	stress(n)	ضغط العصبي / الإجهاد
electronic (adj)	إلكتروني	stressful(adj)	إلحاق / مُجهِد - مُزعج
extreme(adj)	شديد - متطرف	studies (n)	دراسات
guess(ed) (v)	يخمن	summary(n)	ملخص
human being	إنسان	technological(adj)	تكنولوجي
imagine(d) (v)	تخيل	technology(n)	تكنولوجيا
memory(n)	الذاكرة	tip(n)	نصيحة

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
app(n) تطبيق	software برنامج on your smartphone
chat(v) يدرّش	to communicate with other people online
feedback(n) تغذية راجعة	information about how well or badly you did something
quiz(n) مسابقة أسئلة	questions to find out how much you know
translation(n) ترجمة	words changed into another language

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- He enjoys with his online friends in his free time. (ادفُو ٢٣٠٢)
a. cycling b. printing c. benefiting d. chatting
- I've learnt how to be good at from and into English.
a. translation b. feedback c. hybridisation d. navigation
- Google Store is full of useful
a. vehicles b. applications c. apps d. b & c
- One of the so many of this small car is that it does not use much petrol.
a. disadvantages b. advantages c. demerits d. downsides
- "I had a ten-minute chat with my friend." In this sentence, 'chat' is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
- I asked my friend to do a with me.
a. quiz b. suggestion c. mistake d. comment
- My form was sent by email to the company.
a. comment b. communication c. application d. development
- Criticism and advice are kinds of
a. buttons b. robots c. philosophy d. feedback
- Not everything in modern technology is good. There're surely some
a. advantages b. disadvantages c. merits d. upsides

2 Important Vocabulary

- The teacher asked us to read the text and make
a. research b. surveys c. comments d. jobs
- Modern like mobiles and other devices has made life easier.
a. post b. message c. technology d. business

12. Most young people prefer news websites to printed newspapers.
a. traditional b. paper c. offline d. online
13. I expect he won't accept the It is not a good price for his car.
a. comment b. offer c. collection d. printing
14. Colour is better but costly مُكلفه so publishers prefer black and white.
a. comment b. offer c. collection d. printing
15. The players of our team find it difficult to play well in the heat of some African countries.
a. extreme b. stressed c. online d. beneficial
16. I found a good of apps on Google Play.
a. comment b. offer c. collection d. printing
17. A: Did Ahmed leave the exam room? B: I not.
a. affect b. crash c. do d. guess
18. I this file from an educational website.
a. uploaded b. downloaded c. clicked d. posted
19. A compass البوصلة is a that helps us know directions.
a. device b. summary c. software d. progress
20. You end your essay with the
a. title b. introduction c. body d. conclusion
21. She is not strong enough to do all this work.
a. extreme b. stressful c. familiar d. beneficial
22. Facebook is one of the most social networking sites.
a. complex b. complicated c. printed d. popular
23. Applications are that helps you do some jobs on a computer or mobile.
a. device b. summary c. software d. progress
24. My laptop has a terabyte
a. tip b. memory c. website d. century
25. A: Do you have a / an on Telegram? B: No, but I have one on Facebook.
a. account b. press c. button d. progress
26. I like watching about ancient Egyptian civilization.
a. consequences b. cycles c. documentaries d. technology
27. I think the is not enough. You need to read the whole report.
a. device b. summary c. software d. progress
28. My two daughters some qualities. They both are intelligent, hard-working and helpful.
a. share b. cycle c. communicate d. save
29. A: Do you think printing is still effective?
B: Online one is now more effective.
a. progress b. press c. danger d. software
30. Sama has made clear in her studies.
a. device b. summary c. software d. progress

3 Definitions

31. A/An is a software on your smartphone. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)
- a. memory card b. app c. email d. device
32. A is questions to find out how much you know.
- a. quiz b. tip c. guess d. map
33. To is to communicate with other people online.
- a. evacuate b. stress c. chat d. comment
34. means information about how well or badly you did something.
- a. Conclusion b. Progress c. Translation d. Feedback

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

find	an answer to	يجد إجابة / حل لـ	do	well/badly	يؤدي بشكل جيد / سوء
give	... better understanding	يساعد ... على فهم أفضل	lose	interest in	يفقد اهتمامه بـ
	... an address	يعطى ... عنوان	make	progress	يحقق تقدم
	specific examples	يعطى أمثلة محددة	offer	a chart	يرسم لوحة أو جدول بيانات
take	time/many years	يستغرق وقت / سنوات كثيرة	have	advantages	يقدم مميزات
				an effect on	له أثر على
press	a button	يضغط زر		tests	لديه اختبارات
				fun	يمرح - يلهو

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
advantages	مزايا - إيجابيات
extreme	شديد / متطرف
stressful	شاق / مجهد - مزعج
	merits, upsides, benefits
	radical, extremist, unreasonable, fanatical
	exhausting, hard, tough

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
advantages	disadvantages, demerits, downsides, problems
expert	inexpert
extreme	moderate, mild, tolerant
online	offline, disconnected
stressful	relaxing, easy
	مساوي - عيوب
	عديم الخبرة
	معتدل
	غير متصل بالإنترنت
	مريح / سهل

4

Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

chat		
chat(v)	يُدرِّش	- I chatted with some friends.
chat(n)	دردشة	- I had a chat with some friends.
chatting(n)	الدردشة	- Chatting may waste our time.
invention		
invent(v)	يُخترع	- Do you know who invented the mobile phone?
invent(v)	يُخترق / يُؤلف	- Liars invent stories to trick others.
invention(n)	اختراع	- The computer is a useful invention .
inventor(n)	مُخترع	- Do you know who is the inventor of the mobile phone ?
inventive(adj)	مُبتكر / مُبدع	- Mr Ashraf is an inventive teacher.
translation		
translate(v)	يُترجم	- I translate from English into Arabic.
translation(n)	ترجمة	- Translation from one language to another is not easy for some students.
translator(n)	مُترجم	- Translators do not earn much money.
translated(adj)	مُترجم	- Translated scientific texts are sometimes difficult to understand.

5

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

be seen as	يُنظر إليه كـ - يُعتَقَد أنه	on their own	بمفردهم - دون مساعدة
for or against	مع أو ضد	personal details	التفاصيل الشخصية
free time	وقت فراغ	put ... in order of ...	يرتب ... حسب
help me find	يساعد في إيجاد	reason for	سبب لـ
I guess not	لا أعتقد ذلك	stop people enjoying	يمنع الناس من الاستمتاع بـ
In conclusion	الخلاصة هي	that seems extreme	ذلك يبدو موقف متشدد
make life easier	يجعل الحياة أسهل	the printing press	الصحافة المطبوعة
on the one hand	من ناحية	I would argue that	يمكنني أن أقول أن
on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى		

6

Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add ... to	يضيف ... إلى	live without	يحيا بدون
change ... into	يحوّل ... إلى	think about	يُفكر في
do without	يفعل ... بدون - يستغني عن	turn on	يُشغّل
feel about	يشعر تجاه	write ... down	يُدوّن - يُسجّل

translate - interpret

• translate

يُترجم (كلام مكتوب أو شفهي)

- I have translated a lot of film scripts into Arabic.

• interpret

يترجم فوري (مع إمكانية التفسير)

- Dr Amr interprets the coach's instructions to the players.

download - upload

• download (v) يَنْزِلُ ملف ≠ upload (v) يرفع ملف

- I downloaded some books about farming.

• download (n) ملف مرفوع على الانترنت ≠ upload (n) ملف مُنْزَل من الانترنت

- She keeps her downloads in this folder.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- download ... from يَنْزِلُ من

- download to / onto يَنْزِلُ إلى

- upload ... to يرفع على

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

★ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

- The with this iPhone is that it is costly. (طلعا ٢٠٢٣)
 - benefit
 - downside
 - reason
 - problem
 - cause
- The verb 'make' collocates with
 - research
 - a mistake
 - survey
 - the shopping
 - progress
- Exercise is something that can be
 - had
 - gone
 - done
 - taken
 - caused
- Learning a foreign language takes
 - time
 - part
 - the place
 - years
 - buttons
- "Increasing air pollution is one of the disadvantages of this factory." The word 'disadvantages' here is antonymous with
 - merits
 - upsides
 - downsides
 - negatives
 - bad effects
- "I do not agree with your extreme ideas." The adjective 'extreme' in this context is a synonym of
 - severe
 - moderate
 - exaggerated
 - normal
 - usual

- ★ **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We add the prefix to form the antonym of the word "expert".
a. un- b. dis- c. in- d. ir- (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
2. "Here are a lot of disadvantages for the internet." The antonym of 'disadvantage' is
a. drawbacks b. demerits c. problems d. benefits (Tablet Exam 2022)
3. We are trying to a reasonable answer to this question.
a. do b. cause c. find d. go
4. He was surprised when I told him how badly his son had in the exam.
a. left b. done c. got d. taken
5. As a student, I don't have enough time to online for fun.
a. have b. cause c. find d. go
6. Teachers specific examples to make their points clear.
a. offer b. give c. do d. cause
7. I need someone to this research into English.
a. translate b. translation c. translator d. translated
8. I need a to help me with this research.
a. translate b. translation c. translator d. translated
9. The new decision is seen a step towards developing education.
a. by b. as c. from d. on
10. The government plans to change this desert area a new town.
a. over b. by c. into d. from
11. I have interest in watching football matches because of blind fanaticism among fans.
a. had b. got c. lost d. gained

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Is technology always a good thing?

Lesson 3 WB page 94

This question has been asked for many years but has anyone found an answer? On the one hand, there are always **dangers**⁽¹⁾ with new technology. More than two thousand years ago, a **Greek**⁽²⁾ **philosopher**⁽³⁾ called Socrates was worried that writing things down would stop students using their **memories**⁽⁴⁾. In the 16th **century**⁽⁵⁾, following the invention of the **printing press**⁽⁶⁾, a **Swiss**⁽⁷⁾ philosopher called Conrad Gessner thought that books would give people too much information.

مخاطر

يوناني

فيلسوف

الذاكرة

قرن (١٦٠٠ عام)

الصحافة المطبوعة

سويسري

And in the 20th century, many people thought that the radio would make it difficult for students to think about their studies⁽⁸⁾.

On the other hand⁽⁹⁾, technology usually offers some advantages⁽¹⁰⁾. Books and writing are seen as positive⁽¹¹⁾ things today and most people think that their advantages are more important than any disadvantages.

In conclusion⁽¹²⁾, perhaps it takes many years before we can see clearly⁽¹³⁾ whether new technology is good or bad.

(8) دراسات

(9) على الجانب الآخر

(10) مميزات

(11) إيجابي

(12) ختام - خلاصة

(13) بوضوح

The advantages and disadvantages⁽¹⁾ of technology Lesson 4 SB page 21

I like technology⁽²⁾ a lot and I use it every day. It helps me find information for my school work and I can buy things easily online. But technology isn't always a good thing. It can lead to⁽³⁾ a lot of stress⁽⁴⁾ and it can stop⁽⁵⁾ people enjoying their free time.

Karim

I don't know what I would do without technology! It makes life easier and you can do things so much faster. And how would we travel without technology? You can travel from Cairo to London in just⁽⁶⁾ five hours in a plane!

Dina

(1) عيوب

(2) التكنولوجيا

(3) يؤدي إلى

(4) الضغط

(5) يمنع / يوقف - يتوقف

(6) فقط / فحسب

Put the conversation in the correct order. Start with "a" Lesson 4 WB page 95

- a. **Hala** : Hi, Randa. Did you watch the documentary on technology last night ? I must say that it was really surprising !
- b. **Randa** : I don't use GPS, so that's OK. But can you imagine life without the internet ?
- c. **Randa** : Yes. I have to admit that's true. I never share my personal information online. And now my brother won't even turn on his phone.
- d. **Hala** : That seems extreme. I think we should be fine if we are careful. I would argue that we need to think carefully about the information we share.
- e. **Hala** : No, I guess not. On the one hand, it's very useful for many things. But on the other hand, we should be careful about what we do with our personal details and who we give them to.

f. Hala : Yes, I understand why he thinks that. The documentary said internet companies are collecting information about us. For example, they know where we go because they can find that information is in our GPS.

g. Randa : No, I didn't but my brother told me about it this morning. Now he's worried that his phone is collecting information about him.

1.a..... 2.g..... 3.f..... 4.b.....
5.e..... 6.c..... 7.d.....

2 Listening Text

Lesson 3 SB page 20

Amal : **Technology**⁽¹⁾ is so useful when you're learning something, Hana ! You can find the information you need really quickly. If you don't understand a word when you're reading a **text**⁽²⁾, you can find the **translation**⁽³⁾ for it.

Hana : **You're right**⁽⁴⁾, Amal, but does that really help you to learn ? I think that if you learn something, you remember it and you can use it when you're talking or writing. Technology can't help you remember things or write texts.

Amal : Well, **not exactly**⁽⁵⁾, but if you use a **language app**⁽⁶⁾, for example, you can do **quizzes**⁽⁷⁾ about new words to help you remember them. And there are apps that give you **feedback**⁽⁸⁾ on your writing so you can do it better next time.

Hana : I understand what you're saying. That's just not the way I learn. I prefer using a pen and paper and **making notes**⁽⁹⁾ in my notebook. I don't need a **smartphone**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Amal : **That's Ok**⁽¹¹⁾. Everyone's different. **For me**⁽¹²⁾, the best thing about using technology to learn is that you can **chat**⁽¹³⁾ to people from all over the world online. That's really nice when you're doing your homework on your own. If you have questions, they'll help you.

- (1) التكنولوجيا
(2) نص
(3) ترجمة
(4) أنت على صواب
(5) ليس بالضبط
(6) تطبيق لغوي
(7) امتحانات قصيرة
(8) تغذية راجعة - نتيجة
(9) يدون ملاحظات
(10) هاتف ذكي
(11) هذا جيد
(12) في رأيي / بالنسبة لي
(13) يدرّش

3 Video script section

Will people need to learn **foreign languages**⁽¹⁾ in the future ? Or will technology speak them for us ? Some people think that if apps and translation **software**⁽²⁾ continue to improve over the next ten to twenty years, language lessons will become **a thing of the past**⁽³⁾.

But can an app or a piece of software really communicate like a person can ?

They can **definitely**⁽⁴⁾ translate words, or even whole sentences, from one language to another. But they can't smile at the person you're talking to and show them that you really **mean**⁽⁵⁾ what you're saying.

When you speak in a foreign language, you speak to another **human**⁽⁶⁾ being and human beings **find it difficult to**⁽⁷⁾ become friends with smartphones or computers - we are **programmed**⁽⁸⁾ to **prefer**⁽⁹⁾ other human beings. That's why we can **feel sure**⁽¹⁰⁾ that learning languages still has a future.

(1) اللغات الأجنبية

(2) برامج الحاسوب

(3) شيء من الماضي

(4) بالتأكيد

(5) تعلى / تقصد

(6) إنسان

(7) يجد من الصعوبة أن

(8) يبرمج

(9) يفضل

(10) يشعر بالتأكد

PART IV

LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تنويه

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ✨ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- If he faster, he would catch the bus. (منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
a. went b. goes c. gone d. going
- What do if you get lost in a big city is to check your GPS.
a. you will b. will you c. would you d. you would
- Grandma usually a short nap if she feels tired. (جهيئة ٢٠٢٣)
a. will take b. takes c. took d. take
- If you what I say, ask your mother. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
a. won't believe b. didn't believe c. don't believe d. hadn't believed
- If we more trees, we will save our planet. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
a. plants b. plant c. would plant d. will plant
- If you asked me, I you. (زفتي ٢٠٢٣)
a. help b. am helping c. would help d. will help
- If I had a motorbike, I to Giza every now and then. (الحوامدية ٢٠٢٣)
a. will go b. would go c. would have gone d. go

8. If she the competition, she'd probably win a prize.
 a. will enter b. enters c. entered d. had entered
9. You always water if you mix hydrogen and oxygen.
 a. got b. will get c. would get d. get
10. He wouldn't take a taxi if someone for him at the airport.
 a. had waited b. waited c. has waited d. waiting
11. How she feel if she read this novel again?
 a. does b. did c. would d. will
12. If I a holiday, I would have a swim in the sea.
 a. had had b. have had c. had d. don't have
13. he felt tired, he'd go to bed early.
 a. But for b. With c. If d. Without
14. They won't come to the party we invite them.
 a. without b. unless c. in case of d. if
15. If I enough money for the project, I wouldn't have to borrow from the bank.
 a. had had b. didn't have c. had d. have
16. If people don't get enough food, they weak.
 a. became b. would become
 c. become d. would have become
17. If metals are cooled, they.....
 a. will contract b. would contract c. contract d. contracted
18. I'd fly if I a bird.
 a. will be b. had been c. were d. am
19. I'd have been pleased with you if you the homework.
 a. hadn't done b. had done c. would do d. do

2 Special cases

20. her courage, the kid wouldn't have been saved. (البهيرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. If b. Unless c. In case of d. Without
21. If he read the news, he everything about the terrible accident.
 a. may know b. will know c. would know d. know
22. Malak to read the book, she would get much information. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. If b. Unless c. Were d. Should
23. I'd rather start now if I to finish in time. (سمند ٢٠٢٣)
 a. have b. don't have c. had d. had had
24. If this trip cost much money, I join it.
 a. am not b. don't c. won't d. wouldn't
25. It's important to take your medicine if you ill.
 a. are felt b. feel c. felt d. had felt
26. We'd better train hard if we to win the match.
 a. had wanted b. wanted c. want d. don't want

27. If you had to leave now, I you a lift.
a. give b. will give
c. would give d. would have given
28. Don't drink tea if you to sleep early.
a. had wanted b. wanted c. want d. are wanted
29. If she'd like to come with us, she permission إذن from her parents.
a. need b. will need c. would need d. would have need
30. If she has finished the reports, she the office.
a. leave b. would leave c. would have left d. can leave
31. If I tired, I would have to take a rest.
a. feel b. don't feel c. felt d. had felt
32. Let's go for a walk if you to stay at home.
a. want b. don't want c. didn't want d. hadn't wanted
33. I you if you are studying for your next exams.
a. won't visit b. wouldn't visit
c. wouldn't have visited d. visit
34. If Sama the school trip, she would have a happy day.
a. hadn't joined b. had joined c. joined d. joins
35. Can you lend me some money if you enough ?
a. don't have b. have c. had d. had had

3 Check your understanding

36. "If I come first this year, I'll get a reward". This means
a. it is impossible that I come first b. I will probably come first
c. it is not likely that I come first d. I did not come first
37. "If I came first this year, I'd get a reward". This means
a. it's impossible that I will come first b. I will probably come first
c. it is not likely that I will come first d. I did not come first
38. "If I were you, I'd do my best". This means " "
a. I advise you to do your best b. I advise you not to do your best
c. You shouldn't do your best d. You don't have to do your best
39. "I'll buy a fire extinguisher in case there's fire". I mean that
a. I won't buy a fire extinguisher
b. I will buy a fire extinguisher when there's a fire
c. I'll buy a fire extinguisher to be prepared for any fire
d. I will buy a fire extinguisher to start a fire
40. I am 150 cm and I am 25. If I
a. am taller, I will join a basketball team
b. were taller, I would join a basketball team
c. had been taller, I would join a basketball team
d. had been taller, I would have been joined a basketball team



PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ لاحظ التعبيرات التالية مع (help):

help + obj. المفعول + inf. = help + obj. مفعول + to + inf.

ex. - My teacher helped me the lesson.

- a. understanding b. to understand c. understand d. b & c

help + inf. / to + inf.

ex. - She agreed to help the housework.

- a. do b. to do c. doing d. a & b

help + obj. مفعول + with + n.

ex. - I promised to help mum with the cooking.

٢ لاحظ التعبيرات التالية مع (make):

make يجعل + obj. مفعول + adj. صفة

ex. - Your call has made me

- a. happily b. happiness c. happy d. happening

make + obj. مفعول + inf. (معلوم)

obj. المفعول + be + made + to + inf. (مجهول)

ex. - Mr Hossam made Omar the essay again.

- a. write b. to write c. writing d. to writing

ex. - Omar was made the essay again.

- a. write b. to write c. writing d. to writing

٣ لاحظ استخدام التعبيرات التالية:

- on the one hand من ناحية

- on the other hand من الناحية الأخرى (للتعبير عن الرأي المخالف)

ex. - Smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, they have made life and communication easier. On the other hand, they have made people lazy.

٤ لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد أدوات الاستفهام :

- ex. - I am really confused متحير. I don't know what to do.
 - Can you tell me where to park my car ?
 - I asked her how to feed the baby.

٥ لاحظ الفرق بين :

- on his / her ... own بمفرده / دون مساعدة = by himself / herself ... = alone
 - of his / her ... own ملكه / يخصه

- ex. - He has a private car. He has a car his own.

a. with b. of c. from d. on

- No one lives with her. She lives her own.

a. with b. of c. from d. on

٦ لا تجمع (hundred - thousand - million...) بعد الأرقام أو (a few - many - several ...) :

- ex. - The Pharaohs had a great civilization five years ago.

a. a thousand b. thousands c. thousand d. few thousand

٧ تُستخدم (such) بمعنى (مثل هذا) قبل اسم أو صفة يتبعها اسم :

- ex. - I can't eat such food.

- They never miss such important meetings.

٨ لاحظ أن :

called = who / which / that is called

- ex. - I have a daughter called Rodayna.

= I have a daughter who is called Rodayna.

٩ يمكن أن تُستخدم (following) كحرف جر بمعنى (بعد) :

- ex. - Following the birth of her second son, she decided to leave her job.

= After the birth of her second son, she decided to leave her job.

١٠ لاحظ الصيغة التالية للنفي المُطلق :

لم / لن ... مرة أخرى على الإطلاق ... not + ... + ever again.

- ex. - I promised that I wouldn't smoke again.

a. never b. ever c. every d. any

١١ لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

السبب في ... هو لكي ... The reason that + جملة + is so that ...

- ex. - The reason that he works hard so that he can pass his exams.

a. have b. has c. was d. is

١٢ كلمة (internet) غالباً تسبقها (the) :

- ex. - The internet has made information exchange easier.

(Not: Internet has ...)

١٣ كلمة (the internet) يسبقها حرف الجر (on) للتعبير عن القيام بشيء على شبكة الإنترنت :
ex. - I had a lot of friends on the internet. (**Not:** ... by the internet)

١٤ كلمة (online) تُستخدم كصفة أو كظرف بمعنى (مُتصل بالإنترنت / على الإنترنت / عن طريق الإنترنت) :

ex. - Online shopping is now common. (صفة)
 - You can buy anything you want online. (ظرف)

١٥ لاحظ أن (lead to) والتي تعني (يؤدي إلي) يأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

ex. - Hard work leads to success النجاح.
 - Smoking leads to having a lot of health problems.

Exercise On Language Hints

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'm sure you will solve this problem your own. (مينة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. on b. from c. with d. by
2. What is the advantage of having an expensive car ? (فر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
 a. so b. too c. such d. very
3. has become more familiar.
 a. Shopping online b. Online shopping
 c. a & b d. On a shopping line
4. Using pesticides المبيدات leads the crops.
 a. pollute b. to pollute c. polluting d. to polluting
5. I asked him not to waste his time chatting on
 a. internet b. the internet c. an internet d. a & b
6. the manager's unfair decision, I decided to resign يستقيل.
 a. On b. During c. Following d. Because
7. I helped Sama the housework.
 a. doing b. to do c. do d. b & c
8. I helped Sama the housework.
 a. with b. on c. at d. from
9. My father's recovery شفاء made us
 a. happy b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & b
10. We were made by my father's recovery.
 a. happily b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & b
11. I want to know where my car.
 a. park b. to park c. parking d. to parking
12. I have a tablet my own. I bought it a week ago.
 a. on b. of c. in d. b & c
13. I won't agree to such
 a. plan b. a plan c. a bad plan d. b & c

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (دکرنس ۲۰۲۳)

For the last two years I have been living in Bangladesh, with my parents and my baby sister. We moved here from England and at first, I didn't like it because I missed all my school friends. Most students arrive at school in the morning, books in hand, and return home in the afternoon, with a lot of homework. This is the idea we have when we think of schools. However, some schools, like the boat schools in Bangladesh, are a little different from what I was used to.

Twice a year, there are heavy rainstorms in Bangladesh, which cover the area with lots of water. This leaves millions of people without clean water, electricity and other important things. It becomes difficult for children to go to schools and for those schools to keep their doors open. To solve these problems, some people thought of a brilliant idea to help the children. **They** built houses, health centres and schools that move around on top of the water.

Now, there are almost 100 boat schools. Each of these schools gets electricity from the sun and has one laptop computer with internet and even a small library. These boat schools are a school and a school bus, all in one. Whenever there's too much water and every other service is closed, these types of schools are still open. They pick up their students from the side of the rivers, and then stop somewhere so that classes can begin. After the lessons are finished, the boat schools return the students to their homes and another group of students is picked up. About 70,000 children have used the boat schools since they started, fifteen years ago.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What does the writer say happens every six months in Bangladesh?
 - a. The country doesn't have enough water.
 - b. Lots of water brings problems to the country.
 - c. Schools close for cleaning.
 - d. Students don't want to go to schools.
2. What problem do many children have at different times of the year?
 - a. They have too much homework when it rains.
 - b. Their parents have to buy a boat for them.
 - c. They cannot use things that need electricity.
 - d. They don't have their laptops.

3. Where can people see a doctor when there is too much water?
 - a. At the health center, on the river.
 - b. Inside the library.
 - c. In the school that is now closed.
 - d. In the school that is now opened.
4. Where does the writer say children can see information online?
 - a. At the health centres
 - b. On the side of the river
 - c. At school when it is open
 - d. On the boat schools
5. What is the best title for the article?
 - a. The First Day at School
 - b. An Unusual School
 - c. The worst schools
 - d. The Best School in Bangladesh
6. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to
 - a. problems
 - b. people
 - c. children
 - d. doors
7. How many laptops connected to the internet are there on a boat school?
 - a. 1
 - b. 10
 - c. 100
 - d. 1000

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

✪ Write an essay about an invention that you use every day and why it's important to you.

إرشادات موجزة Brief tips

عند كتابة مقال عن «اختراع مهم تستخدمه بشكل يومي وسبب أهميته لك»، يمكنك الاستعانة بالإرشادات التالية :

1. Title : العنوان

Give your essay an interesting title which makes people want to read it.

اكتب عنوانًا شيقًا يجذب الناس لقراءته.

2. Introduction : المقدمة

Start with a question (which you answer in paragraph two).

Use semi-formal language.

ابدأ المقدمة بسؤال تُجيب عليه في الفقرة الرئيسية للموضوع.

3. Main Body : الموضوع الرئيسي

Explain what the invention is and how long you have had it. Say how you use it and why it is so important for you.

وضح ماذا يكون هذا الاختراع ومنذ متى وأنت تستخدمه وكيف تستخدمه ولماذا هو مهم بالنسبة إليك.

4. Conclusion : الخاتمة

Explain who might find this invention useful and why you recommend it.

اذكر من قد يجد هذا الاختراع مفيدًا ولماذا توصي به.

The tablet and the enjoyment of learning

Have you ever thought that learning will be enjoyable one day? I think that most older generations never thought of this idea. To them, learning was a large book, heaps of paper and long hours of study and suffering. However, modern technology has made learning a real fun. How has this happened? Digital devices: Smart phones and tablets have remarkable impact on teaching and learning process. Tablets provide students with great educational material and resources: documentaries, videos, films and more. Using tablets in schools has made a tremendous leap in our education system for both students and teachers. Students can download images, 3D pictures and videos about different topics in all subjects.

Using visual and audio effects makes learning not only easier but also more effective and fun as well. There are huge resources which students can choose from and share with their classmates. The role of the teacher has changed to be a facilitator and a guide to students. Teachers don't focus on introducing information to students but on how to help students develop their skills and through doing activities. A student can't do without his tablet which has his textbooks, notes and even tests. It connects students with the teachers, classmates and the whole world.

3 الترجمة Translation

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. In fact, we are much luckier than our ancestors because we enjoy lots of things which have made our life easier and more comfortable.

- a. في الواقع، نحن أكثر حظاً بكثير من أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التي جعلت حياتنا أسهل وأكثر راحة.
- b. في الواقع، نحن أكثر من محظوظين عن أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التي جعلت حياتنا أسهل وأكثر راحة.
- c. في الواقع، نحن أكثر حظاً بكثير من أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التي جعلت حياتهم أسهل وأكثر راحة.
- d. في الواقع، نحن أكثر حظاً بكثير من أجدادنا لأنهم يفتقدون الكثير من الأشياء التي جعلت حياتنا أسهل وأكثر راحة.

2. Technology experts are predicting that the computer games of the future will be a lot more demanding both for game producers and for players.

(ملوي - دمج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يتنبأ خبراء التكنولوجيا بأن ألعاب الكمبيوتر ستستحوذ على المزيد من الاهتمام في المستقبل من كل من المنتجين واللاعبين.
- b. يتنبأ خبراء التكنولوجيا بأن الألعاب الرياضية ستستحوذ على المزيد من الاهتمام في المستقبل من كل من المنتجين واللاعبين.
- c. يعتقد خبراء التكنولوجيا بأن ألعاب الكمبيوتر لن تستحوذ على المزيد من الاهتمام في المستقبل من كل من المنتجين ولا اللاعبين.
- d. يتنبأ خبراء الكمبيوتر بأن ألعاب التكنولوجيا ستستحوذ على المزيد من الاهتمام في المستقبل من كل من المنتجين واللاعبين.

● **2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :**

١. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دوراً فعالاً في حياتنا، مع العلم أنها كما تُسهم في تقدم المجتمعات فمن الممكن أن تدمرها. (المحدودة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Modern technology plays an effective role in our life, but we should know that as it contributes to the societies' progress, it can destroy them.
- b. Modern technology is playing effective roles in our past life, but we had to know that as it neglects the progress to the continents, it can support them.
- c. Modern technology played an effect role in our previous life, but we should be known that as it contributed the progress to the societies, it could destroy them.
- d. Modern technology has an effectively rule in our former life, but we must have known that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can have ruined them.

٢. يجب أن نتعامل مع التكنولوجيا الحديثة بحكمة حتى نستفيد من منافعها وتجنب أضرارها. (بيلا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. We should deal with modern technology unwisely to make use of its benefits and avoid its harms.
- b. We should deal with modern technology wisely to make use of its harms and avoid its benefits.
- c. We should deal with modern technology wisely to make use of its benefits and avoid its harms.
- d. We should play with modern technology wisely to make use of its benefits and avoid its harms.

app = application

تُستخدم كلمة (app) كاختصار لكلمة (application) فقط عندما تعني (تطبيق أو برنامج إلكتروني):

- **app = application (n)** تطبيق إلكتروني (على الكمبيوتر أو الهواتف الذكية)
- Modern mobiles have a lot of apps (= applications).
- **application (n)** طلب التحاق (بوظيفة أو عضوية ...)
- The company received hundreds of applications for the job. (**Not: apps**)
- **application (n)** تطبيق عملي (تنفيذ لفكرة)
- The application of this plan needs enough time. (**Not: app**)
- **apply (for / to)(v)** يتقدم بطلب
- I want to apply for this job.
- **apply (v)** يُطبّق فكرة أو خطة - يُنفذ
- It is not easy to apply this idea because it costs too much money.
- **apply (to)(v)** ينطبق على
- School rules apply to all students.

chat

- **chat (with / to / about) (v)** يتسامر (يتحدث مع شخص بشكل ودي)
- Rokaya has been chatting with her friends for two hours.
- The two men chatted about their childhood memories ذكريات الطفولة.
- **chat (with / to / about) (v)** يدرّش (يتحدث مع شخص عبر الإنترنت)
- You waste too much time chatting with your friends online.
- **chat (with / to / about) (n)** دردشة - حديث ودي
- Ayman had a short chat with Ashraf.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have a chat يدرّش
- call in for a chat يتصل للدردشة
- a little / a brief chat دردشة لفترة قصيرة
- an online chat دردشة على الإنترنت

click

- **click (on) (v)** يقر - يُخِث صوت طقطقة
- If you click twice on a file or a folder, it opens.
- **click (n)** نقرة (على الماوس أو أي زر)
- You can open a file or folder with a double click.

• click (n)

صوت طقطقة

- When I heard the **click** of the lock القفل, I knew that the door was locked

حظ التعبيرات التالية:

- at the click of a mouse بسرعة جداً / في غمضة عين
- shut / close with a click يُحْدِث صوت تَكَّة عند القفل

navigate

• navigate (v)

حدد الطريق أو خط السير

- In the past, the stars helped travellers to **navigate**.

• navigate (v)

فهم

- This guide دليل will help you to **navigate** the subject.

• navigate (v)

يجر

- The waves were high and it was difficult to **navigate**.

• navigation (n)

لملاحة / السفر بحراً

- **Navigation** needs a lot of experience and patience الصبر.

• sat-nav = satellite navigation (n)

جهاز التحوال بالقمر الصناعي

- This car has satellite **navigation**.

• navigator (n)

ضابط الملاحة (ملاح - ربان - بحار)

- He is a clever **navigator** who never gets lost.

link

• link ... to / with (v)

يربط ... بـ

- Love and respect **link** me **to** / **with** my friends.
- This road **links** Aswan to Luxor.

• link ... together (v)

يربط ... معاً

- Love and respect **links** my friends and me **together**.

• link / linkage (between ... and...) (n)

رابط / علاقة بين ... و ...

- Love and respect are the **link** / **linkage** between my friends **and** me.

• link (n)

رابط (الصفحة أو موقع علي الانترنت)

- He sent me the **link** of his website.

technology

• technology (n)

التكنولوجيا (الآلات والمعدات و الأساليب التي تعتمد علي التطور العلمي والحاسوبي)

- Modern **technology** has made life easy.

- لاحظ أن كلمة (**technology**) لا تُعَدُّ، لكن يمكن استخدام (a piece of / pieces of) قبلها

كلفظ تجزئة:

- The smart phone is a **piece of technology**.
- The smart phone and the GPS are **pieces of technology**.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية :

- information technology (IT) تكنولوجيا المعلومات
- advanced technology التكنولوجيا المتطورة
- digital technology التكنولوجيا الرقمية
- advances / developments in technology التطور التكنولوجي

• **technologist (n)**

أخصائي / خبير تكنولوجيا

In our school, Mr Mohammed Omar is a real technologist.

• **technological (adj)**

تكنولوجي - متعلق بالتكنولوجيا

Life has become faster thanks to technological development بفضل.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ⚙ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The front door locks with a low
a. progress b. invention c. app d. click
2. I use my YouTube channel as a/an for my ideas in life and work.
a. robot b. online c. vehicle d. tip
3. The police are still the suspects المُتَّهَمِينَ.
a. recommending b. admitting c. chatting d. quizzing
4. He this story. It has nothing to do with what really happened.
a. invented b. noticed c. navigated d. shared
5. The offer only to new members.
a. blogs b. develops c. applies d. shares

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ⚙ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'd go if it were early, but it very late indeed.
a. had been b. was c. isn't d. is
2. I'd help if I
a. had asked b. were asked c. am asked d. asked
3. They will build a new villa if
a. needs b. is needed c. need d. needed
4. Were he hard, he would succeed in the exam.
a. study b. studied c. to study d. studying
5. Don't bother to ring me it's important.
a. if b. unless c. but for d. in case

Test on Unit 8

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

التقييمات
الشهرية في
نهاية الكتاب



الكتاب الإلكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "To your benefit, you have to take this medicine." The antonyms of "benefit" here are and

(برج العرب ٢٠٢٣)

- a. profit b. harm c. advantage
d. contact e. damage

2. "The voice on the phone was familiar." The synonyms of "familiar" are

(شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. known b. strange c. unknown
d. clear e. strong

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. GPS stands for Global System.

(الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Positioning b. Positioned c. Positional d. Positions

2. Is it a vehicle or is it powered by petrol only?

(البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. high-tech b. hybrid c. electric d. petrol

3. The robot is one of the most important

(النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. discoveries b. explorations c. inventions d. exporters

4. Some migrating birds can by the moon.

(مغاغة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. control b. notice c. navigate d. relax

5. Can you this letter for me on your way home ?

- a. network b. attach c. spend d. post

6. My form was sent by email to the company.

- a. comment b. communication c. application d. development

7. Teachers specific examples to make their points clear.

- a. offer b. give c. do d. cause

8. If I enough money, I'd have bought this nice T-shirt.

(الدلجات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. had b. had been c. have had d. had had

9. Metal expands if it

(الدلجات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. heat b. heated c. is heated d. heating

10. If we found our company, we it on our own.

(رشيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. would run b. will run
c. would have run d. ran

11. If I free time, I would rather watch a foreign film.

(النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. had b. have c. had had d. will have

12. If water freezes, it into ice.

(الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. will turn b. turns c. would turn d. turned

13. You will miss the lecture you come on time.

(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. if b. unless c. because d. in case

14. If he hard, he will get high marks.

(التبين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. studied b. was studying c. studies d. had studied

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

A robot is a **special** programmable machine that can move and carry out a complex series of actions automatically. It follows instructions that come from a computer installed inside it. The robot does not make mistakes. It doesn't get tired or complain.

Robots are all around us. Some robots can help make cars. Other robots can help explore volcanoes. Certain robots can help vacuum your house. Some robots can recognize words. They can be used to help answer the phone calls. Some robots look like humans but most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. Over 2,000 years ago, a famous poet imagined robots. The poet's name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They cleaned and made things. But they were not real. They were imaginary. The first real robot was made in America in 1961 by the American inventor George Devol. It looked like a giant arm and was used in car making factories.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do or things that are dangerous for us to do. Robots will help us fight fires. They will be used in wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us explore planets in the space. I think robots will replace man in different fields.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The robot doesn't get tired or complain because it

- a. doesn't make mistakes b. is a machine
c. can't speak d. follows instructions

2. According to the passage, the antonym of "**special**" is

- a. perfect b. tired c. expensive d. normal

3. The main purpose of the second paragraph is to

- a. show how easy to make a robot b. tell what a robot is
c. describe things a robot can do d. tell us about the first robot

4. The robot receives the instructions from

- a. man b. a poet c. another robot d. a computer

5. Robots have been in man's thoughts for over years.

- a. 60 b. 62 c. 1961 d. 2,000

6. The author of this passage feels that Robots are

- a. helpful b. imaginary c. harmless d. dangerous

7. Which of these gives the best use of robot in the future? It will be used to help

- a. make sandwiches
c. read books

- b. explore Mars
d. spread diseases

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

The first industrial robot was introduced to the US in the 1960s. Since then, their technology has improved rapidly creating many advantages of robots.

(ارسكور ٢٠٢٣)

لقد تم تقديم أول روبوت صناعي إلى المملكة المتحدة في الستينات، ومنذ ذلك تحسنت تقنياته بسرعة مما أوجد العديد من المزايا للروبوتات.
لقد تم تقديم أول روبوت صناعي إلى الولايات المتحدة في الستينات، ومنذ ذلك الحين تحسنت تقنياته بسرعة مما أوجد العديد من المزايا للروبوتات.
لقد تم تصنيع أول روبوت صناعي في الولايات المتحدة في الستينات، ومنذ ذلك الحين تحسنت تقنياته بسرعة مما أوجد العديد من المزايا للإنسان.
لقد تم تقديم أول روبوت صناعي إلى الولايات المتحدة في الستينات، وبذلك تحسنت تقنياته بسرعة مما أوجد العديد من المزايا للروبوتات.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

خلال السنوات القليلة القادمة سوف تعتمد الكثير من الوظائف والأعمال على الإنسان الآلي أكثر من العمال.

(ملوي - دمج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Through the next few years, a lot of jobs will depend on workers more than robots.
b. Through the last few years, a lot of jobs depended on robots more than workers.
c. Through the next few years, a lot of jobs will depend on robots more than workers.
d. Through the next few years, some jobs will depend on both robots and workers.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Captain Smollet is a good Captian ? Why/Why not ?

2. Jim proved to be brave. Show how.

3. Why do you think Dr Livesey wanted to find Ben Gun ?

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“The internet”



UNIT 9

A good education

SB pages 26 : 35 WB pages 98 : 103

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- 🕒 **Reading** : A text about Charlotte Brontë and her novel Jane Eyre
- 🕒 **Writing** : A summary of Jane Eyre
- 🕒 **Listening** : A discussion on changing schools ; agreeing or disagreeing on an opinion
- 🕒 **Speaking** : Agreeing and disagreeing
- 🕒 **Language** : Past simple passive; Past simple and past perfect (Agreeing and disagreeing)
- 🕒 **Communication** : Supporting your opinion with reasons
- 🕒 **Life Skills** : Different ways of learning



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

boarding school(n)	مدرسة داخلية	housekeeper(n)	مديرة منزل
bully(ied) (n - v)	متنمر - بلطجي - يتنمر	orphan(ed) (n - v)	يتيم - يصبح يتيم
bullying(n)	البلطجة - التنمر	school(ed) (v)	يُدرَّب - يُعَلَّم
cruel(adj)	قاسي	schooling(n)	التعليم المدرسي
education(n)	التعليم	servant(n)	خادم
governess(n)	مُدرِّسة مُقيمة / مُدرِّسة		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

advertise(d) (v)	يُعلن عن	headmaster(n)	الناظر
allow(ed) (v)	يسمح - يُمكن	honesty(n)	الأمانة
apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب التحاق	huge(adj)	ضخم - واسع
author(n)	مؤلف	importance(n)	أهمية
believe(d) (v)	يعتقد - يؤمن	improve(d) (v)	يُحسن - يُلحِّن
care(d) (v - n)	يُعلم / يربي / رعاية	kindness(n)	العطف - الطيبة
comfortable(adj)	مريح	level(n)	مُسَوَّى
continue(d) (v)	يستمر	miss(ed) (v)	يفتقد - يفوته
earn(ed) (v)	يُكسب مال	owner(n)	مالك / صاحب
employ(ed) (v)	يوظف - يُشغِل	previous(adj)	السابق
energy(n)	طاقة	quite(adv)	إلى حد ما
fight - fought(v)	يتشاجر مع - يقاتل	relation(n)	أحد الأقارب - علاقة
forget - forgot -	ينسى	school term(n)	فصل دراسي
forgotten (v)		secret (n - adj)	سِرّ - سِرِّي
friendly(adj)	ودود	strange (adj)	غريب
gardener(n)	بستاني	unkind(adj)	قاسي
hate(d) (v)	يكره	upset - upset (v - adj)	يُزعج / يضايق - مُزعج
head teacher(n)	مدير المدرسة	wealthy (adj)	ثري - غني جداً

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
boarding school(n) مدرسة داخلية	a place where children live and study

bullying (n)	البلطجة	the use of strength القوة or power to frighten يُخيف or hurt someone who is weaker اضعف
cruel (adj)	قاسي	unkind and hurting others
education (n)	التعليم	the process عملية of teaching التدريس and learning التعلّم, usually at school, college / مدرسة عليا, or university
governess (n)	مُدرّسة مُقيمة / مُربيّة	a woman who teaches children in their home
housekeeper (n)	مديرة منزل	a servant who looks after the whole house
orphan (n)	يتيم	a child whose parents are dead
schooling (n)	التعليم المدرسي	education at schools
servant (n)	خادم	a person who works for people in their house

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- When she was nine, she was sent to a/an school where she lived and studied. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
a. board b. boarding c. abroad d. holding
- A/An is not a good member of a society. (زفتي ٢٠٢٣)
a. bully b. governess c. orphan d. author
- Having lessons at home was known as Children didn't go to school but learnt at home. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
a. free education b. boarding school
c. school education d. homeschooling
- must be fought by all members of society as it affects us all. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
a. Cooperating b. Imagination c. Thinking d. Bullying
- The poor girl's parents died when she was a little baby. She is a/an (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. teacher b. orphan c. governess d. widow
- Rich families used to bring a to teach their sons and daughters at home. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. governess b. nurse c. servant d. gardener
- A governess is a woman who children in their home. (اطسا ٢٠٢٣)
a. teaches b. punishes c. learns d. studies

8. Rich people usually pay to help with the housework. (أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. governesses b. servants c. housewives d. relatives
9. As a/an, she is responsible for looking after the whole house.
 a. governess b. housekeeper c. author d. orphan
10. It is important that parents and teachers be not to children.
 a. boarding b. serious c. cruel d. nearby
11. The development of is necessary for a better future.
 a. level b. confidence c. education d. success
12. My friend spent a long time to a hunting dog. (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. chase b. school c. succeed d. varies

2 Important Vocabulary

13. He was one of the people who to change the law of old rents.
 a. achieved b. campaigned c. improved d. inspired (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
14. Why did you tell Amal about my illness? You just can't keep a,
 can you? (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
 a. puzzle b. mystery c. secrete d. secret
15. Really, I my family. I look forward to going back home.
 a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
16. '.....' and 'relative' have one meaning in common. They both can
 mean a member of one's family.
 a. Relationship b. Relation c. Relativity d. Relating
17. The manager wants to another secretary.
 a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
18. I don't like your remarks about your friend. You have really
 annoyed him.
 a. kind b. unkind c. possible d. impossible
19. My elder brother about me very much.
 a. saves b. prefers c. cares d. earns
20. I think is one of the best qualities of a good friend.
 a. honesty b. wealthy c. equipment d. research
21. Never anybody to affect your opinion negatively.
 a. advertise b. apply c. bully d. allow
22. Don't bullies. They have nothing to lose.
 a. earn b. fight c. control d. apply
23. I miss my school very much. I learnt and had much fun there.
 a. necessary b. glad c. previous d. wealthy
24. She felt very when she knew that her application was rejected.
 a. upset b. friendly c. secret d. wealthy

25. This villa belongs to a/an businessman who has another two ones.
a. wealth b. wealthy c. impossible d. impossibility
26. No one can deny the of education in everyone's life.
a. copy b. conclusion c. garden d. importance
27. It is your that makes the kids love you.
a. cruelty b. bully c. kindness d. conclusion
28. People who enough money do not need to borrow.
a. lose b. earn c. miss d. prefer
29. Sports channels earn a lot of money from producers who their products.
a. advertise b. apply c. bully d. allow
30. I think you should for this job.
a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
31. It is the job of a/an to look after plants and trees.
a. author b. stranger c. gardener d. owner

3 Definitions

32. A is a woman who teaches students in their home. (إيتاي البارود ٢٣٠٢)
a. governor b. governess c. goddess d. guide
33. A is a person who works for people in their house.
a. servant b. service c. server d. survey
34. To be means to be unkind and hurting others.
a. educated b. cruel c. kind d. successful
35. A/An is a child whose parents are dead.
a. homeless b. servant c. orphan d. housekeeper
36. A is a servant who looks after the whole house.
a. housekeeper b. worker c. master d. cook

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	friends with	يُصبح صديقاً لـ	lose	a job	يفقد وظيفته
break	his back	ينكسر ظهره	lose	touch with	يفقد التواصل مع
do	a course	يلتحق بدورة تدريبية	make	a match	يخسر مباراة
fail	a test	يُزسب في امتحان	make	... happy	يجعل ... سعيداً
keep	... warm	... يحافظ على دفء	start	friends	يصادق
	... under control	يُنقى ... تحت السيطرة	start	a fire	يتسبب في حريق

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
cruel	قاسي	unkind, savage, wicked
previous	سابق	former, earlier
servant	خادم	attendant, footman
servant	خادمة	attendant, maid
wealthy	ثري	very rich

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
cruel	قاسي	friendly, gentle, merciful, kind	حنون - رحيم
previous	سابق	later, following	لاحق - تالي
servant	خادم - خادمة	master, mistress	سيد - سيدة
wealthy	ثري	destitute, poor	مُعْذَم - فقير

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

bully			
bully(v)	يتنمر	- Never bully others.	
bully(n)	بلطجي / متنمر	- Never be a bully.	
bullying(n)	البلطجة	- Bullying is a crime.	
cruel			
cruelty(n)	القسوة	- She doesn't like you because of your cruelty.	
cruel(adj)	قاسي	- She doesn't like you because you are cruel to her.	
cruelly(adv)	بقسوة	- She doesn't like you because you treat her cruelly.	
education			
educate(v)	يُعلِّم - يُربِّي	- Sama's parents educated her well.	
education(n)	التعليم - التربية	- Sama had a good education.	
educator(n)	مُعلِّم	- My father is a good educator.	
educated(adj)	مُتعلِّم	- Sama is a well-educated girl.	
orphan			
orphan(v)	يُيْتِم / يصبح يتيمًا	- A lot of children were orphaned during the war.	
orphan(n)	شخص يتيم	- The war left a lot of children as orphans.	
orphanage(n)	ملجأ أيتام	- He was put in an orphanage.	

school		
school(v)	يُدْرَس - يدرب	- My grandfather was schooled for a few years.
school(n)	مدرسة - الدراسة	- My grandfather went to school for a few years.
schooling(n)	التعليم المدرسي	- My grandfather had a few years of schooling.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

(be) right for	مناسب لـ	In fact,	في الحقيقة
cruel to	قاسي علي	instead of	بدلاً من
different from / to	مختلف عن	keep in touch with	يبقي على اتصال بـ
eight-year-old girl	فتاة تبلغ من العمر ثمان سنوات	lose touch with	تنقطع علاقته بـ
have lessons at home	يأخذ دروسه في البيت	online learning	التعلم على الإنترنت
I am glad to say	يسعدني أن أقول	see you soon	اراك قريباً

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

advertise for	يُعلن عن حاجته لـ	move to	ينتقل إلي
allow ... to	يسمح لـ ... بـ	refer to	يشير إلي - ينوّه عن
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	return to	يعود إلي
chat with	يُدرّش مع	save ... from	ينقذ ... من
come round	يُزور	send ... away	يُبعد ... - يطرّد
continue with	يستمر في القيام بـ	speak to	يتحدث إلي / مع
decide to	يقرر أن	work for	يعمل لدي
fight with	يتقاتل / يتشاجر مع	work with	يعمل مع
live with	يسكن مع		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

orphan / orphanage

• orphan (n)

- We must help orphans because they do not have parents to look after them. (يتيم (طفل فقد والديه)

• orphan (v)

- Many children were orphaned during the war. يُتيم

• orphanage (n)

- Oliver spent his childhood in an orphanage. ملجأ أيتام

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

➤ **MRQ :** Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. The word "cruel" is the word "kind". (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. antonymous with b. synonymous with
c. similar to d. the same as e. the opposite of

2. She friends with all the girls in her class. (الإسكندرية - الجمر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. became b. did c. had
d. lost e. made

3. "Her husband comes from a wealthy family". The antonyms of the word "wealthy" are and (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. giant b. rich c. genuine
d. destitute e. poor

4. You can avoid losing a by improving your skills.

- a. course b. work c. match
d. research e. job

5. Try to keep

- a. warm b. a test c. work
d. everything under control e. sad

6. "Children do not like a person who is cruel to them." The adjective 'cruel' in this sentence is an antonym of

- a. brutal b. friendly c. savage
d. merciful e. unkind

7. The words and are synonymous with 'servant'.

- a. master b. mistress c. owner
d. attendant e. maid

8. A boarding school is a place where children and

- a. are born b. die c. get dressed
d. live e. study

• **MCQ :** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's easy to in touch with your friends. (جهينة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. serve b. save c. safe d. keep

2. When one moves to a new city, it's not easy to new friends.

- a. make b. gain c. earn d. do (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

3. A cigarette end the fire.

- a. lost b. started c. became d. broke

4. A clever student never a test.

- a. builds b. messes c. loses d. fails

5. includes learning different subjects in addition to doing activities.
a. A school b. Schools c. Schooled d. Schooling
6. My son started last September.
a. school b. schools c. schooled d. schooling
7. He has the horse and you can now ride it safely.
a. school b. schools c. schooled d. schooling
8. I promise to later to make sure everything is OK.
a. visit b. come round c. get to d. a & b
9. The lifeguard saved the child drowning.
a. as b. in c. to d. from
10. I want to take the school football competition.
a. part b. part in c. place d. place in
11. All my friends went my opinion.
a. along with b. a long with c. on d. up
12. Being busy makes people touch with old friends.
a. be in b. mess c. lose d. keep
13. War has a lot of children.
a. orphan b. orphans c. orphanage d. orphaned

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 26

Jane Eyre

Charlotte Brontë was born in England in 1816. She and her two sisters all became famous **authors**⁽¹⁾. Charlotte Brontë's most famous book is Jane Eyre. It was written in 1847.

Jane Eyre was an **orphan**⁽²⁾ who lived with her cousins and her **wealthy**⁽³⁾ aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was **unkind**⁽⁴⁾ and they did not want Jane to live with them.

Jane was sent **away**⁽⁵⁾ to school. Jane was happy to go to Lowood School, but the **owner**⁽⁶⁾, Mr Brocklehurst, was very **cruel**⁽⁷⁾, so the students lived unhappy lives.



(1) مؤلفين

(2) يتيم

(3) ثري - غلي جداً

(4) قاس

(5) بعيداً

(6) مالك / صاحب

(7) قاس

Finally, cruel Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School. After two years, Jane **decided**⁽⁸⁾ to **apply**⁽⁹⁾ for a job as a **governess**⁽¹⁰⁾. Governesses were often **employed**⁽¹¹⁾ by **rich**⁽¹²⁾ families. She started to teach a young **French**⁽¹³⁾ girl called Adèle at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, the kind **housekeeper**⁽¹⁴⁾.

One night, there was a **fire**⁽¹⁵⁾ at Thornfield Hall. Jane **saved**⁽¹⁶⁾ Mr Rochester from the fire. He said that the fire was started by a **servant**⁽¹⁷⁾ called Grace, but Grace did not **lose**⁽¹⁸⁾ her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a **secret**⁽¹⁹⁾ in the house. Jane decided to leave Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.

(8) يقرر

(9) يتقدم بطلب التحاق

(10) مُدَرِّسة مُقيمة - مُرَبِّية

(11) يوظف - يُشغّل

(12) غنيّ - ميسور الحال

(13) فرنسي

(14) مديرة منزل

(15) حريق

(16) يُنقذ

(17) خادم

(18) يفقد - يخسر

(19) سرّ - سرّي

Dear Ellen,

Lesson 1 WB page 98

I told you some time ago that I wanted to get a good job. I am **glad**⁽¹⁾ to say that I have found one as governess and I am **quite**⁽²⁾ happy.



The house is not very **large**⁽³⁾ but it is very **comfortable**⁽⁴⁾ and the **gardens**⁽⁵⁾ are **huge**⁽⁶⁾. Although I **earn**⁽⁷⁾ less money than in my **previous**⁽⁸⁾ job, I am working with kind, **friendly**⁽⁹⁾ people. I have two pupils : an eight-year-old girl and a six-year-old boy.

My job as a governess can be very difficult because children have so much **energy**⁽¹⁰⁾. I just hope I will not become ill trying to keep them under **control**⁽¹¹⁾ and make them happy.

Well, I must **continue**⁽¹²⁾ with my work. I hope to see you soon.

Kind **regards**⁽¹³⁾,

Charlotte

(1) سعيد

(2) إلى حد ما

(3) كبير

(4) مُريح

(5) حدائق

(6) ضخم - واسع

(7) يكسب

(8) السابق

(9) ودود

(10) طاقة

(11) تَحْكُم - سيطرة

(12) يستمر

(13) احترام - تحية

Before Mrs Reed **allowed**⁽¹⁾ Jane to leave the room, Jane had become ill. A doctor had visited Jane before and told Mrs Reed that it would be better if Jane went to live at a **nearby**⁽²⁾ school.

The girls were cold at the school because the **head teacher**⁽³⁾ had **spent**⁽⁴⁾ no money to keep it **warm**⁽⁵⁾.

After Jane **advertised**⁽⁶⁾ for a job in a newspaper, she **received**⁽⁷⁾ a **reply**⁽⁸⁾.

- (1) يسمح
- (2) قريب / مجاور
- (3) مدير المدرسة
- (4) ينفق
- (5) دافئ
- (6) يعلن عن
- (7) يتلقى / يتسلم
- (8) رد

2 Listening Texts

Dareen : Dad, I don't want to **change**⁽¹⁾ schools. I want to go to school with my friends.

Father : It's not so bad, Dareen. You know, my family used to travel, and I was taken to lots of different countries. So, I'd been to lot of different schools before we **came back to**⁽²⁾ Egypt. You can **make new friends**⁽³⁾ at a different school.

Dareen : I like my friends at my school now.

Father : It is easy to **keep in touch with**⁽⁴⁾ your friends. I always see you on your phone. I **lost touch with**⁽⁵⁾ the people I'd gone to school with.

Mother : If you don't change school, maybe you can do an online **course**⁽⁶⁾. Some **extra**⁽⁷⁾ lessons will be helpful. Mona's mother said that Mona had had lots of problems in school before she started having extra lessons.

And they say some of these online courses are **fantastic**⁽⁸⁾. They can understand what your **level**⁽⁹⁾ is and give you work that's just right for you. **In fact**⁽¹⁰⁾, you were given a new computer to help you study.

Father : And you can chat with other students online, too. Just like you do at school.

Mother : Mona's mother says Mona has really improved with so much help from her online teachers.

Dareen : But, Mum, I learn a lot at school now. I only **failed**⁽¹¹⁾ the test because I'd been ill when I took it.

Father : Ok. Ok. We'll leave things the way they are for now and then we can **discuss**⁽¹²⁾ it again after your exams **at the end of**⁽¹³⁾ the year.

Dareen : Ok. Thank you.

- (1) يغير
- (2) يعود إلى
- (3) يكون أصدقاء جدد
- (4) يتصل بـ
- (5) يفقد الاتصال بـ
- (6) دورة تدريبية
- (7) إضافي - زائد
- (8) رائع
- (9) مستوى
- (10) في الحقيقة
- (11) يرسب - يفشل
- (12) يناقش
- (13) في نهاية

Teacher : We don't know much about Jane's early school days, but I **imagine**⁽¹⁾ she had gone to school before she moved to her aunt's house, as we know she could read. We also know that she was sent to a **boarding school**⁽²⁾ after she had **upset**⁽³⁾ Mrs Reed and her cousin John.

(1) يتخيل

(2) مدرسة داخلية

(3) مزعج

(4) مربية - مدرسة مقيمة

(5) ظهر - خلف

(6) يزور في بيته

Omar : What's a boarding school ?

Teacher : It's a school where children live as well as study. In the past, there were boarding schools for rich children and ones like Lowood House for children who weren't rich. And of course some rich children were taught at home. **Governesses**⁽⁴⁾, like Jane, were employed to teach them.

Ali : My cousin, Kamal, had lessons at home.

Teacher : Did he, Ali ? Why was that ?

Ali : He had to stay at home for six months because he'd broken his **back**⁽⁵⁾ when the school term started. He wanted to go to school, but he'd already made lots of friends and they **came round**⁽⁶⁾ to see him, so it wasn't too bad.

Teacher : Did a teacher come to his house every day ?

Ali : No. He was sent an email every day with the work that his friends were doing in school, but my aunt helped him when he couldn't understand it.

Karim : My name is Karim and I love to read. I have read another one of Charlotte Brontë's books, called *Villette*, before I decided to buy a **copy**⁽¹⁾ of Jane Eyre.

(1) نسخة

They didn't have it in my **local**⁽²⁾ bookshop, so I kept going back to check.

(2) محلي

(3) رف

(4) مالك

(5) يفسر - يوضح

(6) لا شيء

Finally, I saw it on the **shelf**⁽³⁾ but then an old man took it.

I spoke to the **owner**⁽⁴⁾ of the bookshop and I **explained**⁽⁵⁾ that I had waited three weeks for the book to arrive.

He said there was **nothing**⁽⁶⁾ he could do, but then I heard someone laughing.

The old man said he had lost his copy of the book many years ago, before I was born, so he didn't mind **waiting a little longer** ⁽⁷⁾.

يُنْتَظَرُ لفترة أطول قليلاً

He let me buy it and when I got home, I knew I had been very lucky.

PART IV LANGUAGE

Past simple and past perfect (active & passive)

1 The Past Simple Tense :

زمن الماضي البسيط :

١ يتكون الماضي البسيط في الجمل الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم من :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

ex. - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday. - They saw a show last night.

٢ عند النفي :

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf.

ex. - They didn't watch the match yesterday.
- Omar didn't do his homework.

٣ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Did + subject الفاعل + inf.?

ex. - Did you tidy your room ? - Yes, I did.
- Did Ali do his homework ? - No, he didn't.

٤ عند الاستفهام بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + did/didn't + subject + inf.?

ex. - Where did you watch the match ? - Why didn't you stay at a hotel ?

٥ يتحول زمن الماضي البسيط لصيغة المبني للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :

Object مفعول + was/were + p.p.

ex. - They watched a film last night. (معلوم)
- A film was watched last night (by them). (مجهول)

٦ كلمات وتعبيرات زمنية تستخدم في الجمل لتشير إلى الماضي :

yesterday أمس - last ... الماضي - ago منذ - once مرة -
once upon a time ذات مرة - the other day ذات يوم مضى - in the past في الماضي -
in ancient times قديماً - previously فيما سبق - in 2011 ... etc.

ex. - I met some old friends in the club the other day.
- Mr Mohammed moved to his new house two weeks ago.

لاحظ استخدام ظروف التكرار التالية في زمن الماضي :

always – usually – sometimes – often – never ... etc.

ex. - Sama always got up early when she was a student.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (was / were) لا نستخدم (did / didn't) في النفي والسؤال.

- He was at school yesterday. (إثبات)
- He wasn't at school yesterday. (نفي)
- Was he at school yesterday? (سؤال بـ 'هل')
- Where was he yesterday? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

٢ إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (had) نستخدم معه (did) كفعل مساعد في النفي أو السؤال:

- She had lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)
- She didn't have lunch at two o'clock. (نفي)
- Did she have lunch at two o'clock? (سؤال بـ 'هل')
- When did she have lunch? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

- ex. - I visited my grandmother last Friday.
- My father built this house ten years ago.

٢ سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :

- ex. - My team played well yesterday. The players were in top form.
- They entertained the fans. My team scored four goals.

٣ بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية :

- ex. - If I studied hard, I'd pass this exam.

Past Habits :

عادات الماضي :

١ يمكن استخدام الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر :

1. Subj. + used to + inf.

ex. - He used to swim in the sea.

2. It was + someone's / صفة ملكية + habit + to + inf.

ex. - It was his habit to swim in the sea.

٢ يمكن استخدام (was / were + used to + n. / inf. + ing) للتعبير عن أن

شيء ما كان معتادًا بالنسبة للفاعل :

ex. - They were used to working in the sun.

- I was used to eating salty food.

يمكن استخدام (got / became / grew + used to + n. / inf. + ing) للتعبير عن التعود

- ex. - I got used to the freezing weather in Canada.
- I became used to working on a farm.

2 The Past Perfect simple : زمن الماضي التام البسيط :

١ يتكون زمن الماضي التام البسيط من :

Subject فاعل + had + p.p.

- ex. I had studied English before I travelled to New York.

٢ عند النفي :

Subject فاعل + hadn't + p.p.

- ex. They hadn't watched the match before they went shopping.

٣ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Had + subject فاعل + p.p.?

- ex. Had Soha tidied her room before she went to school ?
- Yes, she had. - No, she hadn't.

٤ عند الاستفهام بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + had + subject + p.p.?

- ex. What had happened before you phoned the police ?

٥ عند تحويل زمن الماضي التام لصيغة المبني المجهول نستخدم :

Object نائب الفاعل + had been + p.p.

- ex. English had been studied before I travelled to New York.

Uses استخدامات

١ حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي (لتوضيح أيهما حدث أولاً) :

- ex. When I had sent the email, I turned off the computer.

٢ حدث تم قبل وقت محدد في الماضي وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم تعبيرات مثل :

(by بحلول / before قبل / this time في مثل هذا الوقت + تعبير زمني دال على الماضي)

- ex. By midnight, my children had gone to bed.

٣ يمكن استخدام (since / for / just / already) مع الماضي التام وذلك في سياق التعبير

- عن أحداث ماضية :
ex. We had lived there since I was born. (We left our old flat last year.)

٤ يمكن استخدام الماضي التام مع روابط السبب و النتيجة والتناقض للتعبير عن الحدث الأول :

- ex. He looked very tired because he had worked hard for a week.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 **After / As soon as** بمجرد أن / **When** عندما / **The moment** في اللحظة التي
جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى تام + **Once**

- After she had arrived home, she phoned me.

2 **After / On + noun / (inf. + ing)** جملة ماضى بسيط

- After/ On arriving home, she phoned me.

3 **Having + p.p. + ...** جملة ماضى بسيط

- Having arrived home, she phoned me.

4 **Before / By the time / When** جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى تام

- Before she phoned me, she had arrived home.

5 **Before + noun / (inf. + ing)** جملة ماضى تام

- Before phoning me, she had arrived home.

6 **until / till** حتى + جملة ماضى بسيط غالباً ما تكون منفية

- She didn't phone me until she had arrived home.

Remember

1 الماضى البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضى التام مع بعض الروابط السابقة و إن كان استخدام الماضى التام مع الحدث الأول أكثر دقة:

- I had met Omar last Monday before he travelled to London. (✓)
- I met Omar last Monday before he travelled to London. (✓)

2 لاحظ أن :

• After = Before that

- After I had done the shopping, I went home.
- = I went home. Before that, I had done the shopping.

• Before = After that

- Before I went home, I had done the shopping.
- = I had done the shopping. After that, I went home.

Notes for Advanced level ملاحظات للناطقين

١ لاحظ استخدام الماضي التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكـدحتي) :

- Subj. + had + no sooner + p.p.+ than + جملة ماضى بسيط
= Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely + p.p. + when + جملة ماضى بسيط

- She had no sooner arrived home than she phoned me.
- She had hardly arrived home when she phoned me.

تتقدم (had) على الفاعل عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (No sooner, Hardly, Scarcely) :

- No sooner + had + subj. + p.p.+ than + جملة ماضى بسيط
= Hardly / Scarcely + had + subj. + p.p. + when + جملة ماضى بسيط

- No sooner had she arrived home than she phoned me.
- Hardly had she arrived home when she phoned me.

٢ الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (not until / not since / only after / only when / only by) :

يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل فى الجملة الرئيسية:

- She didn't phone me until she had arrived home.
- Not until she had arrived home did she phone me.

٣ لاحظ :

It was only when } ماضى بسيط + that + ماضى تام
It wasn't until }

- It was only when I had finished my work that you called me.
- It wasn't until I had finished my work that you called me.

٤ لاحظ استخدام الصيغ التالية :

- after / before / when / while / because + جملة رئيسية + جملة ثانوية
- (inf. + ing) + جملة ثانوية + جملة رئيسية
- Having + p.p. + ... (مبنى للمعلوم)
- Having + been + p.p. + ... (مبنى للمجهول)
- After I had repaired my laptop, it worked well. (معلوم)
- Repairing my laptop, it worked well. (معلوم)
- Having repaired my laptop, it worked well. (معلوم)
- Having been repaired, my laptop worked well. (مجهول)

General Exercise On Language

• Apply

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. The food until my father had come from work. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. isn't prepared b. didn't prepare
 c. wasn't prepared d. isn't prepared
2. Kamal his homework before he went to the cinema. (شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. had finished b. was finished c. was finishing d. would finish
3. I didn't go out with my friends I had finished my homework. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
 a. until b. unless c. if d. since
4. I about the accident until I had read the papers. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
 a. hadn't known b. wasn't known c. didn't know d. don't know
5. He a prize for a drawing of an animal. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. gave b. was given c. has given d. had given
6. He to sit down until he had apologized. (مغاغة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. wasn't allowed b. doesn't allow c. hadn't allowed d. didn't allow
7. The car fixed last week. It will be fixed tomorrow. (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. didn't b. weren't c. wasn't d. hadn't
8. It was only when I Spanish that I travelled to Spain. (الدلنجات ٢٠٢٣)
 a. learned b. had learned c. have learned d. has learned
9. A new hospital in our village last year. (منطقة اسيوط الازهرية - ادبي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. build b. built c. was building d. was built
10. When I returned home, my mother already prepared lunch. (اسوان ٢٠٢٣)
 a. has b. had c. was d. is
11. After school, he applied for a job in a big company. (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. had finished b. finish c. finishing d. he finishes
12. Omar left Cairo, he had read a lot of books about England. (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Before b. Until c. After d. Unless
13. After my homework , I watched the film. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
 a. has been done b. had done c. has done d. had been done

2 Special cases

14. As soon as my sister came home, she realized that she her keys at the office. (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)
 a. was leaving b. had left c. will leave d. is leaving
15. I wish I were in Alexandria now. I would visit its library. But I there now. (غريب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. am b. am not c. aren't d. weren't
16. I found the wallet which lost last Sunday. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. had b. was being c. have d. had been
17. I didn't leave the house until my friend me. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. had telephoned b. was telephoning
 c. will telephone d. has telephoned
18. heard her success news, Soha gave a cry of joy. (غريب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. On b. Had c. Once d. Having
19. cleaning the kitchen floor, she started working in the garden. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Finished b. Having finished
 c. Had finished d. Had to finish
20. No sooner the loud noise than we went there quickly. (الدلجات ٢٠٢٣)
 a. we heard b. we had heard c. had we heard d. we have heard
21. It was only the boy had broken the window that he ran away. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. before b. when c. while d. on
22. Having the good news, I hurried to tell my family. (بهينة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. received b. receiving c. had received d. have received
23. She no replies until one day, she got a letter. (سوان ٢٠٢٣)
 a. receives b. had received
 c. has received d. hadn't received
24. I drank some tea., I had eaten lunch. (والمطامير ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Before b. After c. Before that d. After that

3 Check your understanding

25. "When I went to the cinema, the film had started." This means I
 a. watched all the film b. missed part of the film
 c. didn't watch the film d. first arrived, then the film started



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

appreciate(d) (v)	يُثَمِّن / يُقَدِّر	so-called(adj)	المزعوم - المدعو
fail(ed) (v)	يفشل	solver(n)	حَلَّال المشاكل
failure(n)	الفشل	success(n)	النجاح
home-schooled(n)	متعلِّم من المنزل		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

ability(n)	القدرة	explain(ed) (v)	يشرح / يوضِّح
artist(n)	فنان	feeling(n)	شعور
break(n)	استراحة - فاصل	imagination(n)	الخيال
brilliant(adj)	رائع - ذكي	instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	keen(adj)	حريص - متحمِّس / متلهف
conclusion(n)	استنتاج - خلاصة	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
confidence(n)	الثقة	laugh(ed) (v)	يضحك
copy(ied) (n - v)	نسخة - ينسخ	lose - lost - lost (v)	يفقد - يخسر
critical(adj)	نقدي - حرج	mind(ed) (v)	يمانع - يبالى
description(n)	وصف	musician(adj)	موسيقار
discuss(ed) (v)	يناقش	otherwise(adv)	وإلا
electrician(n)	فني كهرباء	practical(adj)	عملي
engine(n)	محرك	practise(d) (v)	يمارس - يتدرب
engineering(n - adj)	الهندسة - هندسي	serious(adj)	جاد - خطير
equipment(n)	معدات	suppose(d) (v)	يفترض
especially(adv)	خصوصاً	terrible(adj)	فظيع
experiment(n)	تجربة معملية	thinking(n)	التفكير
expert(n - adj)	خبير		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. I hope that all my students achieve great at school and later at work.
a. orphan b. governess c. failure d. success

2. Problem are usually people who have social intelligence.
 a. servants b. bullies c. solvers d. relatives
3. I am sure that these experts won't find any solutions to the problem.
 a. so-called b. serious c. critical d. brilliant
4. I what my parents do to help me succeed.
 a. reply b. check c. save d. appreciate
5. "If you bully your schoolmates again, you will be sent out of this school." In this sentence, 'bully' is a/an
 a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
6. You'll surely in everything unless you stop wasting your time.
 a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
7. Wasting time is one of the main causes of
 a. orphan b. governess c. failure d. success
8. students miss making friends with their peers أقران.
 a. So-called b. Home-schooled c. Critical d. Brilliant

2 Important Vocabulary

9. The teacher caught two students the answers out of the book.
 a. chatting b. reading c. copying d. replying
 (المرح ٢٠٢٣)
10. Some people think that it's cruel to do on animals.
 a. experience b. experiments c. feelings d. comments
 (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)
11. The comes at the end of an essay to summarise it.
 a. introduction b. body c. conclusion d. draft
 (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
12. The told me that the wires were old and needed to be changed.
 a. blacksmith b. electrician c. politician d. carpenter
 (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
13. Pollution is a problem that needs quick solutions.
 a. boarding b. serious c. secret d. nearby
14. Your in me is something I am very proud of.
 a. ability b. imagination c. knowledge d. confidence
15. Applicants who have experience will be employed.
 a. practical b. secret c. nearby d. critical
16. I don't lending my tools to others. We should help each other.
 a. compare b. suppose c. mind d. copy
17. I have to go now, I'll miss my flight.
 a. especially b. otherwise c. opposite d. instead
18. As an expert in farming, he has a lot of about plants.
 a. ability b. imagination c. knowledge d. confidence

19. students always want to learn new things.
 a. Friendly b. Keen c. Comfortable d. Critical
20. It is better to prices on different websites before making an order.
 a. compare b. suppose c. mind d. copy
21. I do not drink coffee., I drink tea.
 a. Especially b. Otherwise c. Opposite d. Instead
22. Salah's as a footballer have helped him become a world-famous star.
 a. abilities b. imagination c. knowledge d. confidence
23. I expect this student will come first.
 a. secret b. upset c. brilliant d. critical
24. I she is ill. She looks pale شاحبة.
 a. compare b. suppose c. mind d. copy
25. I like roses, red ones.
 a. especially b. otherwise c. opposite d. instead
26. I won't tell you what I mean. Use your
 a. equipment b. imagination c. engine d. confidence
27. He really needs help. He is in a situation.
 a. practical b. keen c. brilliant d. critical
28. The Great Pyramid is a great project.
 a. lucky b. expert c. engineering d. a & c

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	success	يؤدي إلى النجاح	give	reasons	يقدم مبررات
build	a car engine	يصمم محرك سيارة	give	jobs	يؤمّر وظائف
do	sports	يمارس رياضة	keep	going back	يستمر في العودة - يتراجع باستمرار
	well/better	يؤدي جيداً/ بشكل أفضل	make	mistakes	يُخطئ
	experiments	يُجري تجارب		electricity	يولّد كهرباء
	things better	يقوم بالأشياء بشكل أفضل		friends	يُصادق
feel	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	run	open days	يقوم بتنظيم أيام مفتوحة
get	an education	يتعلّم	start	school	يبدأ الدراسة

2 المتضادات Antonyms

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
expert	inexpert, amateur
fail	succeed in, pass
failure	success, achievement

3 مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية Derivatives of key vocabulary

appreciate	
appreciate(v) يُقدِّر/يُثَمِّن - يستحسن	- She appreciated what I had done.
appreciation(n) استحسان - إعجاب	- She thanked me out of appreciation.
appreciative(adj) شاكر/مُمتن - مُعجب	- She thanked me in an appreciative way.
appreciatively(adv) بإعجاب - بامتنان	- She thanked me appreciatively.
fail	
fail(v) يفشل - يرسب - يتعطل	- I do not like to fail.
failure(n) الفشل - الرسوب	- I do not like failure.

4 تعبيرات ومصطلحات Expressions & Idioms

a long way from	على مسافة كبيرة من	from my point of view	من وجهة نظري
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	keep trying	يستمر في المحاولة
angry with	غاضب من	ready for	مستعد/جاهز لـ
as a consequence,	كنتيجة لذلك	sorry for	أسف/حزين علي
as well as this	بالإضافة لذلك	take part in	يشارك في
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	thanks to	بفضل - بسبب
for instance,	على سبيل المثال		

5 فعل + حرف جر Verb + Preposition

agree with	يتفق مع	keep on	يستمر في
believe in	يؤمن بـ	learn about	يتعلم عن
carry on	يستمر في	learn from	يتعلم من
disagree with	يختلف مع	pick ... up	يوصل - يلتقط
get on with	يُحسن التعامل مع	prefer to	يفضل أن
go along with	يتفق مع	support ... with ...	يدعم ... بـ ...

strange / stranger

• strange = odd (adj)

غريب - غير مألوف - غير منطقي

- I don't understand your strange decision. She hasn't done anything wrong to make you fire her.
- Mothers always ask their children not to take anything from strange people.

• stranger (n)

شخص غريب (لا أعرفه)

- Mothers always ask their children not to take anything from strangers.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

• stranger

شخص غريب (لا أعرفه)

- A person from Alexandria is a stranger in Minia.

• foreigner

شخص أجنبي (من دولة أخرى)

- Many foreigners visit Aswan in winter. Most of them are German.

expert – experienced

لاحظ الفرق بين:

• expert (in- on - at) (adj)

خبير (متخصص في مجال)

- He is expert in / on / at teaching.

• experienced (in) (adj)

لديه خبرة من كثرة المواقف والتجارب التي مر بها

- My father is an experienced farmer.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. It's a widely-known fact that working hard success. (كفر شكر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. leads to b. results from c. leads
- d. brings e. buys

2. The synonyms of "lucky" are and (منيا القمح ٢٠٢٣)

- a. unlucky b. helpless c. fortunate
- d. poor e. happy

3. We sometimes make (الشهداء ٢٠٢٣)

- a. notes b. well c. research
- d. sports e. mistakes

4. You can find information about anything you're online.

- a. interested in b. sorry about c. keen on
- d. different from e. full of

(شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)

5. The doctors said that the patient's case was and he needed an operation.

(الدواء ٢٠٢٣)

- a. serious b. secure c. safe
d. quiet e. dangerous

6. You can do things

- a. well b. serious c. good
d. better e. bad

7. We say that someone does

- a. experience b. experiences c. experiments
d. friends e. sports

• ☆ **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He is an driver.

(أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

- a. experts b. experience c. experienced d. a & b

2. Engineers have a car engine that runs on electricity.

- a. built b. missed c. lost d. failed

3. The experiments I have needed a lot of time and effort.

- a. become b. done c. made d. a & c

4. Our school open days for activities.

- a. misses b. does c. builds d. runs

5. Don't upset. We are your family and we are ready to help and support you.

- a. feel b. start c. break d. have

6. Those who never work hard will in life and work.

- a. succeed b. success c. fail d. failure

7. A sociable اجتماعي person finds it easy to others.

- a. get around b. get on c. get on with d. b & c

8. He got high marks. a consequence, his father bought him a present.

- a. At b. For c. Like d. As

9. Our parents support us everything we need.

- a. of b. with c. from d. as

10. He is in driving.

- a. expert b. experienced c. experience d. a & b

11. To me, he looks

- a. strange b. stranger c. strangely d. a & b

12. He is a to me.

- a. strange b. stranger c. strangely d. a & b

1 Reading Texts

Lesson 4 SB page 31

STEM SUBJECTS⁽¹⁾

Science, technology, **engineering**⁽²⁾ and maths were taught in schools long before the **invention**⁽³⁾ of the internet.

However, we now live in a time when these subjects are more important than ever. This does not mean that music, history, languages and other subjects are not important. However, understanding the **so-called**⁽⁴⁾ STEM subjects can be an important bridge to a good job in the future.

Many **businesses**⁽⁵⁾ do not have enough people with **knowledge**⁽⁶⁾ of the STEM subjects. For that reason, they are **keen to**⁽⁷⁾ give jobs to young people with these skills.

In the past, STEM subjects were often seen as difficult. To change this idea, many businesses now run open days at which students can try building car engines, using a bike to make electricity, or playing computer games to practise maths.

Schools, too, are helping students to realise that these subjects can be both interesting and fun for boys and girls of all **abilities**⁽⁸⁾. Schools might not have the **equipment**⁽⁹⁾ to build engines, but many now use different experiments and computers so that students can learn by doing things, and not just by reading a text.

This also helps with **critical thinking skills**⁽¹⁰⁾ which students can use in other subjects.

It is said that 80% of jobs in the future will need students to have skills in the STEM subjects. Of course we will also need **artists**⁽¹¹⁾, **musicians**⁽¹²⁾, **language teachers**⁽¹³⁾ and other experts, but skills in STEM subjects will help students to become the problem **solvers**⁽¹⁴⁾ and **inventors**⁽¹⁵⁾ of the future.



- (1) المواد التي تُدرس في مدارس العلوم والتكنولوجيا
- (2) هندسة
- (3) اختراع
- (4) كما تسمى / ما يسمى
- (5) أعمال
- (6) المعرفة
- (7) متحمس
- (8) قدرات
- (9) معدات / أجهزة
- (10) مهارات التفكير النقدي
- (11) فنانين
- (12) الموسيقيين
- (13) مدرسي اللغات
- (14) من يقوموا بحل المشاكل
- (15) مخترعين

Failure is necessary⁽¹⁾

People say that it is **impossible⁽²⁾** to **succeed⁽³⁾** without **failure⁽⁴⁾** and even the most **successful⁽⁵⁾** people **make mistakes⁽⁶⁾**. **As well as⁽⁷⁾** this, many people believe in the **importance⁽⁸⁾** of learning from your mistakes.



Sometimes failure can make people work harder and do things better. **As a consequence⁽⁹⁾**, they **appreciate⁽¹⁰⁾** **success⁽¹¹⁾** more because it hasn't been easy for them. **For instance⁽¹²⁾**, when football players lose a match, they are **sad⁽¹³⁾** but they learn how to **improve⁽¹⁴⁾** and do better next time.

On the other hand, success can make you feel **positively⁽¹⁵⁾** about what you are doing and it can give you a reason to keep trying. **In addition⁽¹⁶⁾**, many people **prefer⁽¹⁷⁾** to **forget⁽¹⁸⁾** their mistakes so they can have good **memories⁽¹⁹⁾** about the past.

In conclusion⁽²⁰⁾, although it is **possible⁽²¹⁾** to have success without failure, from my **point of view⁽²²⁾**, it is better to **fail⁽²³⁾** sometimes **in order to⁽²⁴⁾** appreciate success more.

- (1) ضروري
- (2) مستحيل
- (3) ينجح
- (4) الفشل
- (5) ناجح
- (6) يخطئ
- (7) بالإضافة إلى
- (8) أهمية
- (9) نتيجة لذلك
- (10) يقدّر / يُقَدَّر
- (11) النجاح
- (12) على سبيل المثال
- (13) حزين
- (14) يتحسن - يتحسن
- (15) إيجابية
- (16) بالإضافة إلى ذلك
- (17) يُفضّل
- (18) ينسى
- (19) ذكريات
- (20) الخلاصة
- (21) ممكن
- (22) وجهة نظر
- (23) يفشل
- (24) لكي

2 Listening Texts**Lesson 3 SB page 30**

Girl 1 : I don't think that everyone needs to go to university. In fact, I think it's a **waste of⁽¹⁾** time for some people.

Girl 2 : **That's true⁽²⁾**. If you know you want a job doing something practical, like being an **electrician⁽³⁾**, or if you have a great idea for a business, why not start **immediately⁽⁴⁾** ?

Girl 1 : Exactly.

Boy 1 : I know in some countries, children start school really early, but I think three is too young. I mean, at that age all children want to do is play !

- (1) مضيعة لـ
- (2) هذا صحيح
- (3) عامل كهربائي
- (4) على الفور

Boy 2 : I'd say the opposite. The earlier you start the better. It will give you a **good start**⁽⁵⁾ in life.

Boy 3 : They say that your school days are the best days of your life and I think that's probably true. It's not just about **learning**⁽⁶⁾, it's also about making friends and learning to **help each other**⁽⁷⁾.

Boy 4 : You're right. My parents both loved school and made really good friends there.

Girl 3 : If you're really ill, then it's great that there are ways of learning at home so that there isn't a break in your **education**⁽⁸⁾. But, **otherwise**⁽⁹⁾, you should go to school.

Girl 4 : I **don't agree with you**⁽¹⁰⁾. There are lots of **advantages**⁽¹¹⁾ with learning at home. There isn't any bullying, for instance.

Girl 5 : I don't think people understand how important education really is for young people. I mean, what kind of a future can you have without a good education these days ?

Girl 6 : A lot of people have good lives without doing well at school. I'm **completely**⁽¹²⁾ against this idea that education is **the only way** to⁽¹³⁾ do well.

(5) بداية جيدة

(6) التعلم

(7) مساعدة الآخرين

(8) التعليم

(9) وإلا

(10) لا أتفق معك

(11) مميزات

(12) تمامًا

(13) السبيل الوحيد لـ

Listen to some people's opinions

Lesson 4 WB page 101

Speaker 1 : I mean, it can't be good for your **confidence**⁽¹⁾, can it ? It's got to get you down.

Speaker 2 : It was the best thing that ever happened to me. Everything had been a bit too easy for me before, so I wasn't **ready for**⁽²⁾ it. But then I had to make some real **effort**⁽³⁾.

Speaker 3 : I hated it but, after feeling sorry for myself **for a while**⁽⁴⁾, I could see my mistakes and I knew what I had to do.

Speaker 4 : My friends were **lovely**⁽⁵⁾, but I just felt terrible and I kept on feeling terrible. In fact, I haven't tried it again because it upset me too much.

Speaker 5 : When you've made as many mistakes as me, you learn to **pick yourself up**⁽⁶⁾ and **carry on**⁽⁷⁾.

(1) ثقة

(2) مستعد لـ

(3) جهد - مجهود

(4) للحظات

(5) جميل - جذاب

(6) يستعيد الثقة

(7) يستمر

3 Video script section

Most **young people**⁽¹⁾ go to school every day and have lessons with other children, but not everyone does this. In some countries, students can learn at home **instead**⁽²⁾ and their teachers are usually their parents.

We call this way of learning "**home-schooling**"⁽³⁾. Home-schooling is useful for young people who live **a long way from**⁽⁴⁾ a school, and it's becoming more popular today because students can easily use computers to learn **wherever**⁽⁵⁾ they are. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick and cannot go to a school every day.

A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them, **rather than**⁽⁶⁾ following a school timetable. But, on the other hand, home-schooling isn't **right for**⁽⁷⁾ everyone. Home-schooled children might **feel lonely**⁽⁸⁾ because it can be **harder for**⁽⁹⁾ them to make friends. They may not be able to **do sports**⁽¹⁰⁾ with other young people either.

الشباب

بدلاً من

التعليم المنزلي

مسافة بعيدة عن

إنما

فضلاً عن

جيد لـ

يشعر بالوحدة

صعب على

يمارس رياضة

PART IV

LANGUAGE

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. He always to the library when he was young.

(البصرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. had gone b. has been c. went d. was going

2. Sam have a bike when he was 18.

(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. would b. will c. used to d. should

3. The lady taken to hospital in an ambulance after the fire last night.

(القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. will be b. had been c. is d. was

4. Before to bed, she had finished her homework.

(منوف ٢٠٢٣)

- a. had gone b. going c. goes d. went

5. After I had done my homework, I to bed.

(الطوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. going b. had gone c. go d. went

6. I didn't leave my office until I my work. (منطقة أسيوط الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)
- a. finish b. finishes c. had finished d. was finished
7. Did you a secretary for your office?
- a. find b. found c. was found d. had found
8. a secretary found for your office?
- a. Did b. Had c. Was d. Has
9. My uncle didn't remember the promise he made.
- a. has b. had c. had to d. is
10. My uncle didn't remember the promise that made by him.
- a. has b. had c. had been d. is
11. I into a good family from the south of Egypt in 1976.
- a. bore b. was born c. had been born d. have been born
12. I didn't answer any question I had read it carefully.
- a. because b. until c. so d. once
13. When Mariam was young, she used to in London.
- a. lives b. living c. live d. lived
14. she was a little girl, she wanted to be an actress.
- a. Before b. After c. When d. On
15. He had left the house when it began to rain.
- a. recently b. no sooner c. hardly d. then
16. We went to bed we had finished our jobs.
- a. before b. till c. after d. by the time
17. The secretary finished the report before the manager arrived.
- a. had already b. has already c. has just d. was already

2 Special cases

18. Having my homework, I started to watch the match. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
- a. I did b. done c. I had done d. do
19. No sooner the noise than we rushed to the spot. (جهينة ٢٠٢٣)
- a. we heard b. we did hear c. we had he d. had we heard
20. It wasn't until I my homework that I took a rest. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
- a. have done b. had done c. was done d. am doing

21. had her dinner, she washed the dishes.
a. Having b. Have c. Had d. Has
22. Before the medicine, he had eaten a sandwich.
a. had taken b. took c. taking d. was taken
23. The bus when I arrived at the station, so I didn't catch it.
a. leaves b. hadn't left c. has left d. had left
24. The bus when I arrived at the station, so I didn't miss it.
a. leaves b. left c. has left d. had left
25. Mr Mohammed bought a car after he how to drive.
a. learning b. being learned c. had learned d. having learned
26. Mr Mohammed bought a car after how to drive.
a. learning b. being learned c. had learned d. learned
27. We Aswan many times before, but last winter we enjoyed ourselves more than ever.
a. were visiting b. were visited c. have visited d. had visited
28. I had my lunch. After that, I to bed.
a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone
29. He missed the bus because he up late.
a. gets b. has got c. had got d. was getting
30. Hardly had the singer finished his song when all fans
a. cheered b. had cheered c. have cheered d. cheer
31. He to prison because he had committed ارتكب several crimes.
a. was gone b. was going c. had gone d. went
32. He to prison because he had committed ارتكب several crimes.
a. was sent b. was sending c. had sent d. sent
33. He to sit down until he had apologized.
a. didn't allow b. doesn't allow
c. wasn't allowed d. hadn't allowed
34. Ahmed was crying because he over.
a. has fallen b. was fallen c. had fallen d. had been fallen

35. "I went shopping. That was an hour before I started to prepare dinner."

Which of the following gives the nearest meaning to this quotation ?

- a. As soon as I had gone shopping, I started to prepare dinner.
- b. As soon as I had done the shopping, I started to prepare dinner.
- c. On going shopping, I started to prepare dinner.
- d. An hour after I had done the shopping, I started to prepare dinner.

36. "I called him, so he left the office." This means

- a. he had left by the time I called him.
- b. he didn't leave after I had called him.
- c. he left just before I called him.
- d. he didn't leave until I had called him.

37. Having done her homework, she went out to play. This means that

- a. she went out to play just before doing homework.
- b. she didn't go out to play until she had done her homework.
- c. she didn't do her homework until she had gone out to play.
- d. she went out to play. After that, she had done her homework.

38. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online. This means that

- a. Sama was drinking juice.
- b. Sama's friends were drinking juice.
- c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice.
- d. Sama said her friends were not drinking juice.

39. Feeling tired, Ahmed preferred not to go to school. What does this mean ?

- a. Ahmed went to school although he was tired.
- b. Feeling well, Ahmed preferred not to go to school.
- c. Ahmed felt unwell, so he preferred to stay at home.
- d. Not feeling well, Ahmed preferred to go to school.

١ كلمة (education) لا تُعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد، لكنها يمكن أن تأخذ (a/an) :

ex. - Mr Ashraf had a good education in an international school.

٢ كلمة (equipment) لا تُعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد :

ex. - The office needs

a. an equipment

b. some equipments

c. some equipment

d. equipments

٣ لاحظ أن:

be successful = be a success ناجح

ex. - My first book was successful. = My first book was a success.

٤ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفات التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية :

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - 's

ex. - Cairo is Egypt's biggest city. (Not: the biggest)

- Is Malak your youngest sister? (Not: the youngest)

٥ الأسماء التالية في صيغة المفرد تدل على جمع ويمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع حسب المعنى المقصود :

فصل - class - the youth - الجمهور أو العامة - the public - group - team -
عصابة - gang - حشد - crowd - طاقم سفينة أو طائرة - crew - زوج - couple

ex. - My family is / are helpful.

وتأخذ الكلمات السابقة فعل جمع إذا استخدمنا معها (who / whom) أو أي ضمير جمع،

أما إذا استخدمنا معها (which) أو ضمير غير عاقل فهي تأخذ فعل مفرد.

ex. - The gang who robbed the bank were arrested yesterday.

- The gang which robbed the bank was arrested yesterday.

٦ لاحظ استخدام (inf. + ing) في الصيغ التالية :

While + subj. + verb ... = (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - She became ill while she was trying to control the children.

= She became ill to control the children.

a. to try

b. trying

c. is trying

d. she is trying

When/because + subj. + verb ... = (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - He is much happier when he learns at home.

- He is much happier at home.

a. learns b. to learn c. learn d. learning

ex. - I got bored because of reading all the long details.

= I got bored all the long details.

a. to read b. reading c. I read d. for reading

who / which + that + verb ... = (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - Look at the pictures of people who learn at home.

= Look at the pictures of people at home.

a. learning b. are learning c. learn d. they learn

7 لاحظ استخدام (instead – instead of) :

بدلاً من (ذلك) instead / instead of

- تُستخدم (instead) كظرف في بداية أو نهاية الجملة الثانية:

ex. - She didn't go to Cairo. Instead, she went to Alexandria.

- I didn't go out. I watched a film at home instead.

- تُستخدم (instead of) كحرف جر ويأتي بعدها (noun) أو (inf. + ing) :

ex. - Can I use a tablet instead of (using) a laptop?

- يُمكن أن يُستخدم ضمير المفعول بعد (instead of) وقبل (inf. + ing) لتوضيح الفاعل المقصود:

ex. - The children of rich people have lessons with a teacher who came to their homes instead of them going to school.

8 لاحظ استخدام (in addition – in addition to) :

بالإضافة إلى (inf. + ing) / (n. + inf.) in addition to + n. / (inf. + ing)

ex. - In addition to learning from their teachers, students learn from each other.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك in addition + subj. + verb

ex. - Students learn from their teachers. In addition, they learn from each other.

9 لاحظ استخدام (thanks to) بمعنى (بسبب / بفضل) :

بسبب / بفضل (inf. + ing) / (n. + inf.) thanks to + n. / (inf. + ing)

ex. - Thanks to the good weather, the ship sailed quickly.

- He succeeded in his exams thanks to studying hard.

٢٠ لاحظ استخدام (such as) بمعنى (مثل) عند إعطاء أمثلة :

مثل such as = like

ex. - I have visited some European countries, such as England and France.
= I have visited some European countries like England and France.

- تُستخدم (like) وليس (such as) عند تشبيه شيء بآخر:

ex. - The Egyptian team wear red, white and black, like the colours of Egypt's flag.

Exercise On Language Hints

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My dad couldn't attend his friend's daughter's wedding due to his illness, so he sent me
a. instead of b. instead c. in addition d. in detail (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)
2. He is a writer.
a. successful b. successfully c. success as d. a & c
3. Some insects are green the plants among which they live.
a. like b. such as c. a & b d. such
4. Foods cheese and fish are very useful.
a. like b. such as c. a & b d. such
5. meat, mum prepared potatoes.
a. In addition b. In addition to c. Instead d. As well
6. Mum prepared meat., she prepared potatoes.
a. In addition b. In addition to c. Instead d. As well
7. going out, he watched a film at home.
a. In addition b. In additions c. Instead d. Instead of
8. Ayam El-Sadat is Ahmed Zaki's film ever.
a. the best b. best c. well d. good
9. The team of scientists done a great job.
a. has b. have c. a & b d. was
10. The team of scientists who you have seen here done a great job.
a. has b. have c. a & b d. was
11. The team of scientists which you have seen here done a great job.
a. has b. have c. a & b d. was

1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)

Thomas Edison lit up the world with his invention of the electric light. Without him, the world might still be a dark place. He invented over 1200 other things. Edison attended school for about two months. His mother taught him a few things, but he was mostly self-educated. His natural curiosity led him to start experimenting at a young age with electrical and mechanical things at home. When he was 12 years old, he got his first job. He became a newsboy on a train. He set up a laboratory in a baggage car of the train so that he could continue his experiments in his spare time. He was fired when he **accidentally** set fire to the floor of the baggage car, but he continued to conduct his experiments. Thomas Edison was totally deaf in one ear and hard of hearing in the other, but thought of his deafness as a blessing in many ways. He called himself a "two-shift man" because he worked 16 out of 24 hours. Thomas Edison died and left numerous inventions that improved the quality of life all over the world.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Edison considered his deafness a/an
a. disadvantage b. blessing c. necessity d. obstacle
- Thomas Edison attended school for
a. two weeks b. two years c. sixty days d. sixteen days
- What is Edison's most important invention mentioned?
a. electric car b. TV c. watch d. electric light
- Edison lost his first job because he
a. was lazy
b. set fire to the floor of the baggage car
c. was mad
d. set fire in his invention
- Thomas Edison could hardly
a. speak b. listen c. hear d. sleep
- But for Edison, the world would be
a. dark b. bright c. crystal d. smooth
- The underlined word "**accidentally**" means
a. by mistake b. on purpose c. by chance d. in time

From :
 To :
 Subject : The development of education in Egypt.
 Dear,

How are you? I hope you and your family are well. I'm very pleased to write this email to you. I'll tell you about the development of education in Egypt.

We all agree that education is the most important aspect in the development of any country. When a country has a good educational system, it has good doctors, engineers, teachers, scientists ... etc.

It is known that the old educational system was out-of-date. It depended on memorization الحفظ and indoctrination التلقين. Students studied only for exams. After the exams, students forgot everything they'd learnt. Nearly all students didn't enjoy learning as it was boring and tiring. How can we make learning more enjoyable and useful?

Egypt has moved to a new educational system. The new system adapts student-centered instruction (تدريس قائم على الطالب) through interactive activities and group work. Students are engaged in hands-on activities and projects which enhance their skills and abilities to be more creative and independent learners. Learning outcomes mainly aim to help students develop their self-learning skills and communication skills.

Assessment will measure students' understanding. Students will be asked to apply what they have learned in meaningful situations and contexts. Exams will be given and marked digitally using tablets students already have.

We hope that would help new generations to be equipped for rapid changes in our world. What do you think? Looking forward to hearing from you.

Love from me,

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Modern education systems try to improve students' abilities. Scientific and cultural abilities are really vital and important. (المحدودة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. تُحاول نُظُم التعليم الحديثة أن تطور قدرات الطلاب، وتُعتبر القدرات الثقافية حيوية ومهمة جداً.
 b. تُحاول نُظُم التعليم الحديثة أن تطور قدرات الطلاب، وتُعتبر القدرات العلمية والثقافية حيوية جداً.
 c. تُحاول نُظُم التعليم الحديثة أن تطور قدرات الطلاب، وتُعتبر القدرات العلمية والثقافية حيوية ومهمة جداً.
 d. تُحاول نُظُم التعليم الحديثة أن تطور الطلاب، وتُعتبر القدرات الثقافية حيوية ومهمة جداً.

2. Students should know how to be self-determined, have time management, so they should try to learn the necessary life skills for that.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. علي الطلاب أن يعرفوا كيف يحددوا مصيرهم وأن تكون لديهم القدرة على تنظيم أوقاتهم، ولذلك لابد أن يتعلموا المهارات الحياتية الضرورية.
- b. علي الطلاب أن يتعلموا كيف يحددوا مصيرهم وأن تكون لديهم القدرة على تنظيم أوقاتهم، ولذلك فهم يتعلمون المهارات الحياتية الضرورية لذلك.
- c. علي الطلاب أن يعرفوا كيف يحددوا مصيرهم وأن تكون لديهم القدرة على تنظيم أوقاتهم، ولذلك لابد أن يتعلموا المهارات الحياتية الضرورية لذلك.
- d. علي الطلاب أن يحددوا مصيرهم وأن تكون لديهم القدرة على تنظيم الوقت، ولذلك كان عليهم أن يتعلموا المهارات الحياتية الضرورية.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. يجب إعطاء التعليم والمعلمين قدراً أكبر من الاهتمام، فهما الركيزتان الرئيسيتان اللتان تعتمد عليهما نهضة المجتمعات.
(العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Education and teachers should be given much more interesting because they are the two main bases on which the renaissance of societies depends.
- b. Education and teachers should be given much more interest because they are the two main bases on which the renaissance of societies depends.
- c. Education and teachers should be given much more interesting because they are the two mean bases on which the renaissance of societies depends.
- d. Education and teachers should be given much more interested because they are the two main bases on which the renaissance of societies depends.

٢. فيها حاجة طوة: اصطف الطلاب على الجانبين لعمل ممر شرفي تعبيراً عن حبهم لمعلم اللغة الإنجليزية.
(الحامول ٢٠٢٣)

- a. It has something nice: the students lined up on both sides to make an honorary passage for the teacher of English.
- b. It has something nice: the students lined up on both sides to make a honorary corridor to express their love for the teacher of English.
- c. It has something nice: the students lined on every side to form an honorary corridor to express their love for the teacher of English.
- d. It has something nice: the students lined up on both sides to make an honorary corridor to express their love for the teacher of English.

education

- **educate (v)** يُعَلِّم (في مدرسة / جامعة ...)
 - This school educates disabled children.
 - I was educated in Minia University.
 - **educate (about / in / on) (v)** يُثَقِّف (في)
 - This programme educates mothers about children's health problems.
 - **education (n)** التعليم / التدريس (في مدرسة / جامعة ...)
 - I want my children to have a good education.
 - **educated (adj) غير مُتَعَلِّم ≠ uneducated (adj) مُتَعَلِّم**
 - Sama is a well-educated girl.
 - **educational (adj)** تعليمي
 - The educational system must be developed يتطور.
- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:
- have / get / receive an education لديه / يحصل على تعليم
 - give / provide education يوفر تعليم
 - enter education يلتحق بالتعليم
 - leave education يترك التعليم
 - state / public education التعليم الحكومي
 - private education التعليم الخاص
 - primary / preparatory / secondary education التعليم الابتدائي / الإعدادي / الثانوي

bully

- **bully (n)** بلطجي
 - All bullies must be sent to prison.
- **bully (v)** يُلَطِّج - يَتَنَمَّر
 - If you continue to bully people in your area, I'll arrest you.
- **bully (... into) (v)** يبتز - يساوم
 - He bullied us into agreeing to his plan or we will be fired يُفصل من العمل.
- **bullying (n)** البلطجة
 - The government will never tolerate bullying. تسمح بـ

schooling

- **school (n)** مدرسة (اسم معدود)
 - Sohaila is a student in a secondary school.

school (n)

الدراسة - فترة الدراسة - اليوم الدراسي (اسم غير معدود)

Rodayna started school in 2018. الدراسة

He is one of my old friends from school. فترة الدراسة

School begins at 7:15. اليوم الدراسي

school (ed) (in) (v)

يُدرّس - يُفَقِّه - يُدرِّب على - يُرَوِّض

He was schooled in teamwork.

I was schooled in the yellow building over there.

schooling (n)

التعليم في المدارس (اسم غير معدود)

My mother had only six years of schooling.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------|
| - start school | يبدأ الدراسة | - attend a school | يذهب إلى مدرسة |
| - leave school | ينهى الدراسة | - a high school | مدرسة ثانوية |
| - a boarding school | مدرسة داخلية | | |

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Congratulations! Your shot is
a. success b. a success c. successful d. b & c
2. You spend a long time to a hunting dog.
a. chase b. evacuate c. school d. succeed
3. He her into paying 50,000 pounds to return her stolen car.
a. asked b. told c. made d. bullied
4. Wars thousands of children.
a. bully b. orphan c. varies d. include
5. Mum asked me to tea in the shopping list.
a. include b. advertise c. improve d. care

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.
a. During b. On c. While d. As
2. A week ago, I sold my old car. I it since I started my job as a teacher.
a. has b. have had c. was having d. had had
3. Once I the correct answer, my teacher clapped his hands to me.
a. had been chosen b. chooses
c. choose d. chose
4. I had my lunch. After that, I to bed.
a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone

Test on Unit 9

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

التقييمات
الشهرية في
نهاية الكتاب



الكتاب الإلكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "Keeping animals and birds in Zoos is cruel." The antonyms of the word "cruel" are
 a. strange b. merciful c. violent
 d. brave e. kind
 (أقليات ٢٠٢٣)
2. The words and are antonyms.
 a. succession b. succeed c. failure
 d. schooling e. success
 (المعجمي ٢٠٢٣)

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. He was sent to a school in Cairo to study architecture.
 a. broading b. board c. boarding d. broadening
 (المعاصرة ٢٠٢٣)
2. All society members must start a campaign to stop and its dangerous effects.
 a. voluntary work b. production c. bullying d. education
 (اطسا ٢٠٢٣)
3. Our is so kind. All children love her because she teaches them kindly.
 a. nurse b. servant c. governess d. guard
 (منطقة أسيوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
4. Jane is a/an Her parents died in a car accident last year.
 a. governess b. housewife c. author d. orphan
 (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
5. '.....' and 'relative' have one meaning in common. They both can mean a member of one's family.
 a. Relationship b. Relation c. Relativity d. Relating
6. The manager wants to another secretary.
 a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
7. As an expert in farming, he has a lot of about plants.
 a. ability b. imagination c. knowledge d. confidence
8. A new factory in our town last year.
 a. built b. was built c. was building d. will be built
 (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
9. you use to play with dolls?
 a. Are b. Is c. Did d. Does
 (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
10. After my father's car, he went to the police station to report the theft.
 a. was stealing b. had been stolen
 c. were stolen d. had stolen
 (اطسا ٢٠٢٣)
11. my arrival at the office, I opened the windows.
 a. On b. While c. During d. When
 (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
12. No sooner had we heard the noise we rushed to the balcony.
 a. then b. that c. thus d. than
 (أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)

13. I turned off the light before to bed. (ادفو ٢٣٠٢)

- a. go b. going c. went d. to go

14. Fortunately, my father found the wallet he (ادفو ٢٣٠٢)

- a. has lost b. looses c. had lost d. was lost

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (بني سويف ٢٣٠٢)

Winter is cold in some places. Many plants do not grow during winter. Some plants die. Snow and ice may cover the ground. It can be hard for animals to find food during winter. Animals get through this time in many ways. Birds and butterflies can fly. Many of them do not stick around for the winter. They leave. They go to a place with nice weather. Then they come home in the spring. We call this migration. Migrating is a good way to avoid the cold.

Another good way to avoid the cold is to sleep through it. Many animals hide during the winter. They save their energy. They do not eat. They live off of their fat. They do this until food returns. We call this hibernation. Snakes, frogs, and bears hibernate. Some animals store food in their homes. They do not sleep all winter. They live on what they have saved in the summer and fall. This is what squirrels and raccoons do.

Other animals do not leave or hide. They must survive. Sometimes nature helps them out. Some animals grow thicker coats in the winter. Other animals change colour. The arctic fox is brown in the summer. His coat turns white in the winter for safety. Winter may be pretty. It is nice to see snow on the trees. But it is dangerous too.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- What is the main idea of this text?
 - Animals do funny and interesting things.
 - Most flowers do not grow during the wintertime.
 - Animals survive the winter in many ways.
 - We must help each other.
- Which of these animals survives winter by eating stored food?
 - Bears
 - Raccoons
 - Frogs
 - Birds
- Why does the arctic fox's coat change white during winter?
 - The white coat is prettier.
 - White absorbs the sun and is warmer.
 - The white coat helps him hide from its enemies.
 - His body saves energy by reducing hair color.
- What does it mean to migrate?
 - To grow a thicker coat.
 - To move somewhere warmer for a season.
 - To enter a long sleep and survive off of body fat.
 - To change colors.

5. Which animal does not hibernate?

- a. foxes b. frogs c. snakes d. bears

6. How would a thicker coat help an animal survive winter?

- a. A thicker coat would help an animal hide better.
b. A thicker coat would protect an animal against attacks.
c. A thicker coat would help an animal stay warm.
d. A thicker coat would help an animal migrate.

7. Which of these animals migrates during the winter?

- a. Foxes b. Bears c. Snakes d. Butterflies

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

We must bring up our children on respect for diversity and accepting others.

(سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

أ. يجب أن نحضر أبنائنا في احترام الاختلاف وقبول الآخرين.

ب. يجب أن نربي أولادنا على احترام التنوع وقبول الآخرين.

ج. يجب أن نربي أطفالنا على احترام التعددية وقبول الآخرين.

د. يجب أن نربي أطفالنا على احترام الخلاف وقبول الآخرين.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

فخر بعلمائنا العظماء الذين حققوا إنجازات عظيمة في العديد من المجالات مثل الطب والهندسة.

(يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٣)

a. We pride of our great scientists who have made great achievements in a lot of fields like medicine and engineering.

b. We are proud of our great scientists who have done great achievements in a lot of fields like medicines and engineering.

c. We are proud of our great scientists who have made great achievements in a lot of fields like medicine and engineering.

d. We are proud of our great scientists who have made great achievements in a lot of fields like medicines and engineering.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Jim, would you sail to the Hispaniola on your own ?

.....

2. What kind of person do you think Hands was ? Why ?

.....

3. How did Jim prove to be kind ?

.....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“The Importance of Education”

.....
.....
.....

Mini-Test on Unit 9 for Al-Azhar Students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Ahmed is at a restaurant.

Waiter : Welcome sir, (1)

Ahmed : I'll start with some chicken soup.

Waiter : (2)

Ahmed : Chicken, please.

Waiter : (3)

Ahmed : Grilled, please.

Waiter : What about the dessert ?

Ahmed : (4)

2. Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

“The importance of teachers in society”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. (A) Translate into Arabic :

In the recent years, people are more aware of the cultures and customs of different countries.

.....

.....

(B) Translate into English :

لقد حان وقت العمل الجاد من أجل بناء مستقبل وطننا العظيم.

.....

.....

Revision 3

Based on Units 7, 8 & 9

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 104 : 107

PART I VOCABULARY

1 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

alarm clock (n)	منبه	hand (n)	عقرب الساعة - يد
back (n)	ظهر - خلف	notes (n)	ملاحظات
consequences (n)	نتائج	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
danger (n)	الخطر	recognise (d) (v)	يتعرف على
driverless (adj)	بدون سائق	solar power (n)	الطاقة الشمسية
engines (n)	محركات	thought (n)	فكرة
extra (adj)	إضافي - زائد	type (n)	نوع
forms (n)	أشكال - أنواع	warn (ed) (v)	يُحذّر
freeze-froze-frozen (v)	يُجمّد	wind power (n)	طاقة الرياح

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ	so far (adv)	حتى الآن
free (adj)	متفرّغ - حرّ	special (adj)	خاص
loud (adj)	عالي الصوت	square (n)	ميدان - مَرَبّع
relaxed (adj)	مسترخي	take-took-taken (v)	يستغرق (وقت) - يأخذ

PART II LANGUAGE STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

click	the button	يضغط علي الزر	research	online	يبحث على الإنترنت
do	it wrong	يفعلها بشكل خاطئ	take	turns	يتبادل الأدوار
give	feedback	يقدم بتغذية راجعة	write	a presentation	يكتب عرض تقديمي

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a frightening thought	فكرة مُخيفة	mistakes made by people	أخطاء يرتكبها الناس
bring in	يجلب معه	move ... to	ينقل ... إلى
cars with engines	سيارات ذات محركات	on the back of the map	في ظهر الخريطة
decide not to do	يقرر ألا يفعل	pay for	يدفع ثمن
find out	يكتشف - يعرف	slow down	يُبطّن
find out about	يعرف عن	so far	حتى الآن

forms of technology	صور التكنولوجيا	talk on the phone	يتحدث في الهاتف
in front of	أمام	the usual type	النوع المعتاد
in my opinion	من وجهة نظري / أرى أن	wait for	ينتظر
in ten years from now	بعد ١٠ سنوات من الآن	wake up	يستيقظ
look for	يبحث عن	work well	يعمل جيدًا
make it faster to travel	يجعل السفر أسرع	worried by the idea of	يشعر بالقلق من فكرة

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Listening Text

Lesson 2 SB page 37

Presenter : Hello, welcome to Stay Healthy, our **weekly look**⁽¹⁾ at health and hygiene. In today's programme, we're **taking calls**⁽²⁾ from students. They have questions about hygiene in the house for our **guest**⁽³⁾ expert.

This week we're **pleased**⁽⁴⁾ to have with us Dr Amal El-Aziz from the Cairo University Hospital. So, our first caller is Lamia from Tanta. Hello, Lamia.

Lamia : Hello doctor. Sometimes when I eat, my food falls on the ground. But my friends say there is a five second rule : "The food will be ok to eat if you pick it up before five seconds". Is that true ?

Dr Amal : I'd **say the opposite**⁽⁵⁾, Lamia. You mustn't eat any food if it has fallen on the ground. Bacteria will already be on it. So, I'd advise you to put that piece of food in the bin immediately.

Presenter : OK, now our next **callers**⁽⁶⁾ are Hamid and Leila from Hurghada. They're brother and sister.

Hamid : Hi, I'm Hamid. I always tell my sister that she doesn't wash her hands very well, but she doesn't believe me.

Leila : Yes, because he says I have to wash my hands really carefully. But if I use **soap**⁽⁷⁾, it will kill the bacteria on my hands, won't it ? So soap and water should be enough.

- (1) متابعة أسبوعية
- (2) يستقبل مكالمات تليفونية
- (3) ضيف
- (4) مسرور
- (5) يقول العكس أو النقيض
- (6) متصلين
- (7) صابون

Dr Amal : OK, so there are two points here. Firstly, it's very easy to wash your hands, but **research**⁽⁸⁾ shows that 95% of people do not wash their hands correctly. Secondly, soap doesn't kill bacteria. The reason we have soap is that it helps to take the bacteria from your hands. So your brother is right, Leila. Remember, you should always wash your hands very carefully with soap and a lot of water.

(8) بحث علمي

(9) يجمع

Presenter : Now we have Maya from Cairo.

Maya : Hello. My mother says I must always clean the table before we eat. But if the table looks clean, it won't have bacteria on it, so I don't understand why. Can the doctor tell me ?

Dr Amal : Your mother is right, Maya. You can't see bacteria, so you should clean your table even if it looks clean.

Presenter : Finally here's Omar from Alexandria.

Omar : Hello doctor. Is it true that if you freeze food, it kills the bacteria on it ?

Dr Amal : I don't think so, Omar. Bacteria does not always die when you **freeze**⁽⁹⁾ things. When you cook frozen food, you must always heat it to about 75 °C or more. Then you know the bacteria has gone.

Presenter : Thank you, that's all we have time for, but I think we have all learned a lot about how to stay healthy today.

2 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 36

Dalia's blog.hello.org

In today's lesson, my teacher **brought in**⁽¹⁾ different **forms**⁽²⁾ of technology from the past. He said, "**Find out**⁽³⁾ how these things work, and then give me your **feedback**⁽⁴⁾."

First, my group were given an old **alarm clock**⁽⁵⁾.



- (1) يُحضّر معه - يجلب
- (2) أشكال - أنواع
- (3) يكتشف
- (4) تغذية راجعة
- (5) منبه

Clocks usually have two or three **hands**⁽⁶⁾, but this one had an **extra**⁽⁷⁾ red hand. "If you use it correctly, it will make a loud noise," the teacher said. "You must move the red hand to the time at which you want to **wake up**⁽⁸⁾."

It **took**⁽⁹⁾ us some time to understand how to **move**⁽¹⁰⁾ it, but finally the alarm worked. It was very **loud**⁽¹¹⁾. If I heard that noise in the morning, I would wake up **immediately**⁽¹²⁾!

Next, we were asked to find our school on an old **map**⁽¹³⁾ of the city. "You should look for the name of our street in the **list**⁽¹⁴⁾ on the **back**⁽¹⁵⁾ of the map," the teacher said. "If you find **square**⁽¹⁶⁾ G5 on the map, you can see where our school is."

After that, my group were given an old camera and a film. "You must put the film inside the camera," my teacher said. That was really difficult. If we did it wrong, it would **damage**⁽¹⁷⁾ the film. **Fortunately**⁽¹⁸⁾, Hana in my group had helped her father use an old camera and so she knew what to do. Then we **clicked**⁽¹⁹⁾ the button on the camera lots of times and asked the teacher if we could see the **results**⁽²⁰⁾.

"If you take the camera to a **special**⁽²¹⁾ shop, they will show you the photos," said the teacher. "But you must **pay for**⁽²²⁾ that, and you must wait for some time until you can see them." We decided not to do this!

In my opinion, some old technology is fun to use, but I'm pleased we have **apps**⁽²³⁾ on our phones today. I think that most things are a lot easier to do these days!

Dalia

(6) عقرب الساعة

(7) إضافي - زائد

(8) يستيقظ

(9) يستغرق (وقت)

(10) يُحرَّك - يتحرك

(11) عالي الصوت

(12) على الفور

(13) خريطة

(14) قائمة

(15) ظهر - خلف

(16) مَبْدَان - مَزْبَع

(17) يَتَلَف

(18) لِحَسَنَ الحَظ

(19) يَلْقُر - يَضْغَط

(20) نَتَائِج

(21) خَاص

(22) يَدْفَع ثَمَن

(23) تَطْبِيقَات

Driverless cars

People born in ten years from now will probably never learn how to drive. Why? Because our cars won't need drivers and computers will do all the work for us.

There are already **driverless**⁽¹⁾ cars in many places, but at the moment, they are only being **tested**⁽²⁾. The computers they use must be able to **recognise**⁽³⁾ other **vehicles**⁽⁴⁾, **respond**⁽⁵⁾ to people and things on the road, and know when the car must **slow down**⁽⁶⁾ or stop.

For some people, the **idea**⁽⁷⁾ of a car **without**⁽⁸⁾ a driver is a **frightening**⁽⁹⁾ **thought**⁽¹⁰⁾. However, **experts**⁽¹¹⁾ say that 90% of **accidents**⁽¹²⁾ are because of **mistakes**⁽¹³⁾ made by people. Often it is because people are talking on their phones or feeling tired. With driverless cars, people are **free**⁽¹⁴⁾ to send texts, or even sleep, without **danger**⁽¹⁵⁾.

The computers in driverless cars should also make it faster to travel around cities because they will choose the best way. They will also **cause**⁽¹⁶⁾ less **pollution**⁽¹⁷⁾ because there will be less **traffic**⁽¹⁸⁾.

But how **safe**⁽¹⁹⁾ are these cars? Some people say that they do not work well in bad weather. **So far**⁽²⁰⁾, there have been at least 12 accidents with driverless cars in America (although 11 of these were caused by other cars). So, it might take a long time for people to feel **relaxed**⁽²¹⁾ enough to read a book while they travel.

In the near future, driverless cars will probably become as **familiar**⁽²²⁾ as the cars of today. In the past, people were also very worried by the idea of cars with **engines**⁽²³⁾. In the nineteenth century in England, when cars became **popular**⁽²⁴⁾, the **law**⁽²⁵⁾ said that a man had to walk in front of them with a red **flag**⁽²⁶⁾ to **warn**⁽²⁷⁾ people. The law didn't change until 1896.



- (1) بدون سائق
- (2) يختبر
- (3) يتعرف علي
- (4) مركبات
- (5) يتجاوب - يستجيب
- (6) يبطئ
- (7) فكرة
- (8) بدون
- (9) مخيف
- (10) فكرة
- (11) خبراء
- (12) حوادث
- (13) أخطاء
- (14) مُتفرِّغ - حر
- (15) الخطر
- (16) يُسبِّب
- (17) التلوث
- (18) حركة المرور
- (19) آمن
- (20) حتى الآن
- (21) مسترخي
- (22) شائع - معروف
- (23) مُحركات
- (24) شائع - مُنتشر
- (25) القانون
- (26) غَلَم
- (27) يُحذِّر

General Exercise on Units 7, 8 & 9

Collected from SB & WB

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Omar, has a new on his smartphone to understand foreign languages.
a. chat b. app c. internet d. click
2. The students answered all the questions in the and then checked their scores.
a. feedback b. invention c. quiz d. computer
3. My dad uses if he doesn't know which road to take.
a. vehicle b. app c. CPR d. GPS
4. In the future, we will have the to travel to space on our holidays.
a. technology b. invention c. internet d. robot
5. Kamal his homework when he went to the cinema.
a. had finished b. finished c. was finishing d. would finish
6. You make a loud noise in the library or you will get into trouble.
a. can b. should c. mustn't d. must
7. If Magda a language course, she would be able to speak to foreigners.
a. does b. will do c. did d. would do
8. What would you do if your friend an accident ?
a. have b. would have c. has d. had
9. When the alarm rings, we the building.
a. would leave b. left c. leaving d. leave
10. I have a bad cold, so it is difficult for me to
a. breathe b. research c. wash d. respond
11. We should always put our plastic rubbish in a separate
a. wrap b. bin c. dust d. floor
12. A new school in our village last year.
a. built b. was built c. was building d. had been built
13. Fortunately, the police could the mystery and catch the criminal.
a. solve b. make c. find d. do
14. It's very easy to around in that city because the public transport is cheap and efficient.
a. get b. find c. stay d. say
15. There was an emergency, so the school was
a. serviced b. navigated c. evacuated d. injured
16. The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt about
a. danger b. first aid c. hygiene d. emergency services



UNIT 10

What's your job ?

SB pages 42 : 51

WB pages 108 : 113

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- ✪ Reading : An article about jobs
- ✪ Writing : An email asking for advice ; a personal CV
- ✪ Listening : Students at a job fair
- ✪ Speaking : Talking about job opportunities

- ✪ Language : Reported speech : statements and questions
- ✪ Life Skills : Self-management : Planning for the world of work



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

application(n)	تطبيق - طلب التحاق	reassurance(n)	طَمانَة - سَكِينَة - طَمانِينَة - تشجيع
applied(adj)	تطبيقي - عَمَلِي	reassure(d) (v)	يُطمئن
apply(ied) (v)	يُطبّق - يتقدم بطلب	reassuring(adj)	مُطمِن
apprenticeship(n)	(فترة) التدريب المِهْنِي	reward(ed) (v - n)	يكافئ - مكافأة
attendant(n)	مُرافق - خادم	rewarding(adj)	مُجْزِي
Casualty Department	قسم الطوارئ	skill(n)	مَهارة
casualty(n)	خسارة - حالة وفاة	stress(ed) (v - n)	يضغط - يؤكد على - ضغط
construction(n)	بناء - تشييد	stressful(adj)	ضاغط - مُجْهِد
contract(n)	عَقْد - وثيقة تعاقد	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح
degree(n)	شهادة جامعية - درجة	success(n)	النجاح
industry(n)	صناعة - نشاط اقتصادي	successful(adj)	ناجح
practical(adj)	عملي - تطبيقي	training(n)	تدريب
qualification(n)	مُؤَهَّل - تأهل		
qualified(adj)	مُؤَهَّل / لديه مُؤَهَّل		
qualify(ied) (v)	يتأهل - يؤهّل		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

airline(n)	خط طيران	interested(adj)	مُهِتَم
career(n)	مِهْنَة	involve(d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن
challenge(d) (n - v)	تَحْدِي - يتحدى	knowledge(n)	المَعْرِفَة
characteristics(n)	بِسمات - خصائص	non-biased(adj)	محايد - غير متحيز
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية	nursing(n)	التمريض
chemistry(n)	الكيمياء	obviously(adv)	من الواضح / بوضوح
college(n)	مدرسة عليا - كُلية	option(n)	خيار - بديل
cycle(d) (v)	يقود دراجة	particular(adj)	مُحدّد
deadline(n)	موعد نهائي	products(n)	منتجات
despite(preposition)	برغم	progress(n)	التقدم
develop(ed) (v)	يُطَوّر - يكتشف	pursue(d) (v)	يواصل - يتعقب - يلاحق
eligible(adj)	مُؤَهَّل - ذو جَدارة	route(n)	مسار - خط سير
frightened(adj)	خائف	the public(n)	الجمهور - عامة الناس

frustrating(adj)	مُخِبط	tiring(adj)	مُتعب - مُرهق
graduate(d) (v - n)	يتخرّج - خريج	trade(n)	تجارة - حرفة
hold - held(v)	يقيم / يعقد	vast(adj)	واسع - عريض
incredibly(adv)	بشكل غير معقول	ward(n)	عُلبَر (قسم في مستشفى)
Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات		
interact(ed) (v)	يتفاعل		

3 التعريفات Definitions

Memorise	Understand
apply(ied) (v) يُطبّق - يتقدم بطلب	to make a formal request, usually in writing
apprenticeship(n) (فترة) التدريب المهني	(a period of time) working in order to learn skills needed to do a job
attendant(n) عامل - قائم بالخدمة	a person whose job involves helping the public
casualty department قسم الطوارئ	emergency room in a hospital
construction(n) بناء - تشييد	the work of building something
contract(n) عَقْد - وثيقة تعاقد	a legal agreement
degree(n) شهادة جامعية - درجة	a qualification you receive when you finish university
industry(n) صناعة - نشاط صناعي أو عملي	a particular type of business that produces a particular type of goods or services
practical(adj) عملي - تطبيقي	relating to real activities and events
qualifications(n) مؤهلات	skills or knowledge that make you eligible for a job or work
rewarding(adj) مُجْزِي - مُكافئ	doing something that makes you feel good
skill(n) مهارة	the ability to do something well
stressful(adj) مُرهق - مُؤرّق	causing worry

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Gamal wants to do a/an to learn how to be a builder. (جھينة ٢٠٢٣)
a. attendant b. industry c. apprenticeship d. degree
- In Egypt, tourism has greatly developed for the past 5 years. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. apprenticeship b. constructions c. industry d. graduations

3. Your father's condition is really serious. He needs to be taken to the at once. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
 a. casualty b. railway c. aquarium d. swing
4. The doctor tried to me that my father would be okay. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. care b. know c. reassure d. insure
5. The of the skyscraper started in 2020. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. conclusion b. community c. communication d. construction
6. He teaches at university and has a in Biology. (اوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. degree b. grade c. qualifications d. mark
7. We need solutions to our current economic problems. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
 a. stressful b. practical c. patient d. passionate
8. I'm going to look for another job because the salary I get is not
 a. qualified b. rewarding c. practical d. stressful (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
9. Mr Omar is a highly teacher. That's why he is so successful.
 a. applied b. reassuring c. qualified d. stressful (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
10. To get a good job nowadays, you should have some personal
 a. quantities b. qualities c. disabilities d. qualifications (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
11. Teenagers need love, encouragement and from parents. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. reassurance b. connect c. challenge d. availability
12. Exams can be a time for students. They always feel worried and stressed. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. staring b. stressful c. stressed d. enjoyable
13. I want to join the faculty of medicine and as a doctor.
 a. apply b. reward c. reassure d. qualify
14. We study physics in secondary three.
 a. applied b. reassuring c. qualified d. stressful
15. A good leader has the ability to work under
 a. degree b. success c. industry d. stress
16. The at the petrol station asked me if I wanted to fuel up. (يملا الخزان بالوقود)
 a. communicator b. attendant c. good player d. firefighter
17. helps you get or improve the skills needed for work.
 a. Stress b. Availability c. Training d. Chemistry
18. He got a for his hard work.
 a. cuisine b. certificate c. qualification d. reward
19. I asked my lawyer محامي to revise the of my new flat.
 a. qualification b. contract c. cuisine d. industry
20. If you work hard for a long time without a break, you will be
 a. applied b. graduated c. cycled d. stressed

21. I hope I will in achieving my goal.
a. apply b. succeed c. reassure d. qualify
22. He is a/an father. He has taught his children how to be hard working and depend on themselves.
a. successful b. dishonest c. legal d. aged
23. Speaking is an important language
a. skill b. reward c. certificate d. college
24. Modern technology is to all fields of work and entertainment.
a. applied b. succeeded c. reassured d. qualified
25. This can be downloaded from Google Store.
a. application b. casualty c. construction d. reassurance
26. I knew I was right when I saw the look on my teacher's face.
a. applied b. reassuring c. qualified d. stressful

2

Important Vocabulary

27. You should apply for the job before the
a. redline b. linedead c. deadline d. offline (ارشيد ٢٠٢٣)
28. The teacher helped students to their creative writing skills.
a. lose b. destroy c. damage d. develop (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
29. Climbing the mountain was very, but amusing.
a. challenge b. challenging c. changing d. danger (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
30. The trip programme a visit to the museum.
a. involves b. holds c. challenges d. pursues
31. If you to school, it helps you keep fit.
a. support b. graduate c. cycle d. stress
32. He me to a chess game.
a. pursued b. held c. challenged d. involved
33. My father was angry when he knew my exam results.
a. rewarding b. stressed c. professional d. frustrating
34. She got married immediately after she had from university.
a. supported b. graduated c. cycled d. stressed
35. The meeting will be in a five-star hotel.
a. held b. pursued c. challenged d. involved
36. As soon as I qualify from university, I will do post-..... studies.
a. knowledge b. deadline c. graduate d. teammate
37. You should always your dreams. Never stop trying.
a. pursue b. cycle c. challenge d. involve

3

Definitions

38. is a period of time working in order to learn new needed skills.
a. Emergency b. Apprenticeship c. Allergy d. Invention

(منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

39. A is defined as an agreement between two or more parties, to perform a certain job or work. (Tablet Exam 2022)
 a. degree b. disagreement c. certificate d. contract
40. To is to make a formal request, usually in writing.
 a. reassure b. qualify c. apply d. reward
41. The adjective describes something that makes you feel good.
 a. flexible b. rewarding c. reliable d. qualified
42. means learning the skills you need for a job.
 a. Rewarding b. Applying c. Training d. Contracting
43. A /An is a person whose job involves helping the public.
 a. attendant b. fair c. experience d. expert
44. is the work of building something.
 a. Opportunity b. Construction c. Knowledge d. Firefighting
45. A is a qualification you receive when you finish university.
 a. quality b. graduate c. pay d. degree
46. is a particular type of business that produces.
 a. Vet b. Statement c. Industry d. Stand

PART II

VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

do	a degree in يدرس للحصول على شهادة في	have	medical knowledge لديه معلومات طبية
	training يحصل على تدريب		a talk with يتحدث مع
do/get	a job يؤدي وظيفة / مهمة	have/get	a degree in يحصل على شهادة جامعية في
	an apprenticeship with يحصل على تدريب عملي لدي		make يصنع أثاث منزلي
get/find	a job يحصل على وظيفة	meet	a deadline يُنقِذ ... في الموعد المُحدد

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
apply	يُطبَّق
frightened	خائف
industry	نشاط اقتصادي
reassuring	مُطمِئِن
rewarding	مُجْزِي
stressful	ضاغط - مُجْهِد
vast	واسع / فسيح
	make use of, harness
	scared, afraid
	activity, business
	comforting
	satisfying, worthwhile
	worrying, demanding
	giant, huge

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
reassuring	worrying
practical	theoretical, impractical
rewarding	unrewarding
stressful	relaxing, easy
vast	small, tiny, narrow

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long way from	بعيداً عن	good for	مفيد لـ / صالح لـ
a variety of	تنوع / تشكيلة من	good to	طيب مع
at the weekend	في العطلة الأسبوعية	Job Fair	ندوة عن الوظائف
at times	أحياناً	leave for school	يغادر إلى المدرسة
be essential for	ضروري لـ	legal agreement	اتفاق قانوني
be late for	يتأخر علي	like best about	أكثر شيء يحبه في
can't wait	متلهف	not really	ليس صحيحاً
caring for people	الاهتمام بالناس	popular with	محبوب لدى - ذو شعبية مع
good about	الجيد في	problem solving	حل المشكلات
good at	جيد في		

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply to	يتقدم بطلب إلى	communicate with	يتواصل مع
break down	يتعطل	decide to	يقرر أن
care for	يهتم لأمر - يراعي	interact with	يتفاعل مع
choose to	يختار أن	look for	يبحث عن
communicate ... to	يبلغ ... لـ	qualify as	يتأهل كـ

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

contract - contact

- **contract (n)** عقد (اتفاق مكتوب)
- I have signed the contract. Now, this villa is mine.
- **contact (n)** اتصال - تواصل
- After leaving school, I have had little contact with my schoolmates.

practical - theoretical

- **practical (adj)** عملي - تطبيقي
- Try to find a practical solution to the problem.

• **theoretical (adj)**

نظري

- Although he has theoretical knowledge المعرفة, he did not succeed in his first job.

training - exercise

• **training (n)**

تدريب (لاكتساب أو تحسين مهارة معينة)

- You need to do more training to be one of the main players of the team.

• **exercise (n)**

تدريب (بغرض اللياقة أو قياس مهارة معينة)

- I take some exercises after studying the lesson to see how well I have done.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• **MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :**

1. "Working with young children could be stressful." The antonyms of "stressful" are
(شربين ٢٠٢٣)
a. easy b. tiring c. hopeful
d. relaxing e. wasteful
2. "Nabil was very frightened because he saw a snake." The other words for "frightened" are
(غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٣)
a. afraid b. annoying c. unkind
d. scared e. friendly
3. Your room is compared to mine. You can put many pieces of furniture in it.
(المنزه أول ٢٠٢٣)
a. giant b. wicked c. minor
d. huge e. tiny
4. He travelled to Germany to a degree in engineering.
a. make b. do c. give
d. have e. tell
5. You can do
a. a training b. work experience c. a job
d. much money e. variety
6. "The tourist industry in Egypt is promising." The word "industry" here means
a. activity b. factory c. mall
d. company e. business
7. Part of my job is after old customers.
a. look b. looks c. to look
d. to looking e. looking

• **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. for the job in the bank should have a degree in accountancy.
a. Applying b. Applicants c. Applications d. Apply

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

2. My eldest daughter was qualified a pharmacist in 2020. (البديرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. as b. for c. at d. in
3. Hard work always success. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
a. thanks b. starts c. brings d. ends
4. He is working hard to the deadline.
a. give b. meet c. tell d. earn
5. 'Stressful' is to 'worrying' as is to 'comforting'.
a. reassuring b. affectionate c. sure d. a & b
6. I applied the embassy السفارة to renew my passport.
a. for b. of c. to d. a & c
7. He succeeded in communicating his message citizens المواطنين.
a. with b. on c. in d. to
8. I live a long way my school.
a. in b. from c. at d. onto
9. All members of the team are now doing the final before the match.
a. degree b. skill c. exercise d. training
10. To lose weight, you need to follow a diet and do more
a. degree b. skill c. exercise d. trainers
11. This solution is It is easy to carry it out.
a. theory b. theoretical c. practice d. practical

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

What's your job?

Lesson 1 SB page 42

In this week's article called **What's your job?** We're talking to two young professionals⁽¹⁾ about their work.

Ali works in the **casualty department**⁽²⁾ at a **busy**⁽³⁾ hospital. He says that, **despite**⁽⁴⁾ the long hours and hard work, the job is **incredibly**⁽⁵⁾ **rewarding**⁽⁶⁾.

Why did you choose to become a nurse?

Well, I've always enjoyed **caring for**⁽⁷⁾ people, so it **seemed**⁽⁸⁾ a natural thing to do. I decided to **apply to**⁽⁹⁾ **nursing**⁽¹⁰⁾ **college**⁽¹¹⁾, did my **training**⁽¹²⁾ and then got a job here.



- (1) المحترفين
- (2) قسم الطوارئ
- (3) مزدحم
- (4) برغم
- (5) بشكل غير معقول
- (6) مُجزي
- (7) الاهتمام بـ
- (8) يبدو
- (9) يتقدم بطلب إلى
- (10) التمريض
- (11) مدرسة عليا - كلية
- (12) التدريب

Do you like your job?

Yes, I love it, although it is very **stressful**⁽¹³⁾ at times. People are sometimes **frightened**⁽¹⁴⁾ so part of my job is to make them feel calm, which can be hard.

Is there anything you don't enjoy?

Not really, although I work from 7 am till 6 pm every day, which is very **tiring**⁽¹⁵⁾.

What skills do you need to be a successful nurse?

You need to be a good **communicator**⁽¹⁶⁾ – a lot of nursing is about listening to people's **worries**⁽¹⁷⁾ and **explaining**⁽¹⁸⁾ what the doctors are going to do. You need to have good **medical**⁽¹⁹⁾ **knowledge**⁽²⁰⁾ too, but understanding and kindness are really important.

(13) مُجْهِد

(14) خائف

(15) مُتْعَب - مُزْهَق

(16) شَخْص لَبِيق - مُحَاوِر

(17) القلق

(18) يوضح - يشرح

(19) طِبِّي

(20) المَعْرِفَة

Lesson 1 SB page 43

Nadia is a **scientist**⁽¹⁾ and works in a **laboratory**⁽²⁾ as a **chemist**⁽³⁾.

Why did you choose to become a scientist?

My best subject at school was **chemistry**⁽⁴⁾, so I decided to study it at university. After I **graduated**⁽⁵⁾, I got a two-year **contract**⁽⁶⁾ to work here.

What do you like best about your job?

I'm a very **practical**⁽⁷⁾ person and a lot of my job is about trying to **improve**⁽⁸⁾ **products**⁽⁹⁾ or **develop**⁽¹⁰⁾ new ones. I enjoy the **challenges**⁽¹¹⁾ and the **variety**⁽¹²⁾ of my work.



(1) عالِم

(2) معمل

(3) كيميائي - صيدلي

(4) الكيمياء

(5) يتخرّج

(6) عقد

(7) عملي

(8) يُحَسِّن

(9) منتجات

(10) يُطَوِّر - يكتشف

(11) تَحْدِي

(12) تَنَوُّع

(13) عديد - كثير العدد

(14) موعد نهائي

(15) من الواضح

(16) شهادة جامعية

(17) حل المشكلات

(18) ينقل - يُوَصِّل

Are there any challenges in your job ?

Of course any job has challenges. It can sometimes be difficult when you're working on **several**⁽¹³⁾ products and each one has a **deadline**⁽¹⁴⁾ to meet.

What qualifications do you need to be a successful scientist?

Obviously⁽¹⁵⁾, you need a **degree**⁽¹⁶⁾ in science, but you also have to be good at **problem solving**⁽¹⁷⁾. It's important to be able to **communicate**⁽¹⁸⁾ your ideas to other people too, and that can be difficult sometimes if they're not scientists.

2 Listening Texts

Lesson 2 SB page 44

Narrator : Ahmed**Man** : Did you find out about any **job opportunities**⁽¹⁾ at the job fair⁽²⁾, Ahmed ?**Ahmed** : I had a talk with a man from an **IT**⁽³⁾ company and he said that there were lots of jobs for young people in his **company**⁽⁴⁾. He told me that I needed to have good maths and IT skills but also English. He said that most people in IT used English at work. I asked him if I needed to do a **degree**⁽⁵⁾ in information technology and he said "no".**Narrator** : Sarah**Woman** : Hello Sarah. Was the job fair interesting ?**Sarah** : Yes, I've decided what I want to do as a job now.**Woman** : Oh, what's that ?**Sarah** : I want to be a **flight attendant**⁽⁶⁾ for an **international airline**⁽⁷⁾. I talked to a woman from an airline company and she said that it was a really interesting job. She told me that I had to speak **at least**⁽⁸⁾ two other languages as well as Arabic, so I'm going to start learning French. I asked her how many countries she has visited and she said that **so far**⁽⁹⁾ she'd been to over 40 - imagine that !**Narrator** : Omar**Fatima** : Did you get useful information about work at the fair, Omar ?**Omar** : Yes. I'm not going to go to university, but I'm going to learn a **trade**⁽¹⁰⁾. I spoke to a man who owns a **construction company**⁽¹¹⁾ and I told him that I didn't really like studying and what I wanted to do something **practical**⁽¹²⁾.**Fatima** : Well, you've always been really good at making and fixing things. Mum and Dad agree, too.

(1) فرص عمل

(2) معرض

(3) تكنولوجيا المعلومات

(4) شركة

(5) درجة علمية

(6) مضييفة طيران

(7) خط طيران دولي

(8) على الأقل

(9) حتى الآن

(10) تجارة أو حرفة

(11) شركة بناء وتشبيد

(12) عملي

Omar : I know. That's what I told him. He asked me whether I had had any work **experience**⁽¹³⁾ and I told him that I'd been helping our uncle make furniture for a few years. He said that would be useful and that I should try and get an **apprenticeship**⁽¹⁴⁾ in a local company.

(13) خبرة

(14) تدريب مهني

Lesson 2 SB page 44

Woman : It's a really interesting job.

Ahmed : Do I need to do a degree in Information Technology ?

Man 1 : There are lots of jobs for young people in my company.

Omar : I'm interested in doing a practical job.

Man 2 : Do you have any work experience ?

Lesson 2 WB page 109

Listen to the phone messages and report what the people said

Samir : Hello, this is Samir. The bus has **broken down**⁽¹⁾ so, I'll be late for the meeting.

Hassan : Hello, my name's Hassan. I read the story that is online and I really like it.

Dalia : Hi Nabila, this is Dalia. I'm sorry you're ill and didn't come to school today, but you don't need to worry, there isn't much homework to do.

Mum : Hi Laila, Mum here. I'm working late this evening. There is some fish and rice in the fridge so you can cook it yourself if you're hungry.

Tarek : Ahmed, it's Tarek. Have you seen the news ? **Turn on**⁽²⁾ the TV, because it's **very exciting**⁽³⁾.



(1) يتعطل

(2) يشغل (جهاز)

(3) مثيرة للغاية

3 Video script section

The world of work is **vast**⁽¹⁾. There are **routes**⁽²⁾ into employment for everyone, with options to study at university, through apprenticeships or **progressing**⁽³⁾ through work experience.

(1) واسع

(2) طرق - سبل

(3) تقدّم

Job fairs are often held to give **non-biased information**⁽⁴⁾ about many **industries**⁽⁵⁾. They can tell you about what qualifications, skills and experience you will need, and you can also find out about what you can expect to earn.

Every job has its **challenges**⁽⁶⁾ and **rewards**⁽⁷⁾ which can affect a person's decision about whether to **pursue**⁽⁸⁾ a career. Equally, some **characteristics**⁽⁹⁾ are **essential for**⁽¹⁰⁾ certain jobs. For example, a medical professional must be **compassionate**⁽¹¹⁾, caring and have excellent **communication skills**⁽¹²⁾.

- (4) معلومات غير منحازة
- (5) الصناعات
- (6) تحديات
- (7) مكافآت - تعويضات
- (8) يتعقب
- (9) سمات
- (10) ضروري لـ
- (11) حنون - رحيم
- (12) مهارات التواصل

PART IV LANGUAGE

Reported Speech الكلام الغير مباشر

1 Reported statements : الجمل الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ الكلام المباشر هو كلام منقول عن المتحدث بنفس النص و يوضع بين علامات تنصيص ("....") :

ex. - Omar said, "I don't like fish".

= "I don't like fish", said Omar. (مباشر Direct)

٢ الكلام غير المباشر هو كلام مُبَلَّغ عن المتحدث وتتغير فيه الضمائر والأزمنة و بعض ظروف

الزمان والمكان وتُحذف علامات التنصيص والفاصلة :

ex. - Omar said that he didn't like fish. (غير مباشر Indirect)

٣ يتم تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى الكلام غير المباشر كالتالي :

١ نبدأ بالمتحدث (speaker).

٢ نستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب للجملة الخبرية مثل :

قال شاكيًا - said - reported - answered - replied - complained -
explained - promised - remarkedetc. أبدى ملاحظة

لاحظ ضرورة استخدام المفعول (المُخاطَب) بعد أفعال الإبلاغ التالية :

(مخاطب) + ذَكَرَ reminded - أكد assured - told

٢ نستخدم (that) للربط، و يمكن حذفها.

٤ نحذف علامات التنصيص (".....") كما نحذف الفاصلة السفلى (,)

Mini Test 1

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Sama said
a. I like fish b. , I liked fish c. , "I like fish". d. a & b
- Sama told me
a. I like fish b. I liked fish c. she likes fish d. she liked fish
- I said happy.
a. I was b. that I was c. a & b d. I am
- Omar his friend was ill.
a. said b. told c. asked d. advised
- Omar his friend he was ill.
a. said b. told c. asked d. advised

Tenses :

الأزمنة :

٥ يتحول الزمن إلى الزمن الأبعد في الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر
Present simple - "I play tennis" , he said	Past simple - He said that he played tennis.
Present continuous - "I am watching a film" , she explained.	Past continuous - She explained that she was watching a film.
Past simple - "Nada wrote a letter" , he said.	Past perfect / Past simple - He said that Nada wrote / had written a letter.
Present perfect - "I have seen two lions " , he said to me.	Past perfect - He told me that he had seen two lions.
Past perfect - "I had tidied my room before going out" , he explained.	Past perfect - He explained that he had tidied his room before going out.
Present perfect continuous - "I have been studying for hours" , he said.	Past perfect continuous - He said that he had been studying for hours.

Past continuous - "She was drinking coffee", he said to me.	Past continuous / past perfect continuous - He told me that she was (had been) drinking coffee.
will / can / may - "I will buy a sandwich", he said. - "My mother can make pizza", said Rodayna. - "He may come first", said Nada.	would / could / might - He said that he would buy a sandwich. - Rodayna said that her mother could make pizza. - Nada said that he might come first.
must - She said, "Drivers must follow the traffic lights". (قانون) - "I must phone him tomorrow", she said. (إلتزام في المستقبل) - "We must help mum now", Ali said. (إلتزام في المضارع) - "You must be hungry", I said to her. (استنتاج في المضارع)	must + inf. / would have to + inf. / had to + inf. / must have + p.p. - She said that drivers must follow the traffic lights. - She said that she would have to phone him the day after. - Ali said they had to help mum then. - I told her that she must have been hungry.

٦ لا تتغير الأزمنة في الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة علمية ثابتة :

- ex.** - He said, "Lions eat meat".
 - He said (that) lions eat meat.

ب. إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل :

said a moment ago – said a minute ago – said a short time ago
 – said just now /etc.

- ex.** - Omar said a moment ago, "I'll buy some clothes tomorrow."
 - Omar said a moment ago that he will buy some clothes tomorrow.

ج. إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع :

- ex.** - Amany says, "I don't like fish."
 - Amany says she doesn't like fish.

د. لا تتحول الأزمنة في الحالتين الشرطيتين الثانية و الثالثة :

- ex.** - "If I had enough money, I would buy a newer car", said Leila.
 = Leila said that if she had enough money, she would buy a newer car.

Mini Test 2**• Apply**

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I have a health problem," said Ahmed. Report.
 - a. Ahmed said he has a health problem.
 - b. Ahmed said he had a health problem.
 - c. Ahmed said he had had a health problem.
 - d. b & c
2. "I have had a health problem," said Ahmed. Report.
 - a. Ahmed said he has a problem.
 - b. Ahmed said he had a problem.
 - c. Ahmed said he had had a problem.
 - d. b & c
3. "I had a health problem," said Ahmed. Report.
 - a. Ahmed said he has a health problem.
 - b. Ahmed said he had a health problem.
 - c. Ahmed said he had had a health problem.
 - d. b & c
4. "Every citizen must follow the law." - The president said that every citizen the law.
 - a. must follow
 - b. have to follow
 - c. must have followed
 - d. has followed
5. "I must leave now." - Rodayna said that she leave then.
 - a. must
 - b. had to
 - c. would have to
 - d. have to
6. "I must leave tomorrow." - Rodayna said that she the day after.
 - a. must
 - b. had to
 - c. would have to
 - d. have to
7. "Cairo is the biggest city in Africa," said Mr Ashraf. Mr Ashraf said Cairo the biggest city in Africa.
 - a. is
 - b. was
 - c. a & b
 - d. had been
8. "Water freezes when the temperature is zero or below," said Mr Mamdouh. Mr Mamdouh said water when the temperature is zero or below.
 - a. freezes
 - b. froze
 - c. a & b
 - d. frozen

Time and place adverbs & demonstrative adjectives :

ظروف الزمان والمكان و صفات الإشارة :

٧ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان كما يلي:

(لاحظ أن ظروف الزمان و المكان لا تتغير إلا إذا تغير زمان ومكان تبليغ الكلام)

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
now	then / at that time	tonight	that night
this	that	today	that day
these	those	the day before yesterday	two days before
here	there		
ago	before	the day after tomorrow	in two days' time
last week	the week before the previous week	next week	the week after the following week the next week
yesterday	the day before the previous day	tomorrow	the day after the following day the next day

ex. - He said, "I bought a car yesterday".

= He said (that) he bought / had bought a car the day before.

- "I am travelling to Aswan tomorrow", she said.

= She said she was travelling to Aswan the day after.

- He said, "I am very busy this month".

= He said that he was very busy that month.

Mini Test 3

• Apply

• ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I will come here again tomorrow."

- Mum said she would go again the following day.

a. here b. there c. their d. theirs

2. "I am leaving today." - He said he was leaving

a. today b. this day c. that day d. the day after

3. "We arrived last month." - She said that they had arrived

a. in a month b. the month after
c. the following month d. the month before

Pronouns :

الضمائر :

٨ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطَب كما يلي (فهم معنى الكلام يساعد في تحويل الضمائر) :

I	he / she / you / I	mine	his / hers / yours / mine
we	they / we	ours	theirs / ours
me	him / her / you / me	you (subj)	I / he / she / they / we / you
us	them / us	you (obj)	me / him / her / them / us
my	his / her / your / my	your	my/ his / her / their / our
our	their / our	yours	mine/ his / hers / theirs / ours / yours

ex. - He said, "My mother has called me".

= He said that his mother had called him.

- "I can't lend you my camera", he said to his sister.

= He told his sister that he couldn't lend her his camera.

Mini Test 4

● Apply

❏ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I'll surely help you." - Aya told me she would surely help

a. me b. him c. her d. us

2. "I'll surely help you." - Aya told Ali and me she would surely help

a. me b. him c. her d. us

3. "I'll surely help you." - Aya told mum she would surely help

a. me b. him c. her d. us

4. "I'll surely help you." - Aya told Ali and Omar she would surely help

a. me b. him c. her d. them

ملاحظات هامة علي الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ لا تتحول الأزمنة بعد التعبيرات التالية :

I wish – would rather – would like – it is time / had better

ex. - "I wish I didn't waste my time", said Ahmed.

= Ahmed said (that) he wished he didn't waste his time.

٢ إذا كان المخاطب داخل علامات التنصيص يوضع خارجها بعد فعل القول :

ex. - "I'm hoping to come and see you next week, Menna", Ali said.

= Ali told Menna that he was hoping to go and see her the following week.

٣ في حالة وجود جملتين نستخدم (and that) أو (and added that) :

ex. - He said to me, "I don't understand unit 12. I want you to explain it again."
= He told me that he didn't understand unit 12 and added that he wanted me to explain it again."

٤ لاحظ طريقة تحويل صيغة النصيحة (If I were you, ...) إلى الكلام الغير مباشر:

ex. "If I were you, I'd see a doctor", I said to him = I advised him to see a doctor.

٥ لاحظ تحويل (let's) :

ex. - He said to me, "Let's leave now".

= He suggested leaving then.

= He suggested that we should leave then.

Mini Test 5

● Apply

● ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mum said it was time I to bed.

a. go b. went c. have gone d. had gone

2. "I will call you, mum." - Leen she would call her.

a. said to b. said to mum c. told d. told mum

3. Omar said that he would come to my birthday party he would get me a nice present.

a. that b. and that c. and added that d. b & c

4. "If I were you, I would work hard." - Kareem work hard.

a. said if he were I, he would b. said if he had been me, he would
c. said if he is me, he will d. advised me to

5. "Let's go for a walk." - Amira out.

a. said let's go b. said let us to go
c. suggested to go d. suggested going

2

Reported «Yes / No» Questions : السؤال بـ «هل» في الكلام غير المباشر :

١ يبدأ السؤال بـ (هل) بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الأفعال الناقصة التالية :

Do / Does / Did - Have / Has / Had - Am / Is / Are / Was / Were /
- Can / Could - Will / Would - May / Might - Shall / Should - Must -
Need - Dare

٢ يتم تحويل السؤال بـ (هل) إلى الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

.... + فاعل / مفعول + if / whether + (مخاطب) + asked + المتحدث - Speaker

- Speaker المتحدث + wondered تساءل / inquired استفسر / wanted to know
+ if / whether + فاعل / مفعول

١ نَحْذِفُ علامات التَّنْصِيصِ (".....") وَ نَحْذِفُ علامه الاستفهام وَنَضَعُ نقطه مكانها.

٢ تتحول أفعال الإبلاغ كالتالي :

say to / says to + مخاطب → ask / asks + مخاطب
said to + مخاطب → asked + مخاطب

٣ تتحول الأزمة الى الأبعد مثل الجملة الخيرية.

٤ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان مثل الجملة الخبرية.

ex. - "Will you buy this T-shirt?" Ashraf said.

= Ashraf wondered if I would buy that T-shirt.

- “Is anyone here?” he asked.

= He asked if/whether anyone was there.

- “Have you met my sister?” Nada said to Reem.

= Nada asked Reem if she had met her sister.

- "Can you swim, Tarek?" said Omar.

= Omar asked Tarek if he could swim.

عند وجود (do – does) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي البسيط.

ex. - “Do you get up early, Mariam?” Zamzam said.

= Zamzam asked Mariam if/whether she got up early.

٦ عند وجود (did) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي التام.

ex. - "Did you see the criminal?" the officer said.

= The officer asked if/whether I **had** seen the criminal.

٧ بعد (if / whether) يأتي الفاعل أو المفعول ثم الفعل (أي يتحول السؤال الى جملة خبرية)

ex. - "Can you make pizza?" she asked.

= She asked if / whether I could make pizza.

Notes for Advanced level ملاحظات للفائقين

١ عندما نستخدم (whether) فهي توحى بالتخيير:

ex. - "Do you want to go on foot or by car?" mum asked.

= Mum asked whether I wanted to go on foot or by car.

٢ تُعتبر (whether) أكثر دقة في حالة وجود (if) الشرطية حتى لا تتكرر أداة الشرط :

ex. - “Will you drive to work if you have a car?” Mohammed said to me.

= Mohammed asked me whether I would drive to work if I had a car.

٢ لاحظ أنه يمكن أن نستخدم (whether + to + inf.) بعد (wonder / want to know)
 ex. - "Should I wait for Nada or leave?", Mariam wondered.
 = Mariam wondered whether to wait for Nada or leave.

Mini Test 6

• Apply

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mai if I had some free time.
 a. said b. asked c. wondered d. b & c
- Mai me if I had some free time.
 a. said b. asked c. wondered d. b & c
- "Are you busy now?" - Salma if I am busy now.
 a. asks b. asked c. says d. said
- "Are you busy now?" - Salma if I was busy then.
 a. asks b. asked c. says d. said
- "Will you help me?" - She wondered I would help her.
 a. whether b. if c. a & b d. that
- "Do you go out very often?" - Amir wanted to know if out very often.
 a. did I go b. I go c. I went d. went I
- She asked me I would go out or stay at home.
 a. whether b. if c. that d. a & b

3 Reported Wh-Questions : الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر :

١ في الكلام المباشر، يبدأ السؤال بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية يليه الفعل المساعد :
 what – when – where – why – who – whose – which – how ...

ex. - "Why has she arrived home late ?" asked Ali.
 = Ali asked, "Why has she arrived home late ?"

٢ تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام في الكلام غير المباشر من :

نص الكلام غير المباشر	+	أداة استفهام	+	فعل إبلاغ	+	مُبَلِّغ
she had arrived home late.		why		asked		Ali

٣ تستخدم أفعال الإبلاغ بنفس الطريقة التي تم شرحها في (Yes / No questions) :

ex. - Sama asked Abdo when he had got up.
 - Sama wondered / wanted to know when Abdo had got up.

٤ يستخدم الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (أداة الاستفهام) في الكلام غير المباشر :

ex. - I wondered where she had gone. (Not : where had she)

٥ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطب مثل الجملة الخبرية :

- ex. - Omar asked, "When will you explain the lesson for me, mum ?" (مباشر)
- Omar asked mum when she would explain the lesson for him. (غير مباشر)

٦ تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية :

- ex. - "Where are you now, Aya ?", asked Ziad. (مباشر)
- Ziad asked Aya where she was then. (غير مباشر)

٧ تتحول الأزمنة مثل الجملة الخبرية :

- ex. - "When are you leaving, Salma ?", asks father. (مباشر)
- Father asked Salma when she was leaving. (غير مباشر)

٨ لا تُستخدم (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني) :

- ex. - "How do you go to school ?" asked Amir. (مباشر)
- Amir asked me how I went to school. (غير مباشر)

٩ لا تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي التام :

- ex. - "Why didn't you go to school, Tarik ?" I asked. (مباشر)
- I asked Tarik why he hadn't gone to school. (غير مباشر)

١٠ يمكن استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالجملة الخبرية قبل أداة الاستفهام عند الرد على سؤال وليس في الكلام غير المباشر - لاحظ الفرق :

- ex. - I told Ayman why the meeting was cancelled. (أخبرت أيمن عن سبب إلغاء الاجتماع)
- I asked Ayman why the meeting was cancelled. (سألت أيمن عن سبب إلغاء الاجتماع)

Mini Test 7

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I asked he had visited there at the weekend.
a. if b. whether c. what d. where
2. I asked he had gone at the weekend.
a. that b. who c. what d. where
3. Rokaya why I was late.
a. asked b. wanted to know c. said d. a & b
4. Rokaya me why I was late.
a. asked b. wanted to know c. said d. a & b
5. She wants to know what doing.
a. was b. I was c. was I d. b & c

6. "Why do you shout at me?" - Sama wondered why I shouted at
 a. she b. her c. hers d. herself
7. She asked where I the day before.
 a. had gone b. have gone c. am going d. would go
8. She asks where I tomorrow.
 a. had gone b. have gone c. am going d. was going

General Exercise On Language

• Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. He he wouldn't be able to sleep until he had finished the homework. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. said b. asked c. told d. say
2. Amira her sister that she was going to the library to study. (منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. told b. said c. asked d. ordered
3. I the shop assistant if the shirt was cheaper, I would take it immediately. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
 a. asked b. told c. advised d. said
4. I didn't know the shop was shut or not. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. that b. why c. whether d. unless
5. Yara asked the tourist he came from. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. when b. that c. where d. if
6. Hazem asked he could leave the lesson early. (منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. that b. whether c. weather d. to
7. The manager asked the secretary the letter the previous week. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
 a. did you send b. have you sent c. if she had sent d. if she has sent
8. Emad told me that he had bought his car three years (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. then b. ago c. after d. before
9. Karima told me that she Arabic then. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. studied b. is studying c. was studying d. had studied
10. Essam asked me if to the club the day before. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. had I gone b. I had gone c. did I go d. I will go
11. I asked him what reading. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. was he b. is he c. he is d. he was

12. Sama said that she her aunt the following day. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
 a. will visit b. would visit c. visited d. visits
13. I Sama what she was doing.
 a. wondered b. asked c. said to d. inquired
14. I didn't ask her she would come shopping with us. I forgot doing so.
 a. weather b. that c. what d. if
15. I'd like to know he lives.
 a. what b. about c. where d. when
16. "We want you to help us, please"
 - Mustafa said that they wanted to help them.
 a. we b. they c. us d. our
17. Rodayna told Ahmed that new dress was expensive.
 a. her b. his c. hers d. mine
18. She explained that she couldn't come because her father was ill
 a. by then b. this day c. today d. that day
19. My wife replied that she was preparing lunch
 a. at this moment b. then c. now d. by then
20. Ahmed said he would travel abroad the month
 a. previous b. following c. after d. before
21. Ayman told his wife that he had visited Aswan
 a. yesterday b. the next day c. the day before d. then
22. Omar said that his favourite drink orange juice.
 a. was b. was being c. has been d. will be
23. Walid said he me late the night after.
 a. phoned b. had phoned c. would phone d. will phone
24. My mother said that she the medicine twice a day.
 a. will take b. has taken c. takes d. took
25. Mr Mohammed told me that he to London the day after.
 a. had travelled b. travelled c. was travelling d. will travel
26. She said that she go to the club that Friday.
 a. couldn't b. doesn't c. won't d. can't

2 Special cases

27. Amr if he had had more-free time, he would have joined a club.
 a. asked b. wondered c. said d. advised

(سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

28. The teacher said that it was time we our lessons successfully. (٢٠٢٣ جرجا)
a. had finished b. was finished c. finish d. finished
29. "It true that I work too hard," she said. (٢٠٢٣ اسوان)
a. to be b. was c. is d. has
30. The teacher suggested that the exercise again. (٢٠٢٣ المرح)
a. we do b. we are doing c. doing d. did we
31. Samy has just said that he his job. (٢٠٢٣ شبراخيت)
a. will leave b. leave c. would leave d. was leaving
32. Seham said that Cairo the capital of Egypt. (٢٠٢٣ اسمنود)
a. has been b. had been c. is d. was being
33. Can you tell me where ? (٢٠٢٣ بورسعيد)
a. is the hospital b. the hospital is
c. has the hospital d. was the hospital
34. She said, "I anyone until I have finished". (٢٠٢٣ اوسيم)
a. didn't see b. won't see c. wouldn't see d. hadn't seen
35. Rodayna Aya was busy making some cakes.
a. said b. asks c. said to d. told
36. My sister that I had broken her tablet.
a. asked b. suggested c. complained d. told
37. She said wanted me to lend her my camera.
a. she b. I c. we d. that
38. "The black car is mine". - He said the black car was
a. his b. him c. mine d. my
39. My friend wonders whether I am travelling
a. the day after b. tomorrow c. then d. ago
40. Amir says he working for a computer repair company at present.
a. had been b. is c. was d. has been
41. He said just now that he a new car next year.
a. had bought b. bought c. is buying d. would buy
42. She says she for a mechanic as her car has broken down.
a. looked b. had looked c. has to look d. had to look
43. "I invite you to my birthday". He tells me he me to his birthday.
a. was inviting b. would invite c. had invited d. invites
44. Our teacher said that the earth around the sun.
a. had gone b. will go c. go d. goes
45. My mother wants to know where at the moment.
a. I am b. I was c. am I d. was I

46. The boys said they a holiday the week after.
 a. were having b. have had c. had d. have
47. "You must study hard this year". - Mum told me that I study hard that year.
 a. must b. would have to c. must have d. have to

3 Check your understanding

48. "It is time you went to bed.", said mum. How do you report this sentence?
 a. Mum said that it was time I went to bed.
 b. Mum said that it was time I had gone to bed.
 c. Mum says that it was time I went to bed.
 d. Mum said that it was time I go to bed.
49. "You'd better depend on yourself." My father said that on myself.
 a. I would better depend b. I had better depended
 c. I had had better depend d. I'd better depend
50. "Can you help me, please ?" Sohaila
 a. said that I could help her. b. asked if could I help her.
 c. asked me to help her. d. asked if I could help her please.
51. "Let's go for a walk." Hana for a walk.
 a. said let's go b. suggested going
 c. said let them go d. wanted me to let them go
52. "If I were you, I'd see another doctor." Omar
 a. said if he were me, he'd seen another doctor.
 b. said if I were you, I would see a doctor.
 c. ordered me to see another doctor.
 d. advised me to see another doctor.
53. "Can I leave now or wait for Ali ?" Abdu for Ali.
 a. asked if he could leave then or waited
 b. wondered whether to leave then or wait
 c. wondered whether to leave now or waited
 d. asked to leave then or waiting
54. "Do you like fish, Sama?" I fish.
 a. asked Sama whether she liked b. asked Sama whether did she like
 c. asked Sama whether to like d. wondered whether did Sama liked



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

attention (n)	اهتمام - انتباه	hard-working(adj)	جاد في العمل
caring(adj)	مُهِتَم - مُرَاعِي	honest(adj)	صَادِق - أَمِين
communicator(n)	لَبِق - مُفَوِّه	loyal(adj)	مُخْلِص
compassion(n)	رَأْفَة - رَحْمَة	punctual(adj)	مُنْضَبِط - مُلْتَزِم
compassionate(adj)	رَحِيم	reliable(adj)	مَوْثُوق بِهِ - يُعْتَمَد عَلَيْهِ
confident(adj)	وَاتِق - مُتَمَكِّن	team player(n)	شَخْصٌ يَجِيدُ الْعَمَلَ الْجَمَاعِي
flexible(adj)	مَرِن		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

adapt(ed) to (phr. v)	يَتَكَيَّفُ مَعَ	office worker(n)	مُوظَّفٌ إِدَارِي
aged(adj)	بَالِغٌ مِنَ الْعُمَرِ	opportunity(n)	فُرْصَة
availability(n)	جَاهِزِيَّة - إِتَاحَة	patient(adj - n)	ضَبُور - مَرِيض
certificate(n)	شَهَادَة	pay (n - v)	الرَّائِب - يَدْفَعُ مَالًا
community(n)	الْمَجْتَمَع	personal	نَبْذَة شَخْصِيَّة
cuisine(n)	أَسْلُوبُ الطَّهْيِ	statement(n)	
CV = Curriculum Vitae(n)	السِّيَرَة الذَّاتِيَّة	plumber(n)	سَبَّاك
experience(n)	الْخِبْرَة - تَجْرِبَة حَيَاتِيَّة	Post Graduates(n)	الدِّرَاسَاتُ الْعَلِيَا
fair(n)	مُنْتَدِي - سَوْق - مَفْرُض	professional (n - adj)	مُحْتَرِف
fancy(ied) (v)	يَتَخَيَّلُ	require(d) (v)	يَتَطَلَّب - يَسْتَلْزِم
fire engines(n)	سِيَارَاتُ الْإِطْفَاءِ	shop assistant(n)	بَائِع / بَائِعَة
global warming(n)	الِاحْتِبَاسُ الْحَرَارِي	siren(n)	بُوق - صَافِرَة إِذَاذَار
immediate(adj)	فَوْرِي	situation(n)	مَوْقِف
interests(n)	اهْتِمَامَات	support(ed) (n - v)	دَعْم - يَدْعِمُ
legal(adj)	قَانُونِي / شَرْعِي	teammates(n)	زَمَلَاءُ الْفَرِيقِ
necessary(adj)	ضَرُورِي	variety(n)	تَنْوُّع
		vet = veterinarian(n)	طَبِيبٌ بَيْطَرِي

3 التعريفات Definitions

Memorise	Understand
attention(n) اهتمام - انتباه	the act of listening to, looking at or thinking about something/somebody carefully
caring(adj) مُهْتَم - مُرَاعِي	describes someone who offers help and support
communicator(n) ليق - مُفَوِّه	someone who can explain their ideas
confident(adj) واثق - مُتَمَكِّن	describes someone who thinks that they can do things well
flexible(adj) مَرِن	describes someone who can change their behaviour in different situations
hard-working(adj) جاد في العمل	working with a lot of effort
honest(adj) صادق - أمين	always telling the truth
loyal(adj) مُخْلِص	describes someone who supports their friends even when it's difficult
punctual(adj) مُنْضِب - مُلْتَزِم	arriving, happening, or being done at exactly the time that was arranged
reliable(adj) موثوق به - يُعْتَمَد عَلَيْهِ	always doing what they say they will do
team player(n) شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي - شخص مُتَعَاوِن	a person who works well with others

Exercise On Vocabulary

● Understand

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- To work in customer service, you need to be a good (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. communicator b. translator c. professor d. chemist
- A person who supports their friends even when it's difficult is
a. loyal b. confident c. flexible d. honest
- These shoes are comfortable because their leather is (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
a. visible b. terrible c. flexible d. eatable (منوف ٢٠٢٣)

4. She is a student. (التيين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. work hard b. hard work c. hard-working d. works hard
5. Everyone in the company trusts him because he is (مغافة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. frightening b. punctuation c. punctual d. frightened
6. We like this website as we get information from it. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. reliable b. unreliable c. miserable d. terrible
7. It is not to tell your friends' secrets to others.
 a. successful b. honest c. terrible d. aged
8. When your teacher talks, you must pay
 a. reward b. industry c. construction d. attention
9. He is not worried. He looks
 a. caring b. flexible c. confident d. annoyed
10. Mr Nasser is really a/an teacher. He makes sure all his students understand.
 a. stressed b. rewarding c. caring d. individual
11. To help a group do better, every member must be a/an
 a. individual b. frustrated c. team player d. immediate
12. The manager was and agreed to change the date of the meeting.
 a. stressful b. qualified c. rewarding d. flexible
13. Women naturally have more for children.
 a. community b. compassion c. degree d. experience

2 Important Vocabulary

14. It's important for us to be able to to different situations. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
 a. adopt b. adapt c. adept d. odd
15. All celebrities suffer to keep their lives unpopular. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. public b. personal c. personnel d. nearby
16. I called a to fix the kitchen tap.
 a. scientist b. plumber c. baker d. farmer
17. In a CV, an applicant has to write a personal
 a. statement b. graduate c. product d. ward
18. I'm going to apply for graduate studies next month.
 a. mast b. most c. past d. post
19. When drivers hear the of an ambulance, they must make way for it.
 a. siren b. statement c. community d. cuisine
20. The time of the journey depends on the of train tickets.
 a. opportunity b. availability c. qualification d. apprenticeship

21. It is not to drive on the left.
 a. successful b. honest c. legal d. aged
22. Try to be a good member of your
 a. siren b. statement c. community d. cuisine
23. I got my preparatory school last year.
 a. certificate b. deadline c. graduate d. teammate
24. He found a good to work as a cashier in a supermarket.
 a. opportunity b. availability c. qualification d. apprenticeship
25. I have a little son five.
 a. successful b. honest c. legal d. aged

3 Definitions

26. The man who is able to talk about his ideas and emotions in a way that others understand is called
 (جربا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. communicator b. honest c. confident d. flexible
27. people can change their minds to suit new circumstances.
 (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Flexible b. Feasible c. Readable d. Stressful
28. means arriving, happening, or being done at exactly the time that was arranged.
 a. Punctual b. Reliable c. Successful d. Rewarding
29. A/An is a person who works well with others in a group.
 a. causality b. communicator
 c. team player d. attention
30. means always doing what they say they will do.
 a. Punctual b. Reliable c. Successful d. Rewarding
31. To be means always telling the truth.
 a. flexible b. hard-working c. honest d. loyal
32. describes someone who offers help and support.
 a. Caring b. Tiring c. Particular d. Incredible
33. The adjective describes someone who thinks that they can do things well.
 a. interested b. confident c. local d. suitable
34. is the act of listening to, looking at or thinking about something/somebody carefully.
 a. Causality b. Communicator
 c. Team player d. Attention

PART II

VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

do	things well يقوم بالأشياء جيداً	have	variety متنوع
earn/make	much money يجني مالاً كثيراً	offer	help and support يُقدم المساعدة والدعم
get	work experience يكتسب خبرة عملية	take	a course يأخذ دورة تدريبية
give/pay	attention يلتبه	tell	the truth يقول الصدق

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
caring مُهْتَم - مُرَاعِي	concerned, attentive, loving, considerate, affectionate
confident واثق - مُتَمَكِّن	self-assured, sure
essential ضروري - هام	necessary, important
flexible مُرن	adaptable, adjustable
hard-working جاد في العمل	industrious, enthusiastic
honest أمين - مخلص	sincere, loyal
reliable موثوق به - يُعْتَمَد عليه	dependable, trustworthy, trustful

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
caring مُهْتَم - مُرَاعِي	uncaring, cruel غير مُكْتَرث - قاسي
essential ضروري - هام	unnecessary, unimportant, trivial غير ضروري - غير هام
flexible مُرن	inflexible - rigid غير مُرن
hard-working جاد في العمل	lazy كسول
honest صادق - أمين	dishonest, insincere غير أمين / كاذب
loyal مُخلص	disloyal, treacherous خائن
punctual مُنْضَبِط - مُلتَزِم	late, tardy مُتَأَخِّر
reliable يُعْتَمَد عليه	unreliable, untrustworthy لا يُعْتَمَد عليه

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a natural thing to do من الطبيعي القيام بهذا الشيء	plenty of الكثير من
attention to details الاهتمام بالتفاصيل	Post Graduate Certificate شهادة الدراسات العليا

Bachelor Degree in Science	sitting at a desk	الجلوس علي مكتب
شهادة البكالوريوس في العلوم	skills required	المهارات المطلوبة
dream job	suitable for	مناسب لـ
وظيفة الأحلام	want a job helping people	يريد عملاً يساعد الناس
Egyptian cuisine	with their sirens sounding	وهي تطلق صافراتها التحذيرية
المطبخ المصري	work experience	خبرة عملية
أنشطة وقت الفراغ	years of study	سنوات الدراسة
free-time activities		
interested in		
مهتم بـ		
on a training course		
ضمن مقرر تدريبي		
personal qualities		
بسمات شخصية		

5 فعل + حرف جر Verb + Preposition

adapt to+ n/ (inf.+ing)	يتكيف مع	work in	يعمل في
find out about	يكتشف / يعرف عن	work on	يعمل على (تحسين/تطوير)
help ... with	يساعد ... في	work with	يعمل في / علي
work as	يعمل كـ		

6 لاحظ الفرق Clear the confusion

punctual - puncture

- **punctual (adj)** مُنضبط - مُلتزم
- Being punctual makes him successful in his job.
- **puncture (n)** ثقب
- The tyre الإطار is flat فارغ because there's a puncture in it.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• **MRQ :** Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "Someone who always does what they say they will do is reliable."
The word "reliable" can be replaced by
(قليوب ٢٠٢٣)
a. trustworthy b. dishonest c. dependable
d. communicator e. loyal
2. This is a/an plan. There is always a possibility to change it according to the situation.
(العجمي ٢٠٢٣)
a. flexible b. inflexible c. adaptable
d. fixed e. unchangeable
3. The synonyms of the word "honest" are
(شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٣)
a. sincere b. loyal c. cruel
d. savage e. traitor

4. This shop a variety of smartphones.
a. tells b. does c. has
d. goes e. sells
5. It is not a crime trying to much money through hard work.
a. give b. meet c. tell
d. earn e. make
6. "He is punctual. He is always on time." The word 'punctual' cannot be replaced by
a. late b. tardy c. in time
d. early e. on time
7. "He is a caring friend." The adjective 'caring' here means
a. cruel b. inconsiderate c. concerned
d. unconcerned e. loving

• ★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was necessary for Aya to study her lessons. The synonym of the word "necessary" is
(الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
a. allowed b. inessential c. essential d. banned
2. Fresh fruits are good your health.
(بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
a. at b. for c. about d. to
3. You are supposed to be the truth, not lies.
a. doing b. meeting c. telling d. earning
4. You all should attention to what he says.
a. give b. meet c. tell d. earn
5. He has a language course.
a. taken b. met c. earned d. a & b
6. He has much experience over the years.
a. met b. got c. offered d. done
7. "She is a parent." Complete with the antonym of 'cruel'.
a. confident b. loving c. lazy d. strict
8. "You can depend on her." This means she is not
a. dependable b. trustworthy c. unreliable d. reliable
9. Taking a rest after hard work is a natural thing
a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing
10. The ambulances were rushing through the street with their sirens
a. sound b. sounds c. sounded d. sounding
11. Now, scientists are working a better medicine for this disease.
a. for b. with c. on d. inside

Reading Texts

Lesson 4 SB page 47

My Dream Job

Name : Mohammed

Age : 23

Dream job : Firefighter⁽¹⁾

Skills : You should be:

- a team-player⁽²⁾
- reliable⁽³⁾
- a good communicator
- flexible⁽⁴⁾

Workplace : Central⁽⁵⁾ Cairo

I always wanted to be a firefighter. When I was a little boy, I played with toy **fire engines**⁽⁶⁾ and sometimes watched the fire engines driving down the streets with their **sirens**⁽⁷⁾ **sounding**⁽⁸⁾. I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was **outside**⁽⁹⁾, exciting and had a lot of variety.

Firefighting⁽¹⁰⁾ can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your **teammates**⁽¹¹⁾ and also be happy to **adapt to**⁽¹²⁾ different **situations**⁽¹³⁾ when **necessary**⁽¹⁴⁾.

Do you **fancy**⁽¹⁵⁾ a career as a firefighter? If you want an exciting job helping the **community**⁽¹⁶⁾, come and visit me on **Stand**⁽¹⁷⁾ 21 at the **Jobs Fair**⁽¹⁸⁾.

Date: 23 May

Time: 9.00 – 14.00

If you're not **interested**⁽¹⁹⁾ in firefighting, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along – you never know what **career**⁽²⁰⁾ is out there for you!

(1) رجل إطفاء

(2) شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي

(3) يُعتمد عليه

(4) مرن

(5) وسط - مركزي

(6) سيارات الإطفاء

(7) بوق - صافرة إنذار

(8) يُضرب صوتاً

(9) بالخارج

(10) إطفاء الحرائق

(11) زملاء الفريق

(12) يتكيف مع

(13) مواقف

(14) ضروري

(15) يتخيل

(16) المجتمع

(17) كشك / منْصَة

(18) مَعرَض

(19) مُهتَم

(20) مهنة

(CV)⁽¹⁾

Name: Nabila El-Soory

Age: 24

Address: Central Cairo, Egypt

Dream job: Teacher

Qualifications:

- **Post Graduate⁽²⁾ Certificate⁽³⁾** in
Education: Bradly College, Oxford, England
- Bachelors Degree in English: Cairo University, Cairo, Egypt

I am :

- punctual
- reliable
- a good communicator
- caring

Experience:

I've always wanted a job helping people. I watched many lessons on my training course, and I taught English to young people **aged⁽⁴⁾ 7-16** years old in the **UK⁽⁵⁾**.

Personal statement⁽⁶⁾ :

I am punctual and reliable. I can communicate well with young people, and I believe that I am a patient and caring professional.

Interests : Reading, **theatre⁽⁷⁾**, and Egyptian **cuisine⁽⁸⁾**

Availability⁽⁹⁾ : Immediate⁽¹⁰⁾



- (1) السيرة الذاتية
- (2) الدراسات العليا
- (3) شهادة
- (4) بالغ من العمر
- (5) المملكة المتحدة
- (6) نبذة شخصية
- (7) المسرح
- (8) أسلوب الطهي
- (9) تواجد - إتاحة
- (10) فوري

PART IV LANGUAGE

1

Compound adjectives with numbers : استخدام الأرقام في الصفات المركبة :

١ تُستخدم الأرقام في صفة مُركبة من ثلاث كلمات بينهم (-) كالتالي:

صفة + اسم مفرر + رقم
↓ ↓ ↓

ex. - Ahmed is a twelve - year - old child.

٢ تُستخدم الأرقام في صفة مُركبة من كلمتين بينهم (-) كالتالي:

اسم مفرر + رقم
↓ ↓

ex. - We went on a three - day holiday.

٣ يمكن ان يكون الاسم في الصفة المركبة جمع ينتهي بـ (s'):

اسم جمع + رقم →

ex. - My office is two hours' drive from here.

٤ في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (s') في حالة المفرد و (s') في حالة الجمع:

ex. - I'll call you in an hour's time.

- In two years' time, I will have finished this course.

2 but - however - although - despite :

١ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها جملة وتأتي في الوسط فقط:

١ جملة + مع ذلك however - لكن but

ex. - We had got up early, but / however we missed the bus.

٢ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها جملة وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

٢ جملة + برغم أن though - برغم أن Although

ex. - Although we had got up early, we missed the bus.

- We missed the bus although we had got up early.

٣ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها اسم / (inf. + ing) وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

٣ Despite / In spite of + برغم أن (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - Despite getting up early, we missed the bus.

- We missed the bus despite getting up early.

3 not only ... but also : ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضاً :

١ تأتي not only قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد الفعل المساعد في الجملة الأولى.

....(as well)(also) فعل مساعد / ناقص + الفاعل + but .., فعل + not only + فاعل -

ex. - We were not only playing chess, but we were also drinking coffee.

٢ عند استخدام (Not only) في بداية الجملة يستخدم فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل:

Not Only + فاعل + فعل , but also

ex. - Not only were we playing chess, but we were also drinking coffee.

٣ إذا ربطت (Not only...but also ...) فاعلين مختلفين فان الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني:

ex. - Not only Tom but also his brothers are doctors.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He was punished coming early.
 a. although b. but c. despite d. however
 (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
2. We will go to play tennis the cold weather.
 a. if b. although c. but d. in spite of
 (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
3. She has daughter.
 a. five years b. five-year-old
 c. a five-years-old d. a five-year-old
 (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
4. the long hours and hard work, the job is very rewarding.
 a. Despite b. However c. In spite d. Although
 (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)
5. the high waves, I completed the swimming race.
 a. Although b. Despite c. But d. And
 (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
6. He says he likes sports., he only watches them on TV.
 a. Despite b. Although c. As d. However
7. my help, he fell into debt.
 a. However b. Although c. Despite d. As
8. I like reading novels, I don't have time.
 a. but b. if c. because d. although
9. She speaks English French.
 a. as b. as well c. well d. and
10. This gentleman wants to make reservation at the hotel.
 a. three nights b. three-nights c. a three-night d. a three-nights
11. She walked home by herself she knew it was dangerous.
 a. because b. because of c. although d. despite
12. his cleverness, he was unable to answer the question.
 a. In spite of b. Although c. Even though d. However
13. We decided to go out for a meal it was raining.
 a. however b. even though c. despite d. in spite of
14. Not only my brothers but also my sister going to Alexandria.
 a. are b. is c. were d. have been
15. He came late he got in.
 a. although b. but c. despite d. whatever
16. Hossam enjoyed the party, he had to leave early.
 a. because b. owing to c. however d. so that

١ كلمة (**attendant**) تُستخدم بمعنى (خادم - مُرافق - مضيف) وهي تشير إلى شخص يقوم بمساعدة أو خدمة الحاضرين في مكان ما :

ex. - She works as a flight attendant.

- They had an attendant for their old mother for six hours a day.

٢ كلمة (**communicator**) تعني (شخص لبق أو مُتكلّم) وهي تشير إلى شخص يستطيع التعبير عن أفكاره ومشاعره بشكل جذاب :

ex. - A teacher must be a good communicator.

٣ المقصود بـ (**team player**) شخص مُتعاون يتمتع بروح الجماعة :

ex. - This company is successful because it has a staff of team players.

٤ أحد استخدامات كلمة (**even**) هو التعبير عن الاندهاش من شيء ما لأنه مُفاجئ أو غير مألوف أو غير متوقع :

ex. - We don't even know why she is crying.

- We all missed the bus even Nasser who is never late.

- It's not an easy job, it might even take a month to finish it.

٥ لاحظ أن (**adapt to**) بمعنى (يتكيف مع) يأتي بعدها اسم (**noun**) أو (**inf. + ing**) :

ex. - She adapted to working in a foreign country.

- I hope you will adapt to life in Japan.

٦ هناك بعض الظروف التي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغيير معنى الجملة بالكامل، و غالبا تستخدم في بداية الجملة مثل :

من strangely - من الواضح obviously - لحسن الحظ fortunately / luckily
..... من المُدهش surprisingly - من المثير للاهتمام interestingly - الغريب

ex. - Obviously, she accepted the offer.

Exercise On Language Hints

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I am in a bad need of a/an to look after my grandfather who can't walk.

a. attendance b. attendant c. communicator d. team player

2. The new team members have adapted with the older ones.

a. working b. do work c. work d. to working

3. Let Ayman speak for us. He is a good
 a. attendance b. attendant c. communicator d. punctuality
4. She works hard., she was fired.
 a. Strangely b. Strange c. Lucky d. Luckily

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (سوالج ۲۰۲۳)

Some people think that shop assistants just help people to choose what to buy, but the job can be more interesting than that.

Adam Osman works for a fashion store and he loves his job. His job includes advising customers and taking payments, as well as **creating displays**. Adam says that a good shop assistant enjoys communicating with people.

You spend all day talking to people, so you need to be confident, friendly and able to make people feel comfortable. You also have to be honest. Nobody wants to hear that they look terrible in a piece of clothing, but they like it when you can suggest something else which looks better on them. A benefit of this job is being able to buy some items in your shop for less money.

If you are thinking of a career working in shops, there are usually management training programmes and other extra courses available for staff, such as language skills if you work in a tourist area.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- According to the text, shop assistants
 a. have a simple job b. are interesting people
 c. help people make choices d. earn little money
- Shop assistants should be
 a. shy b. truthful c. dishonest d. talkative
- What is a benefit of working as a shop assistant?
 a. You can study to become a manager.
 b. You can have a lot of free clothes.
 c. You can work alone.
 d. You can buy some low-priced items.
- Customers are people who go
 a. shopping b. swimming c. fishing d. running

5. The underlined phrase "creating displays" means
- performing plays in the theatre
 - presenting programme on TV
 - arranging goods in the shop window
 - behaving well with customers
6. Which word of the following doesn't mean "a shop assistant"?
- salesman
 - servant
 - seller
 - shopkeeper
7. Adam Osman works at a
- clothes shop
 - clinic
 - factory
 - fire bridge

2 Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

* Ideas for writing a job description

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 What is this job? | ما هذه الوظيفة؟ |
| 2 What do you do? | ما الذي تقوم به في هذه الوظيفة؟ |
| 3 Where do you work? | أين تعمل؟ |
| 4 How many hours do you work a week? | كم عدد الساعات التي تعملها كل أسبوع؟ |
| 5 What is special about this job? | ماذا يميز هذه الوظيفة؟ |
| 6 How much holiday do you have? | كم مدة الإجازة؟ |
| 7 What do you like about the job? | ما الذي يعجبك في هذه الوظيفة؟ |

3 Translation الترجمة

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. It is believed that unemployment is the main cause of serious problems among the youth; it results in addiction and committing crimes. (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

- يُعتقد أن الأمية تؤدي إلى مشاكل خطيرة بين الشباب، حيث تؤدي إلى الانحراف وارتكاب الجرائم.
- يُعتقد أن الأمية تؤدي إلى مشاكل خطيرة بين الشباب، فهي تدفعهم إلى الانحراف وارتكاب الجرائم.
- من المُعتقد أن البطالة هي السبب الرئيسي لمشاكل الشباب، حيث تؤدي إلى الإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم.
- من المُعتقد أن البطالة هي السبب الرئيسي لمشكلات خطيرة بين الشباب، حيث تؤدي إلى الإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم.

2. Concentration and hard work are the most important factors for success, without them, it would be impossible to achieve goals. (بيلا ٢٠٢٣)

- التركيز والعمل الجاد أهم مصانع النجاح، وبدونهما سيكون من المُحال تحقيق الأهداف.
- يُعد التركيز والعمل الجاد أهم عوامل النجاح، وبدونهما سيكون من المستحيل تحقيق الأهداف.
- يُعد التركيز والعمل الصعب أهم أرقام النجاح، وبدونهما سيكون ممكناً تحقيق الأهداف.
- يُعد التركيز والعمل الجاد أهم عمال النجاح، وبدونهما سيكون من المستحيل تحقيق الأهداف.

● 2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. نعيش الآن في مجتمع يعمل فيه الرجل والمرأة جنباً إلى جنب في كل المجالات كما أنهما يتساويان في الحقوق والواجبات تجاه الأسرة والمجتمع.
(السنة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. We now live in a society where men and women work side by side. They are equal in their rights and duties towards the family and society.
- b. We now live in a society where men and women work side by side in all fields. They are also equal in their rights and duties towards the family and society.
- c. We now live in a society where men and women work side by side. They are not equal in their rights and duties towards the family and society.
- d. We now live in a society where men and women work side by side. They are equal in their rights and tasks towards the family and society.

٢. يسافر الناس إلى الخارج لأسباب كثيرة منها العمل أو الدراسة، كما أن ذلك وسيلة لتوسيع آفاقنا ويساعدنا على فهم الثقافات الأخرى.
(شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. People travel abroad for many results, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other cultures.
- b. People travel aboard for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other heritages.
- c. People travel abroad for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other cultures.
- d. People travel abroad for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us misunderstand other cultures.

apply

- **apply (v)** يتقدم بطلب (التحاق / انضمام)
- He wants to apply for another job.
- **apply for** يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشيء الذي نتقدم للحصول عليه)
- I applied for the membership of the club.
- **apply to** يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشخص أو الجهة الذي نتقدم إليه)
- I'll apply to the manager soon.
- **apply in writing** يتقدم كتابة لطلب وظيفة
- You can send your CV online. You don't have to apply in writing.
- **apply (to) (v)** يطبق على - ينسري على
- The offer applies to all customers.
- **applied (adj)** تطبيقي - عملي
- We study applied maths at school.
- **applicable to (adj)** ساري على - ينطبق على
- The discount is only applicable to children's clothes.
- **applicant (n)** مُتقدم بطلب (لوظيفة / جامعة / نادي ...)
- There are more than fifty applicants for the job.
- **application (n)** طلب انضمام
- The manager has examined all the applications.
- **application (n)** تطبيق
- Mobile applications are free on this website.

apprenticeship

- **apprentice (n)** مُتدرب - شخص تحت التمرين
- My brother is an apprentice surgeon.
- **apprentice (d) (to) (v)** يتدرب عملياً (تحت إشراف ...)
- The mechanic asked one of the apprentices to bring him some tools.
- **apprentice (d) (to) (v)** يتدرب عملياً (تحت إشراف ...)
- My cousin wants to apprentice to an electrician to learn from him.
- **apprenticeship (n)** التدريب المهني
- After a two-year apprenticeship, I was good enough to have my own garage.

industry

الصناعة

• industry (n)

- Thousands of people work in the car industry.

• industry (n)

نشاط اقتصادي - صناعة (بمعنى مجال)

- The tourist industry is very important for Egypt.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- manufacturing industry مجال التصنيع
- service industry المجال الخدمي
- heavy industry الصناعات الثقيلة
- film industry صناعة السينما

• industrial (adj)

صناعي (خاص بالصناعة)

- There is much pollution in industrial areas.

• industrious (adj)

جاد في العمل - مثابر

- He is an industrious person that you can depend on.

qualify

• qualify (ied) (v)

يحصل علي مؤهل - يتأهل

- I qualified as a teacher in 1998.

لاحظ أن:

• qualify as

يتأهل كـ (يأتي بعدها الوظيفة)

- He qualified as a teacher two years ago.

• qualify in

يحصل على مؤهل في (تخصص معين)

- He qualified in biology last year.

• be qualified to + inf.

يكون مؤهل لكي

- She is qualified to teach science.

• qualify (v)

يؤهل - يجعل ... مؤهل

- This course qualifies you to work as a lawyer.

• qualify (v)

يتأهل لدور أعلي في المسابقات

- Liverpool qualified for the semi-final.

• qualified (adj) غير مؤهل ≠ unqualified (adj) لديه مؤهلات - متأهل

- Employers prefer qualified applicants to unqualified ones.

• qualification (v)

مؤهل - تأهل

- He has the right qualifications for the job.
- People celebrated the qualification of the national team for the World Cup.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- have qualifications لديه المؤهلات
- lack qualifications تلقصه المؤهلات

reliable

• rely (ied) on / upon (v)

- Babies rely on their mothers.

يعتمد على

• reliable (adj)

- You can depend on Omar. He is a reliable man.

يُعتَمَد عليه / أهل للثقة

• reliability (n)

- Scientific information is of high reliability.

الدقة

• reliance (n)

- His reliance on his parents makes him lazy.

الاعتماد / الاتكال

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The Great Pyramid is an enormous
a. application b. construction c. department d. compassion
- is to hard-working as stressful is to worrying.
a. Industrial b. Flexible c. Rewarding d. Industrious
- If you don't the deadline, your application won't be accepted.
a. do b. earn c. meet d. offer
- The discount الخصم does not to you because you are not a member of the club.
a. adapt b. attend c. apply d. frustrate
- on others will never make you successful.
a. Confident b. Confidence c. Reliability d. Reliance

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Sama wondered to wait for the bus or take a taxi.
a. that b. if c. whether d. what
- Ashraf said that he'd rather I his mobile.
a. hadn't used b. didn't use c. haven't used d. won't use
- She said that she'd rather Amr at home the day before.
a. stayed b. had stayed c. staying d. has stayed
- Not only up late, but he also forgot his books.
a. he turned b. did he turn c. turned he d. turned
- My father said that it was time we home.
a. had returned b. hadn't returned c. returned d. didn't return

Test on Unit 10

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

التقييمات
الشهرية في
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "This book is too theoretical." The antonyms of "theoretical" are

(مؤيسنا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. affected b. practical c. ethical
d. directed e. applicable

2. Very high prices are very for me.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. beneficial b. annoying c. stressed
d. stressful e. supportive

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Magdi is in the second year of his as a mechanic.

- a. decision b. improvement c. condition d. apprenticeship

2. The emergency room in a hospital is called department.

- a. casual b. causable c. community d. casualty

(الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)

3. My sister has a in medicine.

(الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. degree b. licence c. mark d. sign

4. What do you need to be a successful scientist?

(أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. qualifications b. applications c. rewards d. stresses

5. As soon as I qualify from university, I will do post-..... studies.

- a. knowledge b. deadline c. graduate d. teammate

6. You should always your dreams. Never stop trying.

- a. pursue b. cycle c. challenge d. involve

7. The time of the journey depends on the of train tickets.

- a. opportunity b. availability c. qualification d. apprenticeship

8. Mona asked me from the shop the following day.

(حلوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. what had I bought b. what I would buy
c. would I buy d. what I had bought

9. She wanted to know if they would meet us in Alex the Friday.

- a. previous b. following c. before d. after

(غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

10. Sherif his dad to give him a lift to school because he was late.

- a. questioned b. said c. wondered d. asked

(غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

11. My father promised me that he me a mobile the following week.

- a. will buy b. would buy c. bought d. had bought

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

12. She asked her father why late the night before.

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. did he come b. he had come c. he has come d. had he come

13. The officer asked me I had a driving license or not. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. whether b. weather c. while d. that
14. the high waves, I completed the swimming race. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Although b. Despite c. But d. And

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (دمهور ٢٠٢٣)

Jealousy الغيرة and envy الحسد are often used interchangeably, but they have different meanings and characteristics. Where jealousy involves the fear that a third party will disrupt a relationship, envy involves the desire to have what someone else possesses. You are jealous when you fear someone will take what you have. It leads to anger and resentment. You are envious when you feel that someone has something you want. Jealousy is a normal human emotion, but abnormal jealousy can put you or others in danger. If you're experiencing morbid jealousy, in which your thoughts, emotions, behaviours are irrational, extreme, or obsessive, you may need treatment. Psychotherapy can be helpful for changing the thoughts that contribute to feelings of jealousy. Two types of therapy that can be particularly effective include: Cognitive-behavioural therapy (CBT) which focuses on identifying the negative thoughts that lead to jealousy. Cognitive-analytic therapy (CAT) which focuses on relationship patterns and how people relate to others. Specific techniques that can be helpful include cognitive restructuring and cognitive reframing. Both involve changing how you view situations and relationships. Reframing is a technique you can use on your own, but restructuring is a more formal and structured approach that is directed by a trained therapist.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- The best title for this passage is ".....".
 a. Behaviour b. Jealousy
 c. Romantic relationship d. Approach
- You need treatment when your jealousy is
 a. abnormal b. normal c. secure d. slight
- is a more formal and structured approach.
 a. Restructuring b. Reframing c. a & b d. Destruction
- On feeling that someone has something you want, you are
 a. envious b. jealous c. self-satisfied d. wise
- Jealousy is a normal human
 a. motion b. pattern c. emotion d. relation
- Morbid jealousy is a/an illness.
 a. physical b. mental c. psychological d. infectious
- With a reframing technique, you a therapist.
 a. don't need b. need c. approach d. include

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Without motivation in life, it's hard to strive for success and achieve happiness. You should try to achieve more success for yourself first before trying to please other people.

(ديماط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. بدون التحفيز في الحياة، من اليسير السعي لإدراك النجاح وتحقيق السعادة، ويجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.
- b. بدون التحفيز في الحياة، من الصعب السعي لإدراك النجاح وتحقيق السعادة، ويجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.
- c. بدون التحفيز في الحياة، من الصعب السعي لإدراك النجاح وتحقيق السعادة، ويجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً بعد محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.
- d. بدون الحافز في الحياة، من الصعب السعي لإدراك النجاح وتحقيق السعادة، ويجب أن تحاول تحقيق بعض النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

التنمية المستدامة هي استراتيجية تهدف إلى تحقيق أهداف التنمية البشرية مع الحفاظ في الوقت نفسه على الموارد الطبيعية التي يعتمد عليها الاقتصاد والمجتمع. (كفر الزيات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve humane development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural sources that the economy and society rely on.
- b. Social development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the country and society rely on.
- c. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.
- d. Sustainable development is a strategy that needs to achieve human development plans while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Silver tried to mislead Jim concerning his friends. Explain how.
.....
2. To what extent was Jim successful in his adventure on the Hispaniola?
.....
3. Would you prefer to have Silver as an enemy or a friend? Why?
.....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“A job you would like to have in the future”

.....

.....

.....

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Esraa has just come back from a holiday in Luxor.

Mona : Where did you spend your holiday ?

Esraa : (1).....

Mona : How did you travel to Luxor ?

Esraa : (2).....

Mona : Did you buy any souvenirs ?

Esraa : (3).....

Mona : (4)..... ?

Esraa : I bought some hand-made cups.

2. Write an email of 60 words :

To your friend Ali about the value of reading. Your name is Salah and your email address is salah@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. (A) Translate into Arabic :

The Egyptian government does its best to enable its citizens to face the rising cost of living.

.....

.....

(B) Translate into English :

ممارسة الرياضة وتناول الطعام الصحي تجعل الفرد لائق بدنيا وذو صحة جيدة.

.....

.....



UNIT 11

Amazing people

SB pages 52 : 61

WB pages 114 : 119

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- ⊗ **Reading** : An article about athletes with disabilities
- ⊗ **Writing** : A paragraph on a disabled person you like; an email to arrange a job interview
- ⊗ **Listening** : A radio interview about equal opportunities

- ⊗ **Speaking** : Making complaints and polite responses
- ⊗ **Language** : Relative clauses
- ⊗ **Life Skills** : Respect for diversity; creativity; cooperation



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achieve(d) (v)	يُنْجِز - يَحَقِّق	highs and lows(n)	أفراح وأتراح
achievement(n)	إنجاز	kung fu(n)	الكونغ فو
activist(n)	ناشط	medal(n)	ميدالية
campaign (n)	حملة	muscle(n)	عضلة
campaign(ed) (v)	يطالب بـ / يناصر - يَحْتَشِد	polio(n)	شلل الأطفال
campaigner (n)	مدافع / مؤيد / ناشط	powerlifter(n)	لاعب رياضة القوة البدنية
compete(d) (v)	يُنَافِس / يتسابق	powerlifting(n)	رياضة القوة البدنية
disability(n)	إعاقة / عَجْز	put pressure on	يمارس ضغوطاً علي
disabled(adj)	مُعاق	ramp(n)	مُنْخَدَر - مطلع للكراسي
high and low(adv)	في كل مكان	wheelchair(n)	المتحركة كراسي متحرك

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

actually(adv)	فعلاً / في الواقع	medical(adj)	طبي
affect(ed) (v)	يؤثر علي	metal disc(n)	قرص معدني
amazing(adj)	مُذهِل	Olympian(n)	لاعب أوليمبي
athlete(n)	لاعب ألعاب القوى - رياضي	Olympics = Olympic Games(n)	الألعاب الأولمبية
athletics(n)	ألعاب القوى	Olympic(adj)	أوليمبي
awful(adj)	فظيع	organisation (n)	مُنْظَمة
benefit (n)	فائدة	outstanding(adj)	بارز / هام
campus(n)	الحرم الجامعي	paperwork(n)	عمل ورقي
celebrity(n)	شخص مشهور	Paralympian(n)	لاعب أوليمبي من ذوي الهمم
champion(n)	بطل رياضي	Paralympic(adj)	خاص بأولمبياد ذوي الهمم
chance(n)	فرصة	Paralympics(n)	أولمبياد ذوي الهمم
condition(n)	حالة / وضع	passenger(n)	مسافر / أحد الركاب
cycling(n)	ركوب الدراجات	physical(adj)	بدني
dedicate(d) (v)	يُكرِّس / يخصص	podcast (n)	مُدونة صوتية
determination(n)	إصرار - تصميم		
ensure(d) (v)	يؤكد - يضمن		

event(n)	حَدَث - مناسبة	preserve(d) (v)	يُحافظ علي
existing(adj)	موجود	promote(d) (v)	يُرَوِّج لـ - يُرَقِّي
guess(ed) (v)	يُخَمِّن	race(n)	سباق
guest(n)	ضيف	racer(n)	متسابق
impact(n)	اثر - انطباع	require(d) (v)	يُتَطَلَب - يستلزم
inspire(d) (v)	يُلهم - يُحفِّز	retire(d) (v)	يُعْتَزِل - يتقاعد
issue(n)	قضية	sacrifice(d) (n - v)	تَضَحِّيَة - يُضَحِّي بِـ
lift(ed) (v)	يرفع	snowboarding(n)	تَزَلُّج - تزلُّج على الجليد
lift(n)	مضغِّد (أسانسير)	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
marketing(n)	التسويق	spina bifida(n)	تَشَقُّق العمود الفقري
media(n)	وسائل الإعلام		

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
achieve(d)(v) يُنْجِز - يُحَقِّق	to be successful in doing something good
achievement(n) إنجاز	something good that you have successfully done
activist(n) ناشط	someone who tries to change things
campaign(v) يُنَاصِر - يُؤَيِّد	to work in an organised way to change things
compete(d) (v) يُنَافِس - يتسابق	to take part in a race or a competition
disability(n) إعاقة - عَجْز	a physical difference that makes it difficult for someone to do something
disabled(adj) مُعاق	a way to describe someone who cannot use part of their body in the way that most people can
highs and lows أفراح وأتراح	successful and unsuccessful times
medal(n) ميدالية	a metal disc that you can win when you do or play a sport
muscle(n) عضلة	something inside your body that you use when you move
powerlifting(n) رياضة القوة البدنية	a sport where people push weights above their heads
put pressure on يمارس ضغوطاً علي	to try to make someone do something
ramp(n) مُنْخَر - مطلع للكراسي المتحركة	a sloping surface joining two places of different levels

spina bifida(n)

تشقق العمود الفقري
(عيب خلقي بالعمود الفقري)

a serious condition in which part of the spine العمود الفقري is not correctly developed at birth, leaving the nerves الأعصاب in the back الظهر without any protection حماية

wheelchair(n)

كرسي متحرك

a chair with wheels used by someone who can't walk

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Becoming a world champion in your sport is an amazing
a. competition b. winner c. medal d. achievement
(شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
2. The government launched a/an to improve public transportation in the city.
a. competition b. achievement c. campaign d. charity
(غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
3. Our company is with foreign companies to increase its sales.
a. competing b. completing c. achieving d. believing
(إدكو ٢٠٢٣)
4. There must be for wheelchairs.
a. achievements b. ramps c. disabilities d. handicap
(أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
5. Like ordinary people, people with can play sports and win medals.
a. achievements b. ramps c. disabilities d. healthy diet
(كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
6. This child needs good care as he was born with
a. campaign b. ability c. description d. polio
(النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
7. Huda Sharawy was a great for woman's rights in Egypt.
a. competitor b. member c. campaigner d. champion
(إدفو ٢٠٢٣)
8. The Paralympic Games tournament is held for athletes.
a. normal b. disabled c. insane d. natural
(إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
9. School is not always easy, so you need to expect some
a. highs and lows b. high and low c. highs and dry d. high and mighty
(أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
10. My sister won a gold in the Olympics.
a. modal b. medal c. middle d. media
(أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

11. Doing regular exercises makes your stronger and more flexible.
a. muscles b. health c. pressure d. hearing

(إندو ٢٠٢٣)

12. Is an Olympic sport?

a. campaign b. diversity c. Paralympics d. powerlifting

13. Environmental groups try hard to reduce pollution.

a. activist b. Paralympian c. celebrity d. colleague

14. You need to be hard-working and organized to your goals in life.

a. interview b. request c. achieve d. retire

15. He won't accept this offer. Don't put much on him.

a. pressure b. diversity c. staff d. difference

16. I looked for the lost key, but I couldn't find it.

a. nowhere b. high and low c. highs and lows d. her and their

17. As a, he has very strong muscles.

a. campaigner b. powerlifter c. colleague d. celebrity

18. After the accident, Hany couldn't walk and he had to use a/an

a. bike b. wheelchair c. armchair d. pair of glasses

(منطقة أسبوت الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

2 Important Vocabulary

19. Mohammed Salah is a that all people like.

(رشيد ٢٠٢٣)

a. celebrity b. popular c. celebrated d. celebration

20. Good teachers can their students to reach their full potential.

a. discourage b. inspire c. achieve d. employ

(البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

21. Smoking has a serious on health.

(سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

a. effect b. impact c. influence d. all mentioned

22. Most players feel sad when they

(زفتي ٢٠٢٣)

a. campaign b. retire c. apply d. score

23. My father has been from assistant manager to the manager of the company.

(غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. lifted b. promoted c. owned d. competed

24. She was the greatest Egyptian in swimming.

(غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. hero b. championship c. power d. champion

25. Egyptian win more medals than Olympians.

a. activists b. Paralympians c. celebrities d. colleagues

26. As an, he won a gold medal.

a. Olympic b. Olympian c. Olympics d. Paralympian

27. Athletes with disabilities can take part in the
 a. Olympics b. diversity c. Paralympics d. powerlifting
28. I think the of opinion is an advantage.
 a. campaign b. diversity c. Paralympics d. powerlifting
29. People who cannot see suffer from a/an disability.
 a. disabled b. medicine c. physical d. Olympic
30. As they are injured, they need treatment in a hospital or clinic.
 a. disabled b. medical c. magical d. Olympic
31. follow particular food programmes and do regular exercise.
 a. Athletes b. Athletics c. Recorders d. Records
32. makes you follow particular food programmes and do regular exercise.
 a. Athletes b. Athletics c. Recorders d. Records

3 Definitions

33. A/An is a person who believes strongly in social change and works hard to make this happen. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. competitor b. activist c. daydreamer d. carer
34. A is a sloping surface that joins two places of different levels. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. camp b. rose c. race d. ramp
35. is a serious disease of the nerves in the spine, that often results in someone being permanently unable to move particular muscles. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Spina bifida b. Measles c. Paralympics d. Stamina
36. A/An is something good that you have successfully done.
 a. department b. movement c. achievement d. government
37. To means to take part in a race or a competition.
 a. complete b. compete c. complain d. benefit
38. is a physical difference that makes it difficult for someone to do something.
 a. Challenge b. Intelligence c. Strength d. Disability
39. A/An is something inside your body that you use when you move.
 a. muscle b. tooth c. nail d. eyebrow
40. is a sport where people push weights above their heads.
 a. Wrestling b. Windsurfing c. Powerlifting d. Boxing
41. To is to work in an organised way to change things.
 a. campaign b. amaze c. break d. complain
42. To means to try to make someone do something.
 a. impact b. access c. benefit d. put pressure on

PART II

VOCABULARY STUDY

1

Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

achieve	success	يحقق النجاح	do	something good	يفعل شيئاً جيداً
be	a success	يحقق النجاح	do/play	a sport	يمارس رياضة
arrange	a meeting	يرتب لاجتماع/لمقابلة	make	a difference	يُحسن الأمور
come	fourth	يحصل على المركز الرابع	play	in a wheelchair	يلعب على كرسي متحرك
give	a talk	يلقي خطبة	practise	a sport	يمارس رياضة
	a challenge	يمثل تحدياً	run	a campaign	يدير حملة
	a disability	لديه إعاقة	take	a lift up	يصعد بالأسانسير
have	an impact	له تأثير		part in	يشارك في
	ramps	به مطالع للكراسي المتحركة	win	a medal	يفوز بميدالية
	positive effects on	له آثار إيجابية على		a prize	يفوز بجائزة

2

Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
achievement إنجاز	triumph, success, accomplishment
amazing مذهل	astonishing, breathtaking, awesome
high and low في كل مكان	everywhere, all over, all around, in all places, in every place, far and wide

3

Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
achievement إنجاز	failure, loss الفشل - الخسارة
amazing مذهل	everyday عادي
celebrity شخص مشهور	nonentity, nobody نَجْرة
physical بدني	mental عقلي / ذهني

4

Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

achieve	
achieve(v) يُنجز - يُحقِّق	- I am happy because I have achieved my goal.
achievement(n) إنجاز	- I am happy because of the achievement of my goal.
achievable (adj) يمكن تحقيقه	- I am happy because my goal has been achievable .

activist		
activate(v)	يُنشِط - يُفَعِّل	- I have to activate my Windows version نسخة.
activity(n)	نشاط	- We do some activities at school.
activist(n)	ناشط	- She is an environmental activist.
active(adj)	نشط - فَعَّال	- Sama is an active student.
campaign		
campaign(v)	يطالب بـ / يناصر - يَحْبِثُ	- They campaigned for their favourite star.
campaign(n)	حملة	- They ran a campaign to defend their favourite star عن يدافع.
campaigner(n)	مُدافع - مُؤَيِّد	- They were campaigners for their favourite star.
compete		
compete(v)	يُنَافِس - يتسابق	- The two teams competed fairly.
competition(n)	مُسَابَقَة - مُنَافَسَة	- The two teams had a fair competition.
competitive(adj)	تنافسي	- I like the competitive nature of this player.
disability		
disability(n)	إعاقة - عَجْز	- He has a disability.
disabled(adj)	مُعاق	- He is disabled.
paralympic		
Paralympian(n)	لاعب أولمبي (من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)	- He is a Paralympian.
Paralympics(n)	أولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة	- He took part in the Paralympics.
Paralympic(adj)	خاص بأولمبياد المعاقين	- He is a paralympic champion.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a wider range of	عدد/كم كبير من	get a place at the Olympics	يتأهل للأولمبياد
above heads	فوق الرؤوس	hold Olympic Games	تنظيم الألعاب الأولمبية
benefits of sports	فوائد الرياضة	in charge of	مسئول عن
children with disabilities	أطفال ذوي احتياجات خاصة	make it difficult for	يجعل من الصعب علي
different to / from	مُخْتَلِف عن	respect for diversity	احترام الاختلاف/التعددية
four times his body weight	أربع أضعاف وزن جسمه	win a medal for	يفوز بميدالية في

6 فعل + حرف جر Verb + Preposition

add ... to	يضيف ... إلى	go up	يصعد - يرتفع / يزداد
battle against	يقاثل / يكافح ضد	move around	يتنقل
campaign for	يشن حملة من أجل	promise to	يعد بأن
compete in	ينافس في	refer to	يشير إلى
complain about	يشكو من	retire from	يعتزل من
fight with	يقاثل باستخدام / مع	talk about	يتحدث عن
get around/round	يتجول - يتنقل		

7 لاحظ الفرق Clear the confusion

Olympics - Paralympics

تعني كلمة (**Olympics**) الألعاب الأولمبية العادية، بينما تعني كلمة (**Paralympics**) الألعاب الأولمبية لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة، ولاحظ مشتقات كل منهما:

Olympics = Olympic Games	الألعاب الأولمبية	Paralympics = Paralympic Games	أولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
Olympic(adj)	أولمبي	Paralympic(adj)	خاص بأولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
Olympian(n)	لاعب أولمبي	Paralympian(n)	لاعب باراليمبي (من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)

لاحظ أن كلمتي (**Olympics / Paralympics**) دائماً جمع ويأخذان فعل جمع في اللغة الرسمية :
- The Olympics / Paralympics are watched on TV by millions of people.
(**Not: is watched**)

-ing -er

بعض الرياضات تنتهي بـ (**ing**) بينما ينتهي اسم الرياضي منها بـ (**er**)، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

sport		sportsperson	
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	cycler	راكب دراجات
powerlifting	رياضة القوة البدنية	powerlifter	لاعب قوة بدنية
running	الجرى	runner	عداء
snowboarding	التزلج	snowboarder	متزلج (على الجليد)
swimming	السباحة	swimmer	سباح
windsurfing	رياضة ركوب الأمواج	windsurfer	المتزلج على الماء (راكب أمواج)

as well as

لاحظ استخدام (as well as) بمعنيين مختلفين :

1. as well as + n. / (inf. + ing)

بالإضافة إلى

ex. - I study Arabic as well as English.

- As well as growing plants, farmers keep animals.

2. as well as

بنفس الجودة أو الإتقان

ex. - She can't see as well as other people can. She has poor sight بصر ضعيف.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

★ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. Global warming is one of the main that must be faced and solved.

(طلا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. rules b. reviews c. roles
d. issues e. problems

2. They wanted to know which sport I used to when I was young, but I refused to tell them.

(Tablet Exam 2022)

- a. fill b. cause c. do
d. make e. play

3. He is determined مصمم to

- a. achieve success b. be a success
c. success d. successful e. take success

4. The word 'amazing' is synonymous with

- a. ordinary b. breathtaking c. usual
d. awesome e. normal

5. It is great to in the Olympics.

- a. complete b. compete c. campaign
d. put pressure e. take part

6. You can say that someone

- a. is a disability b. disability c. is disabled
d. disabled e. has a disability

7. We must look after children disabilities.

- a. with b. who's c. who've
d. who're e. whose

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think you are good enough to be a in the next Olympics.

- a. competition b. compete c. competitor d. competitively

(أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٣)

2. Ali who cannot walk can play tennis a wheel chair. (اسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. onto b. in c. at d. for
3. Every athlete hopes to take in the Olympic Games. (البراهيمية ٢٠٢٣)
a. place b. part c. to d. off
4. The Ministry of Health is a campaign to treat people who have Virus C.
a. doing b. winning c. taking d. running
5. I can swim as as my brother.
a. soon b. well c. good d. many
6. The World Cup Finals take every four years.
a. part b. part in c. place d. a & b
7. Workers usually retire their jobs at the age of 60.
a. by b. with c. of d. from
8. Mustafa Kamel was a great for Egypt's independence.
a. campaign b. campaigned c. campaigner d. campaigns
9. Mustafa Kamel was a great leader who for Egypt's independence.
a. campaign b. campaigned c. campaigner d. campaigns
10. Which of the following prefixes make the opposite of 'ability'?
a. Non- b. Dis- c. In- d. Im-
11. As well as for a walk, he also played tennis.
a. go b. going c. to go d. goes

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 52

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a **champion**⁽¹⁾ in **Kung Fu**⁽²⁾ and won many medals in the sport at secondary school. After a terrible car accident, he now has a **disability**⁽³⁾ which means he has to use a **wheelchair**⁽⁴⁾. Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped his love of sport.

He decided to practise a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very good at wheelchair tennis.



- (1) بطل رياضي
- (2) لعبة الكونغ فو
- (3) إعاقة
- (4) كرسي متحرك

He has **competed**⁽⁵⁾ in many international wheelchair tennis **competitions**⁽⁶⁾ and became one of the best wheelchair tennis players in Egypt. That is an amazing **achievement**⁽⁷⁾, but Mahmoud has not stopped there. He also helps people who are in wheelchairs to **stay fit**⁽⁸⁾, and gives talks to help other people with disabilities.

(5) يتنافس

(6) مسابقات

(7) إنجاز

(8) يظل لائق بدنياً

Lesson 1 SB page 53

Amany Ali

Amany Ali is an Egyptian **Paralympic**⁽¹⁾ **powerlifter**⁽²⁾ who won a **bronze medal**⁽³⁾ in the 2016 **Paralympic Games**⁽⁴⁾ in Brazil in 2016. Amany had an **illness**⁽⁵⁾ called **polio**⁽⁶⁾ when she was younger and this **affected**⁽⁷⁾ the **muscles**⁽⁸⁾ in her feet. She did not start **powerlifting**⁽⁹⁾ until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport. She **achieved**⁽¹⁰⁾ her Paralympic success in Brazil aged 40, and at a very difficult time. Her father died two days before the competition, so she wanted to win the medal for him. She also **came fourth**⁽¹¹⁾ in the London Paralympic Games in 2012.



(1) خاص بأولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة

(2) لاعب قوة بدنية

(3) ميدالية برونزية

(4) أولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة

(5) مرض

(6) مرض شلل الأطفال

(7) أثر

(8) عضلات

(9) رياضة القوى البدنية

(10) حقق

(11) حصل على المركز الرابع

Lesson 1 SB page 53

Tanni Grey-Thompson

Tanni Grey-Thompson is a **British**⁽¹⁾ Paralympian wheelchair **racer**⁽²⁾ who has a **medical**⁽³⁾ **condition**⁽⁴⁾ called **spina bifida**⁽⁵⁾. She is **unable**⁽⁶⁾ to walk, so she uses a wheelchair to get around. Tanni first competed in the 400 metres and wheelchair basketball at the Paralympics in **Seoul**⁽⁷⁾ in 1988. Tanni won 16 Paralympic medals in **athletics**⁽⁸⁾ events from the 100 metres up to the 800 metres, including 11 gold medals.



(1) بريطاني

(2) متسابق

(3) طبي

(4) حالة / وضع

(5) تشقق العمود الفقري

(6) غير قادر

(7) مدينة سول

(8) ألعاب القوى

Since she **retired**⁽⁹⁾ from athletics in 2004, Tanni has worked for many different **organisations**⁽¹⁰⁾ which help people, **especially**⁽¹¹⁾ **disabled**⁽¹²⁾ people and women, to enjoy the **benefits**⁽¹³⁾ of sports.

(9) يعتزل - يتقاعد

(10) منظمات

(11) خاصة

(12) مُعاق

(13) فوائد

*Lesson 1 WB page 114***Wheelchair tennis**

Some amazing athletes compete in different sports even when they have a disability. For example, some play tennis in wheelchairs. The playing area is the same as for other tennis competitions, but the players need to have strong muscles in their arms to move around and to hit the ball. The best players enter the Paralympic Games, but few achieved as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands. She won four gold medals between 2000 and 2012.

*Lesson 1 WB page 114***Olympic sports**

Many Olympic sports have always been part of the modern games, such as cycling and swimming. Some of the most famous Olympians are runners such as Usain Bolt and Mo Farah. New sports are sometimes added to the games. For example, windsurfing became an Olympic Sport in 1984 and snowboarding in 1998. Other sports are not part of the Olympic Games, for example, powerlifting. That means that great Egyptian powerlifters, like Sherif Othman, can only compete in the Paralympics.

*Lesson 2 WB page 115***A campaign for the disabled**

Disabled passengers who travel by plane often have a lot of problems, Frank Gardener, who has used a wheelchair since 2004, campaigns for air travel to be easier for disabled passengers. This started after he was left on a plane which had landed at London's Heathrow airport for a long time because his wheelchair was lost. The owner of the plane company, who was very sorry for what happened, promised to help disabled passengers more in the future. But Frank says the main problem is what happens to his wheelchair, which is often broken on long flights.

2 Listening Text

Lesson 2 SB page 54

Listen to an interview with Leila about a charity organisation

Nadia : Hello everyone and welcome to the **podcast**⁽¹⁾. Every week we talk to a different **guest**⁽²⁾ about their job. Today we have a very special guest who's a charity **activist**⁽³⁾ from Egypt. Her name is Leila El-Baz. Leila, who has been an equal opportunities **campaigner**⁽⁴⁾ for almost ten years now, is here to talk about trying to change the world. Thank you very much for joining us, Leila.



Leila : Great to be here, Nadia.

Nadia : So, tell us a little bit about yourself, Leila. Where are you from?

Leila : I'm from Alexandria, which is a city in the north of Egypt, but I work in Cairo now.

Nadia : What did you study ?

Leila : I studied **sociology**⁽⁵⁾ which I found really interesting.

Nadia : And how did you get into working for charities supporting equal opportunities ? It's not something that everyone does for living, is it ?

Leila : No, I guess it isn't, but it's a brilliant job. I would recommend it to all young people because you can really make a difference **that's why**⁽⁶⁾ I love it so much. I started campaigning for **disabled people**⁽⁷⁾ when I was at university actually. One of my best friends was disabled and she used a **wheelchair**⁽⁸⁾ I noticed that she was having lots of problems just trying to get from one classroom to another, or from the library to the cafeteria. There were steps everywhere and **hardly**⁽⁹⁾ any **lifts**⁽¹⁰⁾ or **ramps**⁽¹¹⁾ to help disabled people get from one floor to the next.

Nadia : Oh. **That's awful**⁽¹²⁾.

Leila : Yes, I know, so my friend and I decided to try to **make changes**⁽¹³⁾ in our university. We asked the teachers to talk to the people who were **in charge of**⁽¹⁴⁾ the university about the **issue**⁽¹⁵⁾ and they did.

- (1) بث إذاعي
- (2) ضيف - زائر
- (3) ناشط
- (4) مدافع - مؤيد
- (5) علم الاجتماع
- (6) ولهذا السبب
- (7) ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
- (8) كرسي متحرك
- (9) بالكاد
- (10) مصاعد
- (11) مطالع للكراسي المتحركة
- (12) هذا فظيخ
- (13) يحدث تغييرات
- (14) المسئول - المكلف بـ
- (15) مشكلة - مسألة

Nadia: What happened next ?

Leila : Well, after about a year, we got four new lifts and lots of ramps. The university also promised to think about disabled students when they build new parts of the **campus**⁽¹⁶⁾ or change existing buildings.

Nadia: That's excellent.

Leila : When I finished studying, I got a job at a charity which helps disabled young people find jobs. That was really interesting.

Nadia: But, now you **campaign**⁽¹⁷⁾ for equal opportunities for a wider range of people; not just people with disabilities. Is that right ?

Leila : Yes, that's right. Now I work for **an organisation**⁽¹⁸⁾ called Open Eyes which campaigns in lots of different areas. We try to **ensure**⁽¹⁹⁾ that people who are different to other people, in one way or another, still have the same **chances**⁽²⁰⁾ in life.

Nadia: That sounds like great work to be doing, but is there anything you don't like about your job ?

Leila : Well, I don't like it when you think you're going to succeed, but in the end, you don't. And, of course, not all of our work is exciting. We have to do **paperwork**⁽²¹⁾ too, you know !

- (16) الحرم الجامعي
- (17) يطالب / يناصر
- (18) منظمة
- (19) يضمن - يكفل
- (20) فرص
- (21) أعمال كتابية

3 Video script section

To become an award-winning **Paralympian**⁽¹⁾ is an **outstanding**⁽²⁾ achievement. These athletes **battle**⁽³⁾ against **physical disabilities**⁽⁴⁾ to prove their **strength**⁽⁵⁾, **stamina**⁽⁶⁾ and **determination**⁽⁷⁾.

Competing in the Paralympics often means a life **dedicated**⁽⁸⁾ to training and often requires a lot of **sacrifices**⁽⁹⁾ to be successful. Even simple tasks can be difficult with a disability which is why they are so inspiring.

Many Paralympians inspire people to persevere to achieve their dreams. They often dedicate their time to **promoting**⁽¹⁰⁾ their sport and helping young people find opportunities to train.

- (1) لاعب أولمبي من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
- (2) ممتاز
- (3) يقاتل - يكافح
- (4) الإعاقات البدنية
- (5) القوة
- (6) قوة الاحتمال والمثابرة
- (7) العزم - التصميم
- (8) مخلص أو متفان في عمله
- (9) التضحيات
- (10) تدعيم - تعزيز

PART IV LANGUAGE

Relative clauses عبارات الوصل

1 الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى : who / which / whom / that

١ تُشير (who / that) إلى فاعل عاقل ويأتى بعدهما فعل ولا يمكن حذفهما :

- ex. - I met my pen friend who / that lives in London.
- Teachers are people who / that work at schools.

٢ تُشير (who / whom / that) إلى مفعول عاقل فى حالة المبنى للمعلوم ويأتى بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفهم :

- ex. - The man who / whom / that you met with me yesterday is my uncle.
= The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

٣ تُشير (which / that) إلى فاعل غير عاقل ويأتى بعدهما فعل ولا يمكن حذفهما :

- ex. - The dog which / that chased me belongs to my neighbours.

٤ تُشير (which / that) إلى مفعول غير عاقل ويأتى بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما :

- ex. - The car which / that I bought has a problem with the engine.
- The car I bought has a problem with the engine.

٥ لا تستخدم (that) فى الجمل الاعتراضية - أى بعد الفاصلة التحتية (,) :

- ex. - Ismail Yassen, who is still a famous actor, died in the 1970s. (Not: that is....)
- Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (Not: that is....)

٦ بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :

١. لا تأتى حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتى بعدهما فى نهاية الجملة الموصولة :

- ex. - This is my friend who I play tennis with. (Not: with who....)
- This is the motorbike that I go to school on. (Not: on that....)

٢. يمكن أن تأتى حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :

- ex. - This is my friend whom I play tennis with.
= This is my friend with whom I play tennis.
- This is the motorbike which I go to school on.
= This is the motorbike on which I go to school.

2 حيث / حيثما / المكان الذى : where

١ تعود على المكان ولا يأتى بعدها فعل :

- ex. - This is the room where I sleep.
- She went to Cairo University where she studied Arabic language.

٢ لاحظ أن:

(حرف جر مناسب للمكان ... + which / that) / (حرف جر مناسب للمكان + where = which)

ex. - This is the room in which I sleep.

- This is the room which / that I sleep in.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجمله الوصل :
- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

ex. - This is the house where we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)

- This is the house which we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

٤ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

ex. - I went to the room in which I sleep. (Not: the room in where)

- I went to the room which I sleep in. (Not: the room where in)

Extra Notes

3 when :

حين / حينما / عندما / الوقت الذي :

١ تُشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

ex. - 2012 was the year when Rodayna was born.

- Friday is the day when we don't go to school.

- Two o'clock is the time when I return home from school.

(حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني ... + which / that) / (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني = when)

ex. - 2012 was the year in which Rodayna was born.

= 2012 was the year which / that Rodayna was born in.

- Friday is the day on which we don't go to school.

= Friday is the day which / that we don't go to school on.

- Seven o'clock is the time at which I get up.

= Seven o'clock is the time which / that I get up at.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجمله الوصل :
- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

ex. - Winter is the season when we go to Aswan.

= We go to Aswan in winter.

- Winter is the season which we spend in Aswan.

= We spend winter in Aswan.

٢ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when) :

ex. - Friday is the day on which my son was born. (Not: the day on when)

- Friday is the day which my son was born on. (Not: the day when on)

4

whose = (nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their ...

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل) :

- ex. - I saw an old man whose son was kidnapped.
 - She lives in a house whose roof is high.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ أن :

اسم = with + noun اسم = who / which / that + have / has / had + noun

- ex. - The little girl who has long hair is my daughter.
 = The little girl with long hair is my daughter.

٢ بعد الأعداد الترتيبية يمكن استبدال عبارة الوصل بـ (to + inf.) :

- The first / second / third only / last + عبارة وصل
 = The first / second / third only / last + to + inf.

- ex. - Omar was the second student who arrived at school.
 = Omar was the second student to arrive at school.

٣ في حالة المبنى للمعلوم يمكن استبدال عبارة الوصل بـ (inf. + ing.)

- ex. - The man who is carrying a big bag is my neighbour.
 - The man carrying a big bag is my neighbour.

٤ في حالة المبنى للمجهول يمكن استبدال عبارة الوصل بـ (p.p.)

- ex. - The car which was stolen yesterday belongs to me.
 - The car stolen yesterday belongs to me.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. A nurse is a hard-working person is caring and reliable.

- a. whose b. who c. which d. what

(شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)

2. This is the company we work for.

- a. where b. when c. which d. whom

(أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

3. Last weekend, we visited the village my grandparents were born.

- a. what b. when c. where d. that

(سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

4. August is the month we go to Alexandria.

(زمن ٢٠٢٣)

- a. where b. when c. which d. whose

5. Messi is the player goals are watched all over the world.

- a. which b. who c. whose d. whom

(الدوامية ٢٠٢٣)

6. Luxor is a city is famous across the world. (منطقة البحيرة الزهرية - ادبي ٢٠٢٣)

- a. who b. when c. where d. which

2 Special cases

7. Mr Adel, is our new manager, is very friendly and kind. (متوف ٢٠٢٣)

- a. that b. whom c. what d. who

8. Friday is the day I usually take my family out for lunch. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

- a. where b. who c. on which d. in which

9. Ted Hughes, about you read, loved children dearly. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. that b. whom c. whose d. who

10. The bed I slept in last night wasn't very comfortable. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. where b. whose c. which d. when

11. The bed I slept last night wasn't very comfortable.

- a. where b. whose c. which d. when

12. This is the engineer designs are so wonderful. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

- a. who b. which c. whose d. whom

13. Friday is the day we usually spend revising our lessons.

- a. when b. which c. where d. what

(إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)

14. Houses of mud bricks insulate heat.

(إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)

- a. which built b. are built c. built d. building

15. The man is a well-known celebrity.

(كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)

- a. she married b. she married him
c. whose she married d. that she married him

16. The great projects, out all over Egypt, will help to increase the standard of living.

(شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

- a. are carried b. carried c. which carried d. carrying

17. The team has won the competition has qualified to the finals.

- a. who b. when c. where d. which

(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

18. I can't remember you told me about Ali.
a. who b. which c. whom d. what
19. This is the employee we are looking for.
a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
20. This is the employee for we are looking.
a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
21. Egypt, is an African country, is a regional power قوة إقليمية.
a. which b. that c. when d. a & b
22. Egypt calls for peace and stability الاستقرار is a regional power قوة إقليمية.
a. which b. that c. when d. a & b
23. The house I live is surrounded by a garden.
a. where b. which c. that d. b & c
24. The house I live in is surrounded by a garden.
a. where b. which c. that d. b & c
25. I live in a house is surrounded by a garden.
a. where b. which c. that d. b & c
26. This is the school I learn.
a. which b. that c. where d. a & b
27. This is the school my father runs.
a. which b. that c. where d. a & b
28. The woman clothes are made of wool must feel warm.
a. which b. that c. who d. whose
29. I usually buy from the supermarkets assistants are neighbourly.
a. when b. which c. that d. whose



احرص على اقتناء

EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح نفسك له يستحق



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

department(n)	قسم	sign(ed) off(v)	يُسجّل خروج (من موقع إلكتروني)
employee(n)	مُوظّف	sign-off(n)	خاتمة - خروج
equal opportunities	فرص متكافئة	staff(n)	هيئة العاملين
madam(n)	سيدة - سيدتي	support(ed) (n - v)	يدعم - دُعم
request(ed) (n - v)	طَلَب - يطلب	train(ed) (v)	يتدرب
sales (n)	مبيعات	training (n)	تدريب

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

access(n)	مَدْخَل / مَنفذ - وُضُول	colleague(n)	زميل عمل
afraid(adj)	خائف	complaint(n)	شكوى
apologise(d) (v)	يعتذر	interview(ed)(n - v)	مقابلة شخصية - جوار - يُجري مقابلة
book(ed) (v)	يحجز	polite(adj)	مُهذَّب - مُؤدَّب
bother(ed) (v)	يضايق	regards(n)	احترامي - تحياتي
break - broke - broken(v)	يكسر - يخالف	undercooked(adj)	غير مطهي جيدًا

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
madam(n) سيدة - سيدتي	a polite way to call a woman whose name you do not know
request(n) طَلَب	you make this to say what you want
sign-off(n) خاتمة - خروج	another word for the close of an email

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. This company has 30 They are very skilled.

- a. employers b. employees c. employment d. employs

(النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

2. Her new is very kind and treats her well. (الحوامدية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. job b. employ c. employment d. employer
3. I used to enjoy going to the theatre, but I don't get much now. (مغافة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. competition b. chances c. opportunity d. achievement
4. There are many writers who and advocated women's rights. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. supposed b. supported c. opposed d. denied
5. The coach is the (بولق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. train b. trainer c. trainee d. training
6. I need to for the next match.
 a. sign off b. support c. train d. training
7. A/An is another name for the closing of an email.
 a. request b. opening c. access d. sign-off
8. If you want to join our group, just make a
 a. request b. benefit c. celebrity d. condition
9. is a title for a woman you don't know.
 a. Mr b. Dr c. Madam d. Nurse
10. My brother is a professor in the physics in the faculty of science.
 a. department b. training c. sales d. employee
11. The of this company are all qualified for their jobs.
 a. employee b. employer c. crew d. staff
12. The high quality of our products increases the
 a. department b. training c. sales d. employee
13. You can an email with "I look forward to hearing from you".
 a. sign off b. support c. train d. request

2 Important Vocabulary

14. My are wonderful. They help me when I need them. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. colleges b. collages c. cottages d. colleagues
15. The internet has given us to all information we need.
 a. powerlift b. ramp c. access d. muscle
16. The manager hasn't replied to the I have made.
 a. complain b. complaint c. research d. experiment
17. He the world record three years ago and he still holds it.
 a. broke b. missed c. messed d. benefitted
18. You are mistaken. You have to
 a. powerlift b. request c. apologise d. sign off

3 Definitions

19. You make to say what you want.
 a. sign off b. a sign-off c. request d. a request
20. is a polite way to call a woman whose name you do not know.
 a. Mum b. Madam c. Sir d. Honey

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

break	a record	يحطم الرقم القياسي	make	a complaint	يشكو
do	building work	يقوم بأعمال بناء	make	a request	يطلب
get	home	يصل للبيت	make	noise	يُحدث ضجيجاً
have	a reason to	لديه مُبرّر لـ	make	sure	يتأكد
hold	a record	يحمل الرقم القياسي	take	place	يحدث
receive	training	يتلقى تدريباً			

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
bother	انزعج، يزعج
diversity	تنوع، التعدد
employ	يوظف - يشغل
employ	يستغل
sign-off	خاتمة
suitable	مناسب

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
bother	يسعد - يرضي
diversity	نمطية - تشابه
employ	يفصل من العمل
sign-off	افتتاحية
sign-off	تسجيل دخول
suitable	غير ملائم

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

(be) qualified for	مؤهّل لـ	like me	مئلي
(be) suitable for	مناسب لـ	on long flights	في الرحلات الجوية الطويلة
break a world record for	يحطم الرقم القياسي العالمي في	sales department	قسم المبيعات
I do apologise	إنني أعذر	sorry about / for	شاعر بالأسف بخصوص
I'm afraid	يؤسفني أن	training in how to	تدريب على كيفية
		Kind regards	مع خالص تحياتي

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	reply to	يُرَدُّ على
be out	بالخارج / غير موجود	speak to	يتحدث إلى
come in for	يأتي من أجل	start ... with	يبدأ ... بـ
go back to	يعود إلى	thank ... for	يشكر ... على
hear from	يتلقى أخبار من	train ... to	يُدرَّب ... على
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	turn ... down	يُخفض صوت ... - يرفض

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "How many people did the company employ?" The antonyms of the verb "employ" are
(النزهة ٢٠٢٣)
a. hire b. fire c. understand
d. learn e. discharge
2. "Don't bother an animal, or it might bite you." The antonyms of "bother" can be
(العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)
a. upset b. break c. please
d. satisfy e. annoy
3. He extra training to lose weight before joining the first team.
a. achieved b. made c. held d. received e. did
4. You can a record.
a. break b. hold c. mess d. receive e. go
5. "I think red is not suitable as a colour for a formal suit." The adjective 'suitable' in this context is a synonym of
a. appropriate b. inappropriate c. fit d. unsuitable e. unfit
6. When you want someone to do something for you, you
a. do it b. make it c. make a request
d. ask them to do it e. depend on yourself

• **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The athlete was over the moon when he the world record. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. broke b. crashed c. splashed d. devastated
2. Excuse me, I'd like to a complaint. My soup is cold. (أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
a. get b. do c. make d. communicate
3. Computers have it possible for people to work from home. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
a. done b. taken c. given d. made

4. The crime place at midnight.
a. made b. had c. did d. took
5. We can say someone a difference, noise or a request.
a. does b. achieves c. makes d. runs
6. 'Diversity' and 'variety' are
a. antonyms b. opposites c. synonyms d. a & b
7. I trained my son on himself.
a. depend b. depended c. to depend d. depends
8. We always start an informal email the greeting التحية.
a. for b. with c. of d. to
9. I added some lemon my soup.
a. to b. of c. from d. at
10. He has the world record for five years. No one else could even reach his record.
a. held b. broken c. missed d. a, b & c

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Text

Lesson 4 WB page 117

Dear Christine Harrison,

Thank you for your **interest**⁽¹⁾ in working for our company. I am writing to reply to your questions.

Our company already has two disabled **employees**⁽²⁾. We do not have a **lift**⁽³⁾ but we have **ramps**⁽⁴⁾ to both of the floors in our building. All of our **staff**⁽⁵⁾ are **trained to**⁽⁶⁾ **support**⁽⁷⁾ our disabled **colleagues**⁽⁸⁾.

I would like to know which **qualifications**⁽⁹⁾ you have. Could you come in for an **interview**⁽¹⁰⁾ next week? I **look forward to**⁽¹¹⁾ hearing from you.
Kind **regards**⁽¹²⁾.

Medhat Shoukry
Manager



- (1) اهتمام
- (2) موظفين
- (3) مصعد
- (4) مطالع للكراسي المتحركة
- (5) فريق العمل
- (6) متدرب لـ
- (7) يساعد / يساعد
- (8) زملاء
- (9) مؤهلات
- (10) مقابلة رسمية
- (11) يتطلع إلى
- (12) تحيات

2 Listening Texts

Lesson 3 SB page 56

Listen to three conversations where one person is making a complaint and the other person is responding to that complaint.

Narrator : One

Woman 1 : Excuse me, I'd like to **make a complaint**⁽¹⁾.
My soup is cold.

Woman 2 : I do **apologise**⁽²⁾. I'll make sure you get
another soup which is hot.

Narrator : Two

Old Man : I'm sorry to bother you, but the music is really loud.

Man 1 : I'm sorry about that. I'll **make sure**⁽³⁾ my son turns the
music down.

Narrator : Three

Old Woman : I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Woman 3 : I'm afraid she's out at the moment. Can I help you ?

Old Woman : Yes, the problem is that my train is now two hours late.
How am I going to get home this evening ?

Woman 3 : I'm sorry about that. Perhaps we can **book**⁽⁴⁾ a taxi for you.

(1) يقدم شكوى

(2) يعتذر

(3) يتأكد

(4) يحجز

Lesson 3 WB page 116

Conversation One

Hana : Excuse me, I'd like to make a complaint.
My phone doesn't work.

Assistant : I do apologise. Perhaps we can **repair**⁽¹⁾ it.

Conversation Two

Hany : I'm sorry to **bother**⁽²⁾ you, but you're very
tall. I can't see the play.

Man : I'm sorry about that. I'll change places with my wife. She is
shorter.

Conversation Three

Heba : I'd like to speak to the **manager**⁽³⁾, please.

Waitress : I'm afraid he's **out at the moment**⁽⁴⁾. Can I help you ?

Heba : Yes, the problem is that my meat is **undercooked**⁽⁵⁾.

Waitress : I'm sorry about that. We will give you a new meal.

(1) يصلح

(2) يضايق - يزعج

(3) مدير

(4) بالخارج في هذه اللحظة

(5) غير مطبوخ جيداً

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. The teachers skills on the computer are limited will meet a big challenge next year. (مفاعة ٢٠٢٣)
a. who b. who's c. whose d. that
2. This is the village I was born. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
a. who b. where c. which d. whom
3. Our flat, is on the fifth floor, overlooks the Nile. (دفو ٢٠٢٣)
a. which b. what c. whose d. where
4. For me, my home is a place I feel free and relaxed.
a. who b. where c. when d. that
5. For me, my home is a place I feel free and relaxed in.
a. who b. where c. when d. which
6. Summer is the season we go on holiday.
a. where b. which c. who d. when
7. This is the time Rodayna usually arrives home.
a. whose b. who c. when d. which
8. The girl has been injured in the accident is now in hospital.
a. whom b. when c. who d. where
9. The machine broke down has now been repaired.
a. who b. which c. whom d. where
10. The bus goes to the city centre runs every half an hour.
a. which b. on which c. where d. when
11. She works for a company produces mobile phones.
a. who b. that c. where d. when
12. I can't find the books I got from the library.
a. that b. where c. what d. when
13. The writer novel won the first prize gave me a signed copy as a present.
a. whose b. which c. who d. when

2 Special cases

14. I can't remember the name of the person I borrowed this pen.
a. from where b. from which c. to whom d. from whom
(الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
15. I have unforgettable memories of my village I was born in.
a. where b. at which c. in which d. which
(أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٣)
16. The Eastern Desert, is very dry, has very little wildlife.
a. where b. when c. that d. which
17. Lake Nasser, was formed behind the High Dam, is the largest man-made lake.
a. where b. whom c. that d. which
18. Armstrong was the first on the moon.
a. walking b. to walk c. man he walked d. one who walking
19. A new tower was built next to the house I was born.
a. in where b. in which c. when d. no pronoun
20. Will you lend me the DVD you bought last week?
a. in which b. whose c. when d. no pronoun
21. I found the pen for I was searching.
a. that b. which c. whose d. what
22. I went to the grocer's I bought what I need.
a. when b. who c. which d. where
23. I met a man with I used to work.
a. whom b. which c. that d. who
24. Eighteen is the age you can vote in elections. تُصوّت في الانتخابات.
a. with which b. in which c. which d. at which
25. Aswan, is in the south of Egypt, is where I currently work.
a. where b. which c. in which d. that
26. "Awlad Elam", by Karim Abd El-Aziz, is a fantastic movie.
a. which it was starred b. which is starred c. that is starred d. was starred
27. He had a bitter argument with his wife, annoyed him much.
a. that b. whose c. when d. which
28. Japan, consists of a lot of islands, is a leading country in the Far East.
a. which b. where c. who d. that



PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ يُمكن استخدام (some) كضمير بمعنى (البعض) ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد إذا كانت تشير لاسم غير معدود وفعل جمع إذا كانت تشير لاسم معدود:

- ex. - Most information on the internet is in English. Some is in different languages like Arabic.
- The students are mostly clever. However, some don't work hard enough.

٢ أسماء الدول التي تتكون من كلمة واحدة لا تأخذ (the) إلا إذا كان الاسم جمعاً فتوضع قبله (the) مثل:

- ex. - The Netherlands هولندا - The Philippines الفلبين

٣ يأتي بعد (look forward to) اسم أو (inf. + ing):

- ex. - I look forward from my uncle.
a. to hear b. to hearing c. of hearing d. hearing

٤ لاحظ استخدام (whatever):

Whatever + اسم + فاعل + فعل

- ex. - Whatever work she had, she found time to play the piano.

Whatever + فاعل + فعل .

- ex. - You must do whatever I say.

Whatever + فعل .

- ex. - I'll always support you whatever happens.

٥ الكلمات التالية يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد ويعوض عنها ضمير جمع

Someone - somebody - anyone - anybody - everyone -
everybody - no one - nobody

- ex. - Somebody has knocked on the door but when I opened the door, they have gone.
ex. - A disabled person is someone who cannot use part of their body in the way that most people can.

٦ يُمكن استخدام (do - does - did) قبل الفعل الأساسي (المصدر) في المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط بشكل بلاغي للتأكيد أو لإعطاء قوة للمعنى:

- ex. - I do know who broke the window. - He did shout at me.

Exercise On Language Hints

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Most of my friends like football, but prefer handball.
a. some b. any c. every d. each
2. A: Do you know who broke my glasses ? B: Yes, Sama them.
a. broke b. did break c. does break d. a & b
3. Everyone waiting for your speech.
a. has b. have c. is d. are
4. Someone is ringing the doorbell. I will see who
a. she is b. he is c. they are d. are they
5. I'll help you whatever
a. is happened b. happens c. happening d. a & b
6. Whatever you make, I will support you.
a. choose b. chose c. chosen d. choice
7. is an Arab country.
a. Lebanon b. The Lebanon c. Lebanese d. a & b
8. is an Asian country.
a. Philippines b. The Philippines
c. Philippines' d. a & b

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

☆ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(طفا ٢٠٢٣)

In "Hamlet", a play written by William Shakespeare, Gertrude was the Queen of Denmark two months after the death of the King of Denmark. She married Claudius, his brother. She did not know that Claudius was evil. People believed that he had killed his brother so that he himself might become the king. Hamlet was her son. Hamlet loved his dead father and was very sad at his death. His mother's marriage made Hamlet even more unhappy. He became tired of the world; he had no more pleasure in the things he used to do. He stopped wanting to read, to play and to do all the things that young men love to do.

Neither Hamlet's mother nor Claudius could do anything to make

Hamlet happier. The ghost of Hamlet's father **appeared** and told his son that Claudius killed him while sleeping. He poured poisonous liquid into his ears and caused his death. He told him that he must kill his uncle but he asked him not to hurt his mother. Hamlet pretended to be mad. He thought of a plan. He asked some visiting actors to act a story representing circumstances similar to those described by the ghost, under which Claudius poisoned Hamlet's father. When the play was presented as planned, the performance clearly annoyed Claudius. Hamlet confronted his mother with her undeserved loyalty to Claudius who began to feel that his life was in danger. So, Claudius sent Hamlet to England with secret orders that Hamlet be executed by the King of England.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. The underlined word "He" refers to
 a. Claudius b. Hamlet c. his friend d. his father
2. In order to be sure that his uncle killed his father, Hamlet
 a. became tired of the world
 b. had no more pleasure in the things he used to do
 c. stopped wanting to read
 d. asked the actors to act the story which is like the death of his father
3. After Hamlet had met the ghost, he pretended to be
 a. sad b. insane c. tired d. pleased
4. The ghost of Hamlet's father appeared and told his that Claudius killed him while sleeping.
 a. son b. daughter c. wife d. brother
5. People believed that he had killed his brother
 a. to marry his wife b. because he hated him
 c. to become the king d. because he loved blood
6. How was Hamlet's father killed?
 a. His ears were cut
 b. His wife killed him.
 c. A poisonous liquid was poured into his ears
 d. He was very ill.
7. The antonym of the word "**appeared**" is
 a. came out b. vanished c. came into sight d. seemed longer

2 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

* Model formal Email (SB page 57)

From : christine.harrison@mail.com

To : info@crispins.com

Subject : Questions about disabled access at your company

Dear Sir / Madam ,

I am writing because I would like to apply for a job at your company. However, I have a disability and need to use a wheelchair. Could you tell me if your company is suitable for disabled employees? Do you have ramps and lifts? Do your staff receive training in how to support disabled colleagues?

If your company is suitable for a disabled person like me, I will apply for a job in the sales department which I am qualified for.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Kind regards ,

Christine Harrison

* Model professional Email (WB page 117)

From : info@crispins.com

To : christine.harrison@mail.com

Subject : Reply to a job application

Dear Christine Harrison,

Thank you for your interest in working for our company. I am writing to reply to your questions.

Our company already has two disabled employees. We do not have a lift but we have ramps to both of the floors in our building. All of our staff are trained to support our disabled colleagues.

I would like to know which qualifications you have.

Could you come in for an interview next week?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Kind regards,

Medhat Shoukry

Manager

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. The sincere citizen is the person who devotes themselves and their efforts for the sake of their fatherland so that it may progress and flourish like developed states.

(شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. إن المواطن العادي هو ذلك الذي يكرس نفسه وجهوده من أجل وطنه لكي يتقدم ويزدهر مثل الدول المتقدمة.
- b. إن المواطن المخلص هو ذلك الذي يكرس نفسه وجهوده من أجل وطنه لكي يتقدم ويزدهر مثل الدول المتقدمة.
- c. إن المواطن المخلص هو ذلك الذي يكرس نفسه وماله من أجل وطنه لكي يتقدم ويزدهر مثل الدول المتقدمة.
- d. إن المواطن الصالح هو ذلك الذي يتبرع بنفسه وجهوده من أجل وطنه لكي يتقدم ويزدهر مثل الدول النامية.

2. Accepting others is a highly civilized aspect that we all should have. You can express your opinion and respect the opinions of others as well.

(كفر الزيات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. إن تقبل الآخر جانب شديد التحضر قد يكون لدينا جميعاً، ويمكنك أن تُعبر عن رأيك مع احترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.
- b. إن تقبل الآخر جانب شديد التحضر يجب أن يكون لدينا جميعاً، ويمكنك أن تُعبر عن رأيك وليس بالضرورة احترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.
- c. إن تقبل الآخر جانب حضاري شاق يجب أن يكون لدينا جميعاً، ويمكنك أن تُعبر عن رأيك مع احترام آراء النفس أيضاً.
- d. إن تقبل الآخر جانب شديد التحضر يجب أن يكون لدينا جميعاً، ويمكنك أن تُعبر عن رأيك مع احترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

١. لم يكد الرياضيون الفائزون بميداليات أوليمبية يصلون مصر حتى تم تكريمهم على نطاق واسع، كما مُنحوا أوسمة رفيعة.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Hardly the athletes who won the Olympic medals had arrived in Egypt when they were honored on a large scale. They were also given high rewards.
- b. Hardly had that athletes who won the Olympic medals arrived in Egypt than they were honored on a large scale. They were also given high awards.
- c. Hardly had the athletes who had won the Olympic medals arrived in Egypt when they were honored on a large scale. They were also given high rewards.
- d. Hardly had the athletes who had won the Olympic medals arrived in Egypt than they were honored on a large scale. They were also given high rewards.

٢. يبذل الوالدین قصارى جهدهم لتوفير حياة سعيدة آمنة لنا، لذا يجب علينا إسعادهم وطاعتهم واتباع نصائحهم.
(سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Our parents do their best to provide us with a happy, secure life. So, we should please them, obey them and follow their advice.
- b. Our parents do their best to secure our live happily. So, we should please them, obey them and follow their advice.
- c. Our parents do their best to rescue our happy, secure life. So, we should please them, obey them and follow their advice.
- d. Our parents exert efforts to live a happy secure life. So, we should release them, obey them and follow their advice.

PART III

JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

campaign

- **campaign (n)** قتال / معركة / حملة عسكرية
 - The campaign succeeded in arresting the terrorists.
 - **campaign (for / against) (n)** حملة (لصالح / ضد)
 - The government is running a campaign against Virus C.
- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:**
- launch / begin a campaign يبدأ حملة
 - run / carry out a campaign يقوم بحملة
 - lead a campaign يقود حملة
 - a national campaign حملة قومية
 - an advertising / marketing campaign حملة إعلانية / تسويقية
- **campaign (for / against) (v)** يناصر / يطالب / يقوم بحملة لصالح / ضد
 - The workers campaigned for less working hours.
 - **campaigner(for) (n)** مدافع - مؤيد - مناصر
 - Martin Luther King was a great campaigner for equality المساواة.

compete

- **compete (for / to / against / with / in) (v)** ينافس / يتنافس (من أجل / لى / ضد / مع / فى)
 - The two shops are competing for attracting more customers.
 - The two shops are competing to attract more customers.
 - The USA and Russia have always competed in space technology.
 - Mercedes is competing against BMW in the American market.

• competition (n)

- The weight lifting competition starts tomorrow.

مسابقة

• competition (n)

- The Egyptian athletes are preparing for the next competition.

منافسة - تنافس

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- face a competition
- fair / unfair competition
- take part in a competition
- have / hold a competition
- run a competition

يواجه منافسة
منافسة شريفة / غير شريفة
يشارك في مسابقة
يقيم مسابقة
ينظم مسابقة

• competitor (n)

- There are 18 competitors for the gold medal.

منافس - مُتسابق

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She doesn't speak English her sister.
a. in addition b. as good as c. as well d. as well as
2. Everyone ready for the race.
a. are b. is c. have d. has
3. Someone has forgotten money on the table.
a. his b. her c. their d. its
4. The majority of the staff work hard, but some lazy.
a. are b. is c. have d. has
5. Some conservationists campaign the rights of animals.
a. of b. by c. to d. for

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I spent three hours studying the files me.
a. which sent to b. sent to
c. which you sent them d. you sent them
2. Do you have an idea Ahmed has left the front door key?
a. that b. what c. where d. which
3. We know a lot of people lives are miserable.
a. who b. when c. where d. whose
4. Ayman and Ashraf, visit to Aswan was enjoyable, decided to stay there for much longer.
a. which b. that c. who d. whose

Test on Unit 11

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه

التقييمات
الشهرية في
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. Many charity work to support equal job opportunities. (الخصوص ٢٠٢٣)
a. campaigners b. sociologists c. racers
d. activists e. gardeners

2. "Some amazing athletes compete in different sports." The synonyms of "compete" are (غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)
a. bully b. contest c. give up
d. surrender e. challenge

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Winning the silver medal in powerlifting was the greatest of his life. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. achievement b. campaign c. competitor d. activist

2. Athletes with can take part in the Paralympics.
a. abilities b. disabilities c. records d. medals

3. He wants to in the national swimming championship next year.
a. remove b. compete c. campaign d. cycle (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)

4. The company has launched an advertising to increase its sales.
a. campaign b. battle c. collection d. complaint (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

5. You need to be hard-working and organized to your goals in life.
a. interview b. request c. achieve d. retire

6. He won't accept this offer. Don't put much on him.
a. pressure b. diversity c. staff d. difference

7. You can an email with "I look forward to hearing from you".
a. sign off b. support c. train d. request

8. The residents stay ended have to renew it. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. which b. what c. whose d. who

9. Soiman is always making noise, makes me angry with him. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
a. which b. that c. where d. who

10. The man car is white is my teacher. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
a. who b. whose c. that d. which

11. I will never forget the brave young man we met in the park last month. (إدكو ٢٠٢٣)
a. who's b. whose c. whom d. where

12. The cars are made in Japan are expensive. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
a. who b. which c. whose d. where

13. Alexandria, I visit every summer, is indeed my favourite destination. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
a. where b. which c. to which d. what

14. The market by the sea is the place you can buy really fresh fish.
a. which b. when c. where d. that

(المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (السويس - جنوب ٢٠٢٣)

If you have to miss one meal a day, which meal will cause you the fewest health problems if you don't eat it?

Most people, if they are given the choice, especially people who are on a diet or very busy, will choose to skip breakfast. Many experts in the field of health consider breakfast the most important meal of the day. If we eat good breakfast, we will have energy to begin our working day. However, many people skip breakfast or take a cup of tea instead of a well-balanced meal.

Special tests and a recent study were set up to show the importance of breakfast. The result showed that if a person eats an adequate breakfast, they will work more efficiently and more productively than if they skip breakfast or eat a very poor one.

The study showed that if school children eat a good breakfast before going to school, they will learn more quickly and be able to concentrate more on their lessons for a longer period of time. The study also showed that, contrary to what many people believe, if you skip breakfast, you won't lose weight. This is because people become so hungry that they eat too much for lunch and end up gaining, not losing weight.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. According to the passage, when we don't eat breakfast,
a. our bodies lose energy b. we lose weight
c. our concentration increases d. we begin our working day
2. set up special tests to show the importance of a balanced meal before going to work.
a. Hungry people b. Teachers c. Students d. Experts
3. Most people would skip breakfast for
a. special tests b. a snack c. a cup of tea d. a poor breakfast
4. The underlined word "skip" is similar in meaning to
a. take b. give c. miss d. have
5. People may eat too much when
a. they don't eat breakfast b. they do not do morning exercise
c. they work less d. they are fat
6. Special tests were organized to analyse how participants' bodies functioned when they had
a. skipped breakfasts b. had supper
c. eaten special breakfasts d. had all three meals
7. Our bodies need
a. skipping breakfast b. a cup of tea
c. a well-balanced breakfast d. much food

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Charities have an undeniable role in providing help and support for the poor and needy, so we should boost them both financially and with our efforts.

(العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دوراً غير أساسي في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين، لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
- b. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دوراً لا يُنكر في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين، لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
- c. تلعب المنظمات الحكومية دوراً لا يُنكر في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين، لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
- d. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دوراً لا يُنكر في توفير توظيف للفقراء والمحتاجين، لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لقد تم استقبال العديد من الاختراعات العظيمة في البداية بالسخرية والإنكار ولكن بعد ذلك أصبحت حقائق مُسلّم بها لبي كل الناس على مرّ العصور.

(شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Many great inventions were initially received with ridicule and welcome, but after that they became taken-for-granted facts for all people over the years.
- b. Many great inventions were initially received with ridicule and denial, but after that they became taken-for-rejected facts for all people over the years.
- c. Many great inventions were eventually received with ridicule and denial, but after that they became taken-for-granted facts for all people over the years.
- d. Many great inventions were initially received with ridicule and denial, but after that they became taken-for-granted facts for all people over the years.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the pirates' question ?

2. If you were Dr Livesey would you look after the ill pirates ? Why/ Why not ?

3. Why did Jim decide to stay with Silver, and not leave with Dr Livesey ?

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“The role of teachers in the society”

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Enas suggests studying English with her friend Rana.

Enas : Shall we study English together tomorrow at home ?

Rana : (1)

Enas : Why won't you be able to come ?

Rana : (2)

Enas : A picnic! (3) ?

Rana : I'll have a picnic with my cousins.

Enas : (4) ?

Rana : Next Monday if it suits you.

Enas : Ok. It is fine.

2. Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

“Global warming problem”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. (A) Translate into Arabic :

Technology has enabled us to invent modern medical equipment that has a great role in performing successful surgical operations.

.....

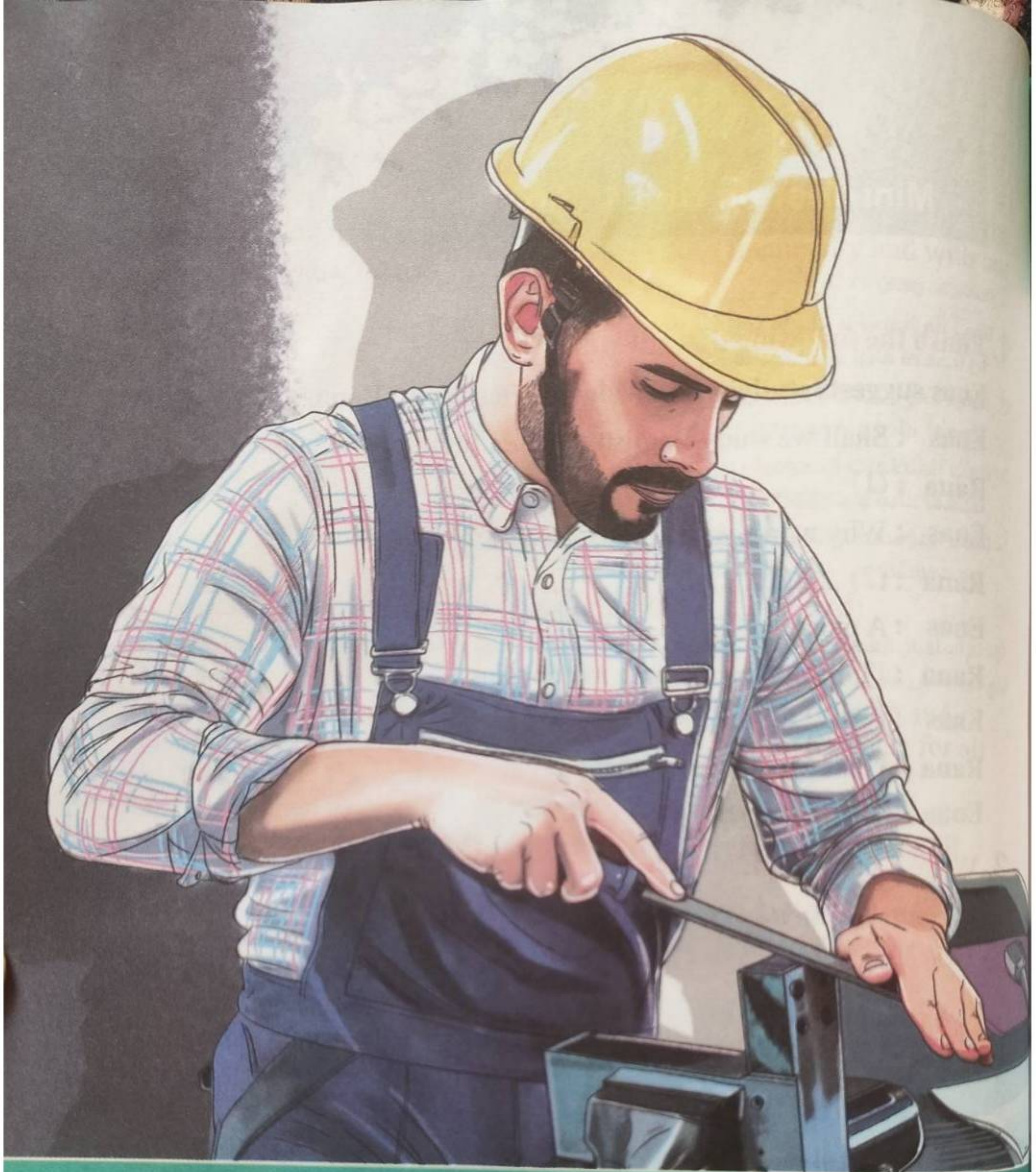
.....

(B) Translate into English :

تزايد أعداد السائحين إلى مصر يبشر بمستقبل مشرق لهذه الصناعة.

.....

.....



UNIT 12

Hard work

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 120 : 125

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- ☉ Reading : A summary of Silas Marner
- ☉ Writing : A book review ; a short story
- ☉ Listening : A conversation about how people work
- ☉ Speaking : Explaining mysteries

- ☉ Language : Modal verbs of possibility can't, might, must
- ☉ Critical thinking : Research and present answers to a famous mystery



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

disappear(ed)(v)	يختفي	mystery(n)	لُغْز - بسر غامض
engaged(adj)	خاطب/مخطوبة	solve(d) (v)	يُحل
guilty(adj)	مُذنب	weaver(n)	نَسَّاج / حائك

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

alone (adj – adv)	بمفرده	local(adj)	محلي
Artificial	الذكاء الاصطناعي	look(ed) (v)	يبدو - ينظر
Intelligence (AI)(n)		machinery(n)	آلات
call(ed) (v)	يُستَمَى - يتصل - ينادي	manual(adj)	يدوي
cloth(n)	القماش	operate(d) (v)	يُشغَل - يُدير
conditions(n)	ظروف	ordinary(adj)	عادي - معتاد
confused(adj)	مُتَحِير - مُرتَبك	pale(adj)	شاحب - باهت
cottage(n)	كوخ	prove – proved –	يُثبِت
crazy(adj)	مجنون	proved/ proven (v)	
customer(n)	زبون	realise(d) (v)	يُدْرِك
earlier(adv)	منذ - قبل ذلك	review(n)	عرض نقدي - معالجة نقدية
early years	السنوات الأولى - مستقبل العمر	sick(adj)	مريض
efficiently(adv)	بكفاءة	special(adj)	خاص - مُميّز
empty(ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - يُفَرِّغ	steal – stole – stolen (v)	يسرق
fireplace(n)	مدفأة	survive(d)	يبقى على قيد الحياة - ينجو
hide - hid -	يُخفي	twist(ed) (v)	يلوي / يَنْزِم
hidden(n)		unpleasant(adj)	غير سار
instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	village(n)	قرية
join(ed) in (phr. v)	يتحد - يشارك	villager(n)	شخص قروي
labour(n)	عمل	whole (adj – n)	بالكامل - كل

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
disappear(ed)(v) يختفي	become impossible to see or find
engaged(adj) خاطب/مخطوبة	to be in a relationship to get married.

guilty (adj)	مُذِيب	describes someone who has broken a rule or a law
mystery (n)	لُغْز - سِر غامض	something that is difficult to explain or understand
solve (d) (v)	يُحِل	find an answer to a problem
weaver (n)	نَسَّاج / حائك	a person who makes clothes by twisting wool together

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- He was arrested as he was of robbing a bank. (أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
a. active b. guilty c. bored d. engaged
- Sara is to a young doctor called Mustafa.
a. abandoned b. engaged c. main d. strange
- We've been trying to this problem for several weeks.
a. solve b. disappear c. recommend d. prove
- The crime is still a The police are still working on it.
a. whole b. monster c. village d. mystery
- My grandfather was a clever who made fine pullovers.
a. monster b. page turner c. weaver d. character
- The moon has behind the dark cloud.
a. solved b. disappeared c. recommended d. proved

2 Important Vocabulary

- Heba hasn't eaten anything for two days, so she looks (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
a. ball b. plot c. pole d. pale
- Only two little children after the serious accident. (كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)
a. destroyed b. damaged c. survived d. broke
- Living in a is better for people who prefer simple life.
a. whole b. monster c. village d. mystery
- Weavers are good at wool together to make cloth.
a. solving b. disappearing c. adopting d. twisting
- I want to discuss the problem as a, not only a single part of it.
a. whole b. monster c. village d. mystery
- The farmer keeps his tools in a
a. labour b. fireplace c. cottage d. condition
- In general, doing work needs a lot of effort.
a. pale b. manual c. local d. sick
- In unit 12, I have learnt how to write a detailed book expressing what I think of it.
a. review b. shape c. title d. sale

15. Artificial will play a more important role in the future.
 a. Review b. Machinery c. Cloth d. Intelligence
16. He didn't go to prison because his lawyer that he was not guilty.
 a. refused b. denied c. proved d. disproved
17. I'm really I can't tell you what to do.
 a. close b. confused c. abandoned d. local
18. Doing manual is usually tiring.
 a. labour b. fireplace c. cottage d. condition
19. I last met Ahmed yesterday. I had met him five days
 a. ago b. earlier c. since d. yet
20. He started his career as a journalist in a newspaper.
 a. pale b. manual c. local d. crazy
21. This poor man lives in miserable
 a. labours b. fireplaces c. machinery d. conditions
22. All my cousins in to help me prepare for my wedding.
 a. joined b. lied c. forgot d. recommended
23. This factory has heavy
 a. intelligence b. machinery c. cloth d. review
24. He reported that his motorbike had been
 a. shaped b. shared c. stolen d. recommended
25. I my daughter Sama because it was the name of one of my polite and intelligent students.
 a. called b. told c. adopted d. abandoned
26. Children with disabilities need care.
 a. pale b. manual c. local d. special
27. In winter, most European families sit by the
 a. labour b. fireplace c. cottage d. condition
28. She used a clean piece of to clean the table.
 a. intelligence b. machinery c. cloth d. review

3 Definitions

29. To is to find an answer to a problem.
 a. abandon b. solve c. weave d. disappear
30. A is a person who makes clothes by twisting wool together.
 a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner
31. To means to become impossible to see or find.
 a. abandon b. solve c. weave d. disappear

32. describes someone who has broken a rule or a law.
 a. Guilty b. Close c. Mysterious d. Alone
33. To be is to be in a relationship to get married.
 a. guilty b. engaged c. mysterious d. innocent
34. A is something that is difficult to explain or understand.
 a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

be	engaged to	تتم خطبته / خطبتها	live	lonely lives	يعيشون في عزلة
	married to	يتزوج من	look / be	sad	يبدو حزينا
do	practice	يتمرّن	solve	a crime	يفك غموض الجريمة
earn / make	money	يكسب مال		take	a mystery
			care of		يرعى / يعتني بـ
feel	confused	يشعر بالحيرة	tell	a story	يحكي قصة
	sorry for	يشعر بالأسف / بالحرز على	have	an accident	يتعرض لحادث
win	first place	يفوز بالمركز الأول		an argument with	يتجادل مع - يحتد علي

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
disappear	vanish
disappear	die out, die
disappear	get lost, go missing
earlier	former, previous
guilty	convicted
mystery	secrecy, ambiguity

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
disappear	appear, come out
disappear	survive
earlier	later
guilty	innocent, guiltless
prove	disprove
solve	complicate

4

Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

disappear		
disappear(v)	يختفي	– I do not know why he has disappeared.
disappearance(n)	اختفاء	– I do not know the cause of his disappearance.
guilty		
guilt(n)	الذنب	– He has a feeling of guilt.
guilty(adj)	مُذنب	– He feels guilty.
mystery		
mystery(n)	لُغز - سير غامض	– The cause of the fire is still a mystery.
mysterious(adj)	غامض - غير مفهوم	– The cause of the fire is still mysterious.
solve		
solve(v)	يحل	– I solved the problem.
solution(n)	حل	– I found a solution to the problem.
weaver		
weave(v)	ينسج	– He weaves woolen pullovers.
weaver(n)	نَسَّاج / حائك	– He is a weaver.

5

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

angry with	غاضب من	guilty of	مُذنب بـ
(be) gone	يضيع	have a special skill	لديه مهارة خاصة
(be) in a hurry	يكون مُتَعَجِّلاً	in the early years	في السنوات الأولى
compared to	مقارنة بـ	meet ... for lunch	يقابل ... على الغداء
disappear from under	يختفي من تحت	new to the village	جديد في / وافد جديد إلى القرية
do something bad	يفعل شيئاً سيئاً	sure about	متأكد من
feel sorry for/about	يشعر بالأسف علي	take care of	يرعى / يعتني بـ
friendly to	ودود مع		
work hard	يعمل بجد		

6

Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

care about	يهتم بـ	manage to	يتمكن أن - ينجح في
come back	يعود	move to	ينتقل إلى
come from	يأتي من	offer to	يُغْرِض أن
come to	يأتي إلي - يصل إلى	plan to	يخطط أن
disappear from	يختفي من	remember about	يتذكر ما يخص

forget about	ينسي ما يخص	return to	يُعيد / يُعيد إلى
hide ... from	يُخفي ... من	stay with	يقيم مع
join in	يشارك - يتفق - يتجد	steal ... from	يسرق ... من
look after	يرعى - يعتني بـ		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

hard / hardly

لاحظ الفرق بين (hard) و (hardly) :

جاد - شاق - صعب - قاسي

• hard (adj)

- He is a hard worker. جاد
- Mum does a lot of hard work every day. شاق
- The driving test is hard to me. صعب

• hard (adv)

بجد - بشدة

- He works hard. بجد
- The bully hit him hard on the head. بشدة

• hardly (adv)

بالكاد - قلماً

- He hardly arrives on time. قلماً

لاحظ أن :

• hardly... any / hardly at all = almost no

- He hardly does any work. = He hardly works at all.

cloth / clothes

لاحظ الفرق بين (cloth) و (clothes) :

• cloth

قماش (كلمة لا تُعد وتُعامل معاملة المفرد)

- In the past, cloth was made manually by weavers.

• clothes

ملابس (اسم جمع دائماً وليس له مفرد)

- Your clothes are fashionable, Ashraf.

earlier / ago

لاحظ الفرق بين (ago) و (earlier) :

• ago

منذ مدة معينة وحتى الآن

- I visited the pyramids three months ago. (قمت بالزيارة قبل الآن بثلاث شهور)

• earlier

منذ مدة معينة وحتى وقت معين في الماضي

- Last Friday, I found the money I lost three months earlier.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. I don't know why she sad.
a. breaks b. makes c. tells d. looks e. is
2. The police are trying to the mystery of the crime.
a. have b. solve c. find a solution to
d. take e. do
3. He a lot of money as a doctor.
a. makes b. does c. is d. earns e. solves
4. When something is mysterious, it
a. is difficult to understand b. seems clear
c. is obvious d. is easy to understand
e. isn't clear
5. "Dinosaurs disappeared long ago." The word 'disappeared' here means
a. survived b. still exists c. no longer exist
d. died out e. exist
6. Mai Omar. They are going to get married.
a. is engaged to b. is engaged with
c. has got engaged to d. got engaged with
e. was married to
7. Although she has done nothing wrong, she
a. feels happy b. feels guilty
c. has a sense of guilt d. is surely guilty
e. looks pleased
8. He lives
a. alone b. lonely c. in a lonely house
d. a lone e. loneliness

• **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He first place and got the gold medal.
a. won b. felt c. did d. found
2. I need to some more practice.
a. win b. feel c. do d. break
3. She an argument with her sister.
a. had b. solved c. took d. did
4. The story you have us is very interesting, grandma.
a. broken b. made c. told d. looked
5. "This evidence proves that he is innocent." The verb 'proves' is the antonym of
a. approves b. improves c. disproves d. a & c

6. 'Innocent' is to '.....' as 'earlier' is to 'later'.
 a. late b. early c. kind d. guilty
7. The crime is still a and the criminal is still unknown.
 a. mysterious b. mystery c. guilt d. guilty
8. The crime is still and the criminal is still unknown.
 a. mysterious b. mystery c. guilt d. guilty
9. You should care of your appearance.
 a. get b. do c. make d. take
10. He is guilty robbing السطو على the bank.
 a. of b. to c. from d. with
11. Some important papers have disappeared the safe الخزينة.
 a. from b. of c. on d. at
12. She works
 a. hard b. hardly c. harden d. b & c
13. She is a worker.
 a. hard b. hardly c. harden d. b & c
14. She wastes any time.
 a. hard b. hardly c. harden d. b & c

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Silas Marner

Lesson 1 SB page 62

Silas Marner is a **weaver**⁽¹⁾ who lives in the **village**⁽²⁾ of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very **friendly**⁽³⁾ to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives **alone**⁽⁴⁾.



Fifteen years **earlier**⁽⁵⁾, Silas had been **engaged**⁽⁶⁾ to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was **taking care of**⁽⁷⁾ a friend who was sick, a bag of money **disappeared**⁽⁸⁾ from under the friend's bed. A man called William Dane finds the **empty**⁽⁹⁾ bag and Silas's friends decide that he is **guilty**⁽¹⁰⁾ of **stealing**⁽¹¹⁾ the money. Later, William marries Sarah **instead**⁽¹²⁾, and Silas decides to **move**⁽¹³⁾ to the village of Raveloe.

- (1) نسّاج / حائك
- (2) قرية
- (3) ودود
- (4) بمفرده
- (5) قبل ذلك
- (6) يخطب
- (7) يرعى
- (8) يختفي
- (9) فارغ
- (10) مُذنب
- (11) سرقة
- (12) بدلاً من ذلك
- (13) ينتقل

The only thing he **cares about**⁽¹⁴⁾ is his work as a weaver. **All**⁽¹⁵⁾ Silas wants to do is work as hard as he can to **earn**⁽¹⁶⁾ as much money as he can. The richest man in Raveloe, Squire Cass, has two sons: Dunstan and Godfrey. The two sons have their own problems which they **hide**⁽¹⁷⁾ from their father and they always want to have more money.

One night, a bag of gold is stolen from Silas's house and the **whole**⁽¹⁸⁾ village **joins in**⁽¹⁹⁾ to look for it. The **local**⁽²⁰⁾ people feel sorry for him and are more friendly to him. Silas is angry and wants to solve the **mystery**⁽²¹⁾.

(14) يهتم بـ

(15) كل ما

(16) يكسب

(17) يخفي

(18) بالكامل - كل

(19) يتحد - يشارك

(20) محلي

(21) اللغز

Lesson 2 SB page 64

One evening, Silas returns to his **cottage**⁽¹⁾ and finds a small girl sleeping near the fireplace. The girl is cold and hungry. Silas thinks something must have happened to her parents. They might have had an accident. He decides to **look after**⁽²⁾ her. He **calls**⁽³⁾ her Eppie. The other people in the village are surprised, but they think that Silas can't be a bad person because he wants to look after the girl. They also help him.

Silas is now happier. He **realises**⁽⁴⁾ that his new daughter is more **important**⁽⁵⁾ to him than gold. When Eppie is eighteen, Silas's gold is found and returned to him.

It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago because he did not want to ask his father for money. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be **angry with**⁽⁶⁾ him. He and his wife offer to look after Eppie. However, Eppie wants to stay with Silas.

Silas decides to return to his old village with Eppie. He wants to **prove**⁽⁷⁾ that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier. When he arrives, he finds that everything has changed and he can't find anyone that he used to know. Silas feels that he can now **forget**⁽⁸⁾ about this **unpleasant**⁽⁹⁾ part of his history and he returns happily to Raveloe.

(1) كوخ

(2) يعتنى بـ / يرعى

(3) يُسمّى

(4) يُدرك

(5) هام

(6) غاضب من

(7) يُثبِت

(8) ينسى

(9) غير سار

The story of Silas Marner begins in the English **countryside**⁽¹⁾ in the early years of the nineteenth century. There were only a few weavers in the countryside, and they usually looked **pale**⁽²⁾ and thin **compared to**⁽³⁾ the people who worked in the fields. These people didn't **trust**⁽⁴⁾ anyone who was clever and they didn't like anyone who had seen the world outside their small village. Weavers had a **special**⁽⁵⁾ skill and they usually came from large towns, so they often lived **lonely**⁽⁶⁾ lives.

- (1) الريف
- (2) شاحب
- (3) مقارنة بـ
- (4) يثق بـ
- (5) خاص - مُمَيَّز
- (6) وحيد - منعزل

2 Listening Text

Lesson 1 SB page 63

Listen to a conversation about Silas Marner that could have happened between two people in Raveloe

Woman : Hello **husband**⁽¹⁾ ! Come and sit down, and I will get you some water.

Man : Look ! It's eight o'clock at night and Silas Marner is still working !

Woman : He must have got another new **customer**⁽²⁾.

Man : Yes, that must be why he's working so late. I don't understand why he always works so much.

Woman : He might have lost a lot of money while he was living in the north.

Man : But all his customers are so happy with the things he makes. He can't have lost money. I've heard that he could stop working now if he wanted to - he's got bags and bags full of gold coins.

Woman : Really ? I just don't really like **weavers**⁽³⁾. I think **weaving**⁽⁴⁾ is a very strange job to have. Why can't he work as a farmer or a fisherman instead of working with these crazy new machines ?

Man : I know what you mean. What is happening to the world today ? Soon there won't be any jobs for people like us who don't want anything to do with these machines.



- (1) زوج
- (2) زبون - عميل
- (3) النساجون
- (4) الحياكة - النسيج

3 Video script section

One hundred and sixty years ago, hard work would have looked very different for an **ordinary**⁽¹⁾ person. **Manual labour**⁽²⁾ could be very difficult; the **machinery**⁽³⁾ was often heavy and dangerous to **operate**⁽⁴⁾, and working **conditions**⁽⁵⁾ were not good.

Today, hard work can look very different. We are able to work more **efficiently**⁽⁶⁾ with the help of modern machinery and technology.

Modern workplaces are even using **artificial intelligence**⁽⁷⁾, so that computers can do much more work for us. The workplace is changing, and technology will continue to be part of the workplace of the future.

The question is : Are we still working hard or are computers doing all the work for us ?

(1) عادي

(2) العمل اليدوي

(3) الآلات

(4) يقوم بتشغيل

(5) أحوال - ظروف

(6) بكفاءة

(7) الذكاء الاصطناعي

PART IV LANGUAGE

1 Present Deduction :

الاستنتاج في المضارع :

١ للتعبير عن استنتاج قوي في المضارع نستخدم :

must لابد / **can't** لا يمكن + **inf.**

ex. - He has a villa and three cars. He must be rich. He can't be poor.

- تدل التعبيرات التالية على التأكد :

- I feel sure / certain أشعر بالتأكد

- certainly / surely / definitely من المؤكد مستحيل impossible -

ex. - It is impossible that he has left home. He must be at home. He can't be outdoors.

٢ نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف في المضارع (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد) :

may من المحتمل / **might** من الممكن + **inf.**

- I don't know where Sama is now. She may be at home. She might be out.

- تدل التعبيرات التالية على عدم التأكد :

- I'm not sure / not certain لست متأكد

- perhaps / Maybe ربما

- It is probable / likely / possible من المحتمل

- I don't think / believe لا أظن

- I don't know لست أدري

- I'm not sure what is wrong with Ahmed. He may / might be ill.

٢ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث مستمر في المضارع نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

must / can't / may / might + be + (inf.+ing)

- ex. - A: Why doesn't Amr answer the phone?
- B: I don't know. He might be having a shower.

2 Past Deduction :

الاستنتاج في الماضي :

١ للتعبير عن استنتاج قوى في الماضي نستخدم:

must لابد / can't لا يمكن + have + p.p.

- ex. - Abdu looked very happy after the exam. He must have done well.
- He was in London last Thursday. He can't have attended the meeting in Cairo that day.

٢ نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف في الماضي (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد):

may من المحتمل / might من الممكن + have + p.p.

- ex. - I have no idea why he was so sad. He may / might have heard some bad news.

٢ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

must / can't / may / might + have been + inf.+ing

- ex. - A: I phoned him three times this morning, but there was no answer.
- B: I don't know why, but he might have been sleeping.

Extra Notes

should / shouldn't

٤ نستخدم (should / shouldn't + have + p.p.) للتعبير عن الانتقاد أو اللوم على موقف أو حدث وقع في الماضي :

- ex. - You should have arrived a bit earlier. The manager was very angry.
- You shouldn't have shouted at your sister like that. She cried a lot.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She didn't take her handbag home with her. She in a hurry.
a. must have been b. can't have been c. can't be d. could be
2. Ahmed has just injured his leg while riding a bike. He have fallen off.
a. should b. might c. can't d. must

3. The man I saw with you yesterday..... Ali. Ali was in Alex.
a. was b. must be
c. can't have been d. must have been
4. She always gets the full mark in all her exams. She clever.
a. must be b. must have been
c. can't have been d. might be
5. Mr Ashraf be a very friendly teacher. All his students like him.
a. may b. can't c. might d. must
6. The thief away soon after he had robbed the bank. There's no sign of him now.
a. must run b. mustn't have run
c. must have run d. mustn't have ran
7. Most of the pupils can't understand this lesson. It difficult.
a. can't be b. can't have been
c. must be d. must have been
8. I have just seen Hesham in front of his house, so he be abroad.
a. can't b. mustn't c. can d. must
9. I'm not sure, but I think I have left my book at school.
a. can b. will c. might d. should
10. Rodayna to London. I saw her half an hour ago in her office in Cairo.
a. must have travelled b. mustn't travel
c. can't have travelled d. must travel
11. It's very late. You shouldn't phone Khaled. He in bed by now.
a. was b. won't be c. can't be d. must be
12. Ahmed is the only one who knew about your success. He you that present.
a. must send b. must have sent
c. can't send d. can't have sent
13. There is no cheese left in the fridge. Someone it.
a. must have eaten b. must eat
c. can't have eaten d. may eat
14. When he arrived, he didn't find his wallet. Someone it.
a. can't have stolen b. can't steal
c. must have stolen d. must steal
15. I am not sure. Mamdouh feeling unwell when he stopped working.
a. might be b. must be
c. must have been d. might have been
16. Ali and Ahmed yesterday; I saw their tickets.
a. must have travelled b. might have travelled
c. could travel d. must travel



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

character(n)	شخصية	page-turner(n)	كتاب شيق / مثير
novel(n)	رواية	plot(n)	حبكة (رواية / مسرحية ...)
pace(n)	وتيرة الأحداث	theme(n)	الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

abandon(ed) (v)	يُفجّر - يترك	laugh(ed) (v)	يضحك
abandoned(adj)	مهجور	legend(n)	أسطورة
across(adv)	عبر	lie(d) (v)	يقع - يوجد
adopt(ed) (v)	يتبنى	lonely(adj)	وحيد - مُنعزل
archaeologist(n)	عالم آثار	monster(n)	وُش
around (adv. - prep.)	حول - حوالى	pharaoh(n)	فرعون
bear(n)	دب	pirate(n)	قراصنة
bury(ied) (v)	يدفن	puzzle(n)	لغز
close(adj)	قريب	recommend(ed) (v)	يُختبّر - يوصي بـ
coast(n)	ساحل	shape(n)	شكل
crime(n)	جريمة	stone(n)	حصاة - حجر
deep(adj)	عميق	then(adv)	حينئذ - آنذاك
distant(adj)	بعيد	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
divide(d) (v)	يُقسّم - ينقسم	unusual(adj)	غير مألوف
equally(adv)	بالتساوي	warehouse(n)	مُخزّن / مُستودع
lake(n)	بحيرة		

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
character(n) شخصية	a person in a story
pace(n) وتيرة الأحداث	how quickly things seem to happen in a story
page-turner(n)	a very exciting book
plot(n) حبكة (رواية / مسرحية ...)	what happens in a story

theme(n) الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية	the main subject or idea in a book
novel(n) رواية	a long written story in which the characters and events أحداث are usually imaginary خيالي

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- In modern life, the of change is very fast.
a. pace b. warehouse c. community d. souvenir
- The of this film is boring, but the music is fantastic.
a. director b. actor c. plot d. name
- You won't be able to put such a down until you have finished it.
a. page-turner b. pacemaker c. weaver d. villager
- This story has a good It is the value of cooperation and teamwork.
a. shape b. solution c. village d. theme
- Jim Hawkins is the main in Treasure Island.
a. monster b. page turner c. weaver d. character
- "Treasure Island" is an exciting I enjoyed reading it.
a. character b. novel c. game d. cottage

2 Important Vocabulary

- Some attacked the ship and stole a treasure from it. (الدلنجات ٢٠٢٣)
a. pilots b. pirates c. pioneers d. parents
- An honest manager should deal with his employees (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
a. locally b. particularly c. equally d. orally
- I that you do this job because I trust you.
a. solve b. disappear c. recommend d. prove
- He his village and moved to Alexandria.
a. adopted b. abandoned c. hid d. called
- You can store the amount of goods you need at this
a. workhouse b. farmhouse c. warehouse d. fashion house
- This is an ancient that has never happened.
a. reality b. truth c. fact d. legend
- Some Indians do not the dead. They burn them instead.
a. pace b. engage c. earn d. bury

14. What you say is a/an I really find it difficult to understand.
 a. event b. community c. puzzle d. shape
15. I thought he lived to his family, but actually he moved to a faraway town.
 a. far b. remote c. close d. distant
16. She lives in a village. It takes long hours to reach it.
 a. traditional b. guilty c. distant d. lonely
17. I apologise for not answering your call. I was taking a shower
 a. now b. currently c. then d. yet
18. The person who killed this child is a, not a human.
 a. whole b. monster c. village d. mystery
19. The manager liked my suggestion, so he it.
 a. adopted b. cheered c. divided d. laughed
20. An apple is round in
 a. community b. event c. puzzle d. shape

3 Definitions

21. A/An is a long written story.
 a. novel b. poem c. article d. theme
22. A is a person in a book, play, film etc.
 a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner
23. is how quickly things seem to happen in a story.
 a. Plot b. Theme c. Pace d. Solution
24. A is a book that is so exciting that you want to read it quickly.
 a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner
25. A is the events that form the main story of a book, film, or play.
 a. plot b. theme c. solution d. pace
26. A/An is the main subject or idea in a book.
 a. novel b. poem c. article d. theme

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

break	a rule / law	يخالف اللوائح / القانون	make	notes	يُدوّن ملاحظات
find	happiness	يجد السعادة	take	photos of	يلتقط صور لـ
go	wrong	يُخطئ - يتعطل		place	يحدث

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
abandoned	مهجور
close	قريب
ensure	يضمن
then	حينئذ - آنذاك
	deserted
	distant, faraway
	make sure, make certain, guarantee
	at that (time, point, moment), on that occasion

3 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

abandon	
abandon (v)	يهجر - يترك
abandoned (adj)	مهجور - متروك
	They have abandoned their family house.
	Their family house is abandoned.
village	
village (n)	قرية
villager (n)	قروي
	I come from a small village.
	I am a villager.

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as long as	في نفس طول - طالما	it is beautiful to read	من الجميل قراءتها
BCE = Before Common Era	قبل الميلاد	keep ... for themselves	يحتفظون بـ ... لأنفسهم
be gone	يضيع - يتوه	live on a farm	يعيش في مزرعة
find an answer to	يجد حلًا لـ	nobody knows	لا أحد يعلم
full of surprises	مليء بالمفاجآت	rather than	بدلاً من
good at his job	يُجيد عمله	share it equally	يتقاسمونه بالتساوي
in answer to	لحل - كحل - ردًا على	work better as	يعمل بشكل أفضل كـ

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree to	يوافق على / أن	grow up	يكبر - يترعرع
ask for	يطلب من	know about	يعرف عن
belong to	ينتمي إلى - يخص	look like	يُشبه - يبدو مثل
bring ... back	يُعيد	recommend ... to	يوصي بـ / يُرشح ... لـ
drive across	يقود عبر	seem to	يبدو أن
feel like	يشعر وكأنه - يرغب أن	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
go back	يعود - يرجع	try to	يحاول أن

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

alone / lonely

لاحظ الفرق بين (alone) و (lonely) :

- تُستخدم (alone) كظرف (adv) بمعنى (بمفرده / دون مساعدة أو مشاركة من أحد)
- She did the housework alone.
- تُستخدم (alone) كصفة (adj) بمعنى (وحيد / ليس معه أحد) ولا تأتي قبل الموصوف
- She was alone when the thieves attacked her.
- تُستخدم (lonely) كصفة (adj) بمعنى (منعزل / شاعر بالوحدة) ولا تُستخدم كظرف
- She was a lonely woman with no one to look after her.
- They live in a lonely farmhouse.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ **MRQ** : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. He is in prison because he has broken
a. a rule b. research c. a sport
d. a story e. the law
2. When something is distant, it is
a. close b. nearby c. distance
d. faraway e. a long distance away
3. A book which you like very much to read is
a. a page-turner b. interesting c. interested
d. excited e. boring
4. "I will do this as long as you want me to do it." 'As long as' here can be replaced by
a. if b. when c. unless
d. if not e. without

- ☆ **MCQ** : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She was sad in the party, she felt (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
a. once b. alone c. lonely d. one
2. Finally, she got married and happiness in her new life.
a. won b. broke c. done d. found
3. The photo you have is great.
a. broken b. solved c. taken d. done
4. While he was talking, I some notes.
a. broke b. made c. told d. looked

5. Something wrong and the car stopped.
a. went b. made c. took d. did
6. "He abandoned his family." Which of the following is a synonym of the verb 'abandoned'?
a. joined b. deserted c. vanished d. survived
7. We all agree that most are simple and kind.
a. weave b. weavers c. villages d. villagers
8. People no longer live in that area.
a. confuse b. confused c. abandon d. abandoned
9. I agree what you have said.
a. at b. to c. by d. from
10. In answer your question, Salah deserves the 'Man of the Match' award.
a. of b. with c. to d. about
11. My grandfather lives
a. a lone b. lone c. lonely d. alone
12. My grandfather has a life.
a. a lone b. lone c. lonely d. alone

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Lesson 3 SB page 66

Reviews of Silas Marner

Which reader liked the book more?

1. Ismail

I had to read Silas Marner when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much **then**.⁽¹⁾ However, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more.

It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The **pace**⁽²⁾ was quite fast and the **plot**⁽³⁾ is full of surprises. I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to happen to these **wonderful**⁽⁴⁾ characters. I would **recommend**⁽⁵⁾ this book to anyone who enjoys **mystery**⁽⁶⁾ stories.

(1) حينئذ - آنذاك

(2) وتيرة الأحداث

(3) حبكة

(4) رائع

(5) يُنصَح - يوصي بـ

(6) لغز - سير غامض

2. Nadia

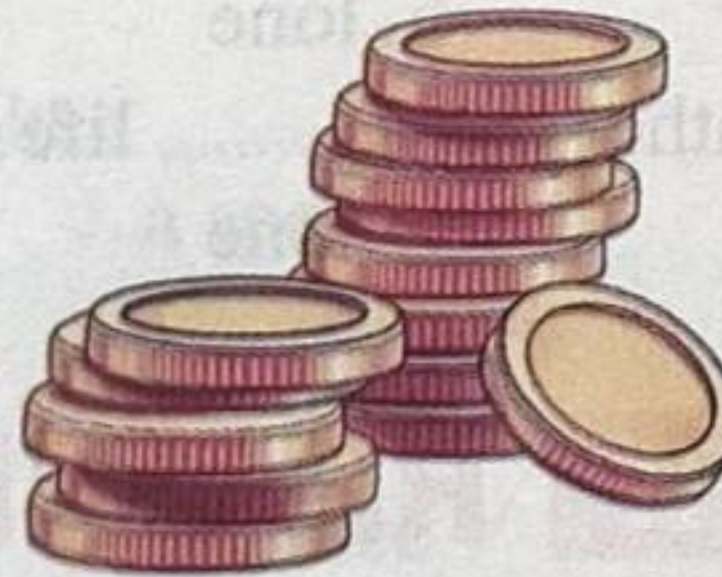
This is a very **interesting**⁽⁷⁾ story of a sad and **lonely**⁽⁸⁾ man who finds **happiness**⁽⁹⁾ when he **adopts**⁽¹⁰⁾ a girl. It isn't a **page-turner**⁽¹¹⁾, but I liked the way Eliot used the **theme**⁽¹²⁾ of **community**⁽¹³⁾. She shows us how some people, like Silas, can **feel like**⁽¹⁴⁾ they don't **belong to**⁽¹⁵⁾ their community but **events**⁽¹⁶⁾ can bring them back into it. However, I think the novel is too long. The story of Silas Marner might have worked better as a short story **rather than**⁽¹⁷⁾ a novel.

- (7) شيق
- (8) وحيد - مُعزل
- (9) السعادة
- (10) يتبنى
- (11) كتاب شيق - مُثير
- (12) موضوع
- (13) المجتمع
- (14) يشعر وكأنه
- (15) ينتمي إلى
- (16) أحداث
- (17) بدلاً من

Lesson 4 SB page 67

What happened to the gold?

Last week, three people, John, Jake and Jane, found gold in an **abandoned**⁽¹⁾ **warehouse**⁽²⁾. They agreed to **share**⁽³⁾ it **equally**⁽⁴⁾. Jane found some boxes and put all the gold in one. John **checked**⁽⁵⁾ to see if anyone else was **close**⁽⁶⁾. John and Jake took it to a house to divide it. Jane went to **ensure**⁽⁷⁾ they had bags for the gold. When she arrived, she opened the box, but it was full of **stones**⁽⁸⁾ and all the gold was gone. What happened to the gold?



- (1) مهجور
- (2) مخزن / مُستودع
- (3) يشارك - يتقاسم
- (4) بالتساوي
- (5) يتحقق - يفحص
- (6) قريب
- (7) يضمن
- (8) حصي - أحجار

Lesson 4 WB page 123

Famous mysteries

1. Cleopatra

Cleopatra VII died in around 30 **BCE**⁽¹⁾. The famous writer, Plutarch, described the beautiful place where she was **buried**⁽²⁾. However, although **archaeologists**⁽³⁾ have found much older **pharaohs**⁽⁴⁾, nobody knows where Cleopatra **lies**⁽⁵⁾ today.



- (1) قبل الميلاد
- (2) يدفن
- (3) عالم آثار
- (4) الفراعنة
- (5) يقع - يوجد

In 2010, a famous archaeologist called Zahi Hawass found many things from Cleopatra's time at Taposiris Magna, near Alexandria, but he did not find Cleopatra. What might have happened to her?

2. Oak Island

Oak Island is on the east **coast**⁽⁶⁾ of Canada. People believe that a **pirate**⁽⁷⁾ called Captain William Kidd stole some treasure and buried it on the island in the seventeenth century. He wanted to **go back**⁽⁸⁾ to the island to get his treasure, but he never returned. Since that time, hundreds of people have **tried to**⁽⁹⁾ find the treasure, **without**⁽¹⁰⁾ success. What might have happened to it?



(6) ساحل

(7) قراصنة

(8) يعود - يرجع

(9) يحاول أن

(10) بدون

(11) عميق

(12) بحيرة

(13) غريب

(14) وحش

(15) بعيد

(16) شكل

(17) غير مألوف

(18) مكان ما

3. Loch Ness

Loch Ness is a very **deep**⁽¹¹⁾ **lake**⁽¹²⁾ in the north of Scotland. Since the seventh century, people have seen a large, **strange**⁽¹³⁾ animal that lives in the deep water of the lake. They call it the Loch Ness **Monster**⁽¹⁴⁾.

Some people have even taken photos of a **distant**⁽¹⁵⁾ **shape**⁽¹⁶⁾ that could be the monster. However, scientists have studied the lake and they have not found anything **unusual**⁽¹⁷⁾. But people still believe that something lives in the lake. Might it be hiding **somewhere**⁽¹⁸⁾?

2 Listening Text

Books' Reviews

Lesson 3 WB page 122

Boy : This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the **mountains**⁽¹⁾. The theme is how life in a village is changing in the **modern**⁽²⁾ world. The pace is very slow and it is quite sad because many **traditional**⁽³⁾ **parts**⁽⁴⁾ of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.

(1) جبال

(2) حديث - معاصر

(3) تقليدي

(4) أجزاء

Girl : This book is very **funny**⁽⁵⁾! It is about a family who drive **across**⁽⁶⁾ **the country**⁽⁷⁾ for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that **go wrong**⁽⁸⁾! The car is stopped by a **bear**⁽⁹⁾, and they meet a lot of **strange**⁽¹⁰⁾ people. My **favourite**⁽¹¹⁾ character is a **police officer**⁽¹²⁾ who is not very good at his job! I **laughed**⁽¹³⁾ a lot and would recommend this book.

- (5) مضحك
- (6) عبر
- (7) الريف
- (8) تسير الأمور بشكل خاطئ
- (9) دب
- (10) غريب
- (11) مفضل
- (12) ضابط شرطة
- (13) يضحك

PART IV LANGUAGE

تنويه راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

General Exercise On Language

• Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Ali injured. There is blood on his face.
a. must be b. must have c. can't have been d. a & b
2. Ali injured. There was blood on his face.
a. must be b. must have been c. can't have been d. a & b
3. Hana is in a very difficult situation. It easy for her.
a. might have been b. might be c. can't have been d. can't be
4. Hana was in a very difficult situation. It easy for her.
a. might have been b. might be c. can't have been d. can't be
5. You've been travelling all day. You be very tired.
a. can't b. may c. might d. must
6. You've been travelling all day. You be relaxed.
a. can't b. may c. might d. must
7. He be French, but I am not sure.
a. must b. might c. can't d. will
8. The criminal must have by the police.
a. arrested b. be arrested
c. been arrested d. being arrested

9. Mona has a fever. She ill.
 a. may be b. can't be c. should be d. must be
10. They are all wearing coats, so it cold when they took the photograph.
 a. must be b. can be
 c. must have been d. can't have been
11. He looks very sad. He the race.
 a. must have won b. can't have won
 c. might win d. must win
12. You look sleepy. You had enough sleep last night.
 a. might have b. must have c. can't have d. may have
13. I've lost one of my keys. I have dropped them somewhere.
 a. can't b. must c. may d. might
14. They haven't lived here for long. They know all their neighbours well.
 a. must b. may c. can't d. might
15. Sama rang but I didn't hear the phone. It have been silent.
 a. must b. can't c. should d. may
16. That restaurant be very good. It's always full of people.
 a. must b. may c. can't d. might

2 Special cases

17. She isn't here. She home to study for tomorrow's test.
 a. can't have gone b. must have gone c. can't go d. must go
18. A: Do you know if he is OK after the accident?
 B: I'm not sure, but he his arm.
 a. might break b. can't have broken
 c. may have broken d. must have broken
19. A: Where is Ahmed, mum?
 B: He at school. He comes back at two, so he will be back in ten minutes.
 a. may be b. must be c. can't be d. is
20. Be careful of that large dog. It you.
 a. might bite b. can't bite c. must bite d. should bite
21. I explained it, but she have understood. My French is very bad.
 a. can't b. can c. must d. shouldn't
22. I didn't know you were going to Rodayna's wedding yesterday. You have told me!
 a. must b. should c. might d. shouldn't

23. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and killed.
 a. may have b. must have been c. could have been d. might have
24. She have misunderstood my directions. Why else is she late?
 a. must b. can't c. should d. could
25. I have written down the number incorrectly. I've just called
 a hospital not the restaurant.
 a. might b. may c. must d. can't
26. They got there already. They only left ten minutes ago.
 a. can't b. must c. must have d. can't have
27. **A:** Ali must have left hospital.
B: He My uncle is visiting him there now.
 a. did b. does c. didn't d. doesn't
28. They have got in through the window - It's on the 21st floor!
 a. might b. can c. can't d. must
29. This our train. It is too early.
 a. must have been b. can't have been c. must be d. can't be

3 Check your understanding

30. "It is not possible that he caught the bus." What does this mean?
 a. He might catch the bus. b. He might not catch the bus.
 c. He can't have caught the bus. d. He might not have caught the bus.
31. "It was impossible that he didn't hear the news." This means
 a. he can't hear the news b. he can't have heard the news
 c. he must hear the news d. he must have heard the news
32. It took her a long time to solve the problem. I think
 a. it might be difficult for her b. it must be difficult for her
 c. it must have been difficult for her d. it must have been easy for her
33. "That house was almost certainly built a few years ago." This means
 a. it must build a few years ago
 b. it must have built a few years ago
 c. it must have been built a few years ago
 d. it must be built a few years ago
34. "I'm quite sure he didn't rob the bank." What does this mean?
 a. He needn't have robbed the bank. b. He mustn't have robbed the bank.
 c. He can't rob the bank. d. He can't have robbed the bank.



PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

look angrily / look angry

١ لاحظ الفرق بين (look angrily) و (look angry) :

- She looked angry after the meeting. كانت تبدو غاضبة.
- She looked angrily at me. كانت تنظر بغضب.

as long as

٢ لاحظ الفرق في استخدام (as long as) :

في نفس طول

• as long as

- It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Mahfouz's other books.

• as long as

طالما - ما دام

- I will work with you as long as you pay me enough money.

what

٣ لاحظ عبارات الوصل التي تبدأ بـ (what) :

• what = the thing that / the things that

- يمكن أن تستخدم (what) كضمير وصل وهي لا تعود على اسم محدد وتكون عبارة الوصل كلها إما فاعل أو مفعول أو مجرور :

- What you do will affect your position. (فاعل)
- I didn't understand what he said. (مفعول)
- She listened to what the teacher said. (مجرور)

all

٤ لاحظ استخدام (all) كضمير بمعنى (كل / كل شيء / كل ما) :

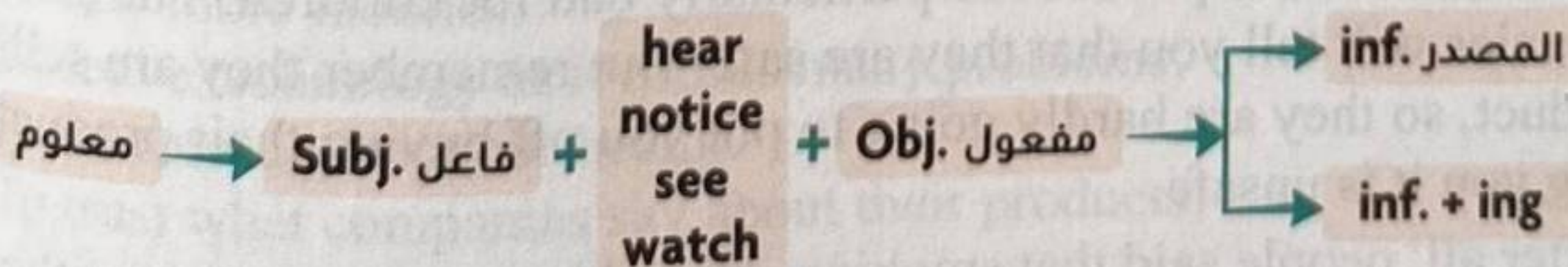
- All he wants to do is to earn enough money.

whole

٥ لاحظ استخدام (whole) كصفة بمعنى (كله / بأكمله) :

- The whole trip was exciting.
- I spent the whole day working in the garden.

٦ لاحظ أفعال الإدراك التالية وطريقة بنائها للمجهول :



- I saw him take / taking the money.
- I hear a bird sing / singing.

مجهول

Obj. مفعول + be

heard
seen
noticed
watched

to + inf. المصدر

inf. + ing

- He was seen to take / taking the money. - A bird is heard to sing / singing.

Exercise On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- My brother looked after the match.
a. anger b. angry c. angrily d. b & c
- The coach looked at the careless goalkeeper.
a. anger b. angry c. angrily d. b & c
- She agreed to I had said.
a. where b. when c. who d. what
- is well that ends well.
a. All b. Both c. All of d. Both of
- We spent the day on the beach.
a. all b. whole c. each d. every
- I saw Omar the street.
a. cross b. crossing c. to cross d. a & b
- Omar was seen the street.
a. cross b. to crossing c. to cross d. a & b

PART II

LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(بلفاس ٢٠٢٣)

I have believed for a while that mobiles are harmful to our health, due to the exposure of radiation. Scientists think that mobile phones should be used as little as possible. A lot of scientists believe they are harmful to your health. Mobile phones are particularly bad for children. The phone companies will tell you that they are safe. But remember they are selling a product, so they are hardly going to put you off buying their product by telling you it is unsafe.

After all, people said that smoking, pesticides and so on were either safe or wouldn't cause you serious harm. However, they were wrong as they caused cancer, disability and terrible illnesses. In fact, research claims

mobile phones could kill more people than smoking.

Wireless (Wi-Fi) can cause headaches, nausea, tiredness and memory loss in some people. We have so much technology now. There is 24-hour television, computers, phones and so on. Electrical gadgets in the bedroom can also cause sleep problems. But if you can't do without them, at least make sure you don't have a computer, wireless phone or mobile in your bedroom or at least make sure that they are turned off. Cordless phones emit a high amount of radiation. So, keep your technology use to a limited amount of time each day. Mobile phones can cause cancerous brain tumours if they are used for a long period of time over the years. Always remember that your health is very important as you might find you are unable to return to good health once you have lost it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What do the phone companies tell us about mobile phones?
 - a. They are safe.
 - b. They are expensive.
 - c. They are dangerous.
 - d. They are terrifying.
2. Who are most affected by using mobile phones?
 - a. Mobile companies
 - b. Workers
 - c. Children
 - d. Adults
3. What does new research show?
 - a. Smoking is as dangerous as mobile phones.
 - b. Smoking is more dangerous than mobile phones.
 - c. Smoking and mobile phones are safe.
 - d. Mobile phones are more dangerous than smoking.
4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
 - a. Mobile phones
 - b. Cordless phones
 - c. Computers
 - d. Electrical gadgets
5. What's the author's opinion about the use of technology?
 - a. To use technology as much as we can.
 - b. To keep technology use to a limited amount of time.
 - c. Not to use technology at all as it is harmful.
 - d. To use technology in our institutions only.
6. Which piece of advice does the author give at the end of the text?
 - a. To buy more mobiles.
 - b. To leave technology as it causes many problems.
 - c. To be careful about our health.
 - d. To trust what companies say about their products.
7. What is the best title to the passage?
 - a. Mobile phones cure diseases.
 - b. Mobile phones; a way to death.
 - c. Smoking is harmful.
 - d. The phone companies tell the truth.

2 كتابة العروض النقدية Review Writing

كيف تكتب عرض نقدي (Review) لرواية / قصة / فيلم / مسرحية؟

1 ابدأ بفقرة قصيرة عن القصة / الرواية / الفيلم / المسرحية ككل، ويمكنك الاستعانة بالأفكار التالية:

- I am going to write about a book / novel / story / film / play called
- It was written / starred / directed by

2 اكتب فقرتين منفصلتين إحداهما عما أعجبك والأخرى عما لم يُعجبك، وفي هاتين الفقرتين يمكن مناقشة العناصر الرئيسية وهي:

• **Setting** مكان وزمان الأحداث

- The incidents of this novel / story / film / play take place in

• **Characters** الشخصيات

- The main character is - The other characters are

• **Plot** الحبكة

- The events start when - The climax ذروة الأحداث is when

• **Theme** الموضوع

- The theme of the book / novel / story / film / play is about

• **Pace** وتيرة الأحداث

- The pace of events in the novel / story / film / play is (fast / slow)

• **Style** الأسلوب

- The style of the writer is (simple / complicated ...etc.)

3 اكتب فقرة ختامية عن رأيك وهل توصي (بهذه) الرواية / القصة / المسرحية / الفيلم أم لا:

- Finally, I think this book / novel / story / film / play is
- I really recommend / don't recommend

3 الترجمة Translation

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Some romantic stories make us forget about our worries and troubles.

They take us to the world of imagination, dreams and thinking. (منيا القمح ٢٠٢٣)

- a. بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث تأخذنا إلى علم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.
- b. بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.
- c. بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومشاغلتنا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.
- d. بعض القصص البوليسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.

2. Water is the spirit for all creatures. So, we must rationalise its consumption in order not to regret in the future.

(القرن ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يُمثل الماء الروح لكل العالم لذلك يجب أن نُرشّد استهلاكنا لكي لا نندم في المستقبل.
- b. يُمثل الماء الروح لبعض المخلوقات لذلك يجب أن نُرشّد استهلاكنا لكي لا نندم في المستقبل.
- c. يُمثل الماء الروح لكل المخلوقات لذلك يجب أن نُرشّد استهلاكنا لكي لا نندم في المستقبل.
- d. يُمثل الماء الروح لكل المخلوقات لذلك يجب أن نُرشّد إنتاجنا منه لكي لا نندم في المستقبل.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. من أجل تخفيض الأسعار لابد أن تقف كل من الحكومة وكذلك المواطنين جنباً إلى جنب لمكافحة استغلال التجار الجشعين.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. To decrease prices, both the government and citizens should stand for facing the exploitation of greedy traders.
- b. To decrease prices, both the government and citizens should stand side by side to face the exploitation of greedy traders.
- c. To decrease prices, both the government and citizens should stand side by side for the exploitation of those very greedy traders.
- d. To decrease prices, both the government and citizens should stand side by side to face the exploitation of those traders.

٢. تشتهر مصر بقطنها الممتاز لذلك تسعى العديد من الدول لشراؤه لصناعة أجود الملابس وأشياء أخرى.

(القرن ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Egypt is famous for its excellent cotton, so many countries seek to buy it for making the best clothes and other things.
- b. Egypt is famous for its excellent cotton, so many countries seek to sell it for making the best clothes and other things.
- c. Egypt is famous for its excellent cotton, so no countries seek to buy it for making clothes and other things.
- d. Egypt is famous for its excellent cotton, so many countries seek to leave it for making clothes and other things.

PART III

JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

guilty

• **guilt (at / about / over) (n)**

الجزى - العار

- He had a feeling of guilt about not looking after his family.

• **guilt (n)**

ذنب / خطيئة

- He felt sorry for his guilt.

• **guilty (of) (adj)**

مُذنب (ب)

- He was guilty of stealing.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

• **guilty (about/for/at)**

شاعر بالخزي أو العار مما فعله

- I felt guilty about not lending him the money he wanted.

• **guilty (of)**

مُذنب (بـ)

- They were guilty of robbing the bank.

• **guilty-ridden (adj)**

يتملكه الشعور بالذنب

- I don't know why you are guilty-ridden. You are not responsible for what happened.

mystery

• **mystery = detective story (n)**

رواية بوليسية / فيلم بوليسي

- I like reading mysteries.

• **mystery (n)**

لغز / سر غامض / مُغضلة

- The crime is still a mystery. The police haven't solved it.

لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- solve a mystery - يكون / يبقى لغزا - be / remain a mystery

• **mystery (adj)**

غير مفهوم / غامض (لاحظ أن هذه الصفة تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)

- I don't trust that man who looks mystery. (✗)

- I don't trust that mystery man. (✓)

• **mysterious (adj)**

غير مفهوم / غامض

- I don't trust that man who looks mysterious. (✓)

- I don't trust that mysterious man. (✓)

pace

• **pace (n)**

سُرعة الشّير

- The soldiers' pace was fast.

• **pace (n)**

خطوة

- Walk ten paces and turn right.

• **pace (n)**

سُرعة - وتيرة (الأحداث)

- The pace of change in modern world is getting faster.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- at your own pace - بالسرعة التي تناسبك

- the pace of change - معدل سرعة التغيير

- the pace of development / reform - وتيرة التطور / الإصلاح

• **pacemaker (n)**

منظم ضربات القلب

- The doctor said my grandfather needed a pacemaker.

plot

• **plot (n)**

حبكة الرواية أو الفيلم (الأحداث)

- The plot of the film was exciting.

• **plot (n)**

قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)

- I have a small vegetable plot.

• **plot (n)**

- My grandfather bought this **plot** a short time before his death.

• **plot (against) (n)**

مؤامرة / مكيدة (ضد)

- There was a **plot** against the company to make it lose a lot of money.

• **plot (against / to) (v)**

يتآمر (ضد)

- He **plotted** to steal the safe خزانة of the supermarket.
- They **plotted** against their manager.

weave• **weave - wove - woven (v)**

ينسج

- In our family, only my mother can **weave**.

• **weave - wove - woven (v)**

يَدَبِّر - يحبك (رواية / قصة...)

- Naguib Mahfouz **wove** the plot of this novel professionally.

• **weaver (n)**

نَّسَّاج

- The job of **weavers** nearly disappeared because machines now do all the work.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your grandfather is buried here, in our
a. legend b. turner c. plot d. monster
2. The of change in science and technology is very fast.
a. weaver b. guilt c. mystery d. pace
3. I like this story because the plot is cleverly-
a. woven b. abandoned c. buried d. earned
4. I can't trust a man who has against his brother.
a. supported b. plotted c. hid d. ensured
5. Let children learn their own pace.
a. in b. on c. at d. out

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He be joking. It is impossible for him to run as fast as a horse.
a. would b. must c. should d. can't
2. She been looking where she was walking. She walked straight into a wall.
a. must have b. can't c. couldn't have d. b & c
3. Your jeans be costly. They're old-fashioned.
a. can't b. might c. must d. may
4. She is famous for her wit. She be a fool.
a. might b. mustn't c. must d. can't
5. Why didn't you apply for the job? - You have got it.
a. must b. could c. can d. couldn't

Test on Unit 12

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

التقييمات
الشهرية في
نهاية الكتاب



الذئار الكترول

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. This is the only room available. The antonyms of "available" is
a. busy b. obtainable c. engaged
d. accessible e. free

(ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

2. I prefer using a pen and paper to notes while my teachers are explaining the lessons.

(ايتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)

- a. do b. miss c. ignore
d. make e. take

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. My sister is to a police officer. Their wedding is next Friday.

(منوف ٢٠٢٣)

- a. married b. evacuated c. achieved d. engaged

2. He is really , he did many bad things against the law.

(جهينة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. guilt b. guiltless c. guilty d. guiltlessness

3. I still don't know what happened to my car. It's a

- a. guilty b. criminal c. mystery d. plot

(منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)

4. To is to become impossible to find.

(منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)

- a. solve b. disappear c. guilt d. engage

5. Artificial will play a more important role in the future.

- a. Review b. Machinery c. Cloth d. Intelligence

6. He didn't go to prison because his lawyer that he was not guilty.

- a. refused b. denied c. proved d. disproved

7. I apologise for not answering your call. I was taking a shower

- a. now b. currently c. then d. yet

8. A: Where's the cat? B: It out; the door is closed.

(الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. must have gone b. can't have gone
c. could go d. may have gone

9. The players are all very happy. They have won the match.

- a. can't b. might c. must d. mustn't

(كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

10. I don't know where Lina is. She have gone to the sports centre.

- a. can b. shouldn't c. might d. mustn't

(منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)

11. That be my book. I have my one in my bag.

(منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

- a. must b. can c. can't d. doesn't

12. He have rung yesterday evening, but I'm not sure.

(أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٣)

- a. must b. can c. might d. will

13. You have done all the housework alone. You be dead tired. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
a. might b. can't c. must d. will

14. Hana was in a very difficult situation. It easy for her.
a. might have been b. might be c. can't have been d. can't be

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (شبرا ٢٠٢٣)

Have you eaten ice cream on a hot day and suddenly felt a sharp pain in your head? If so, you had a very common experience that some people call a "brain freeze".

Brain freezes are caused when cold food or drink touches the roof of your mouth. Nerves in your mouth send a signal to your brain. Your brain then turns the signal into sharp pain. However, the pain doesn't go to your mouth where the cold is. It stays in your head.

Most brain freezes last for less than 30 seconds. But if you want to make it go away quicker, you can try a couple of tricks. When you start to get a brain freeze, push your tongue against the roof of your mouth. This sometimes warms up your mouth so that the nerves don't send the signal that causes a headache. You can also try preventing brain freeze from the start by eating and drinking more slowly. If you take smaller bites or sips, your mouth won't get so cold.

Brain freezes also occur when we have to present or perform in front of others. This is called "stage fright". If you want to cure stage fright, and avoid this kind of brain freezes, prepare for both what you're going to say and how you're going to say it.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. According to the passage, which of these is a way to cure a brain freeze?

- a. Putting something warm on your tongue.
- b. Placing your tongue in the roof of your mouth.
- c. Eating cold things more quickly.
- d. Eating warm and cold foods together.

2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the

- a. brain b. cold c. mouth d. pain

3. Why does eating or drinking slowly help prevent brain freezes?

- a. Your mouth does not get so cold.
- b. Your brain cannot recognize what you are eating or drinking.
- c. The thing you are eating or drinking does not touch your tongue.
- d. The brain freeze does not last as long.

4. Most brain freezes usually take

- a. a very short time b. a very long time
- c. half an hour d. three minutes

5. What causes a brain freeze?

- a. Eating too much ice cream or cold food.
- b. Eating something cold and then something warm.
- c. Cold food or drink touching the roof of your mouth.
- d. Eating cold food on very hot days.

6. Which of these would probably NOT cause a brain freeze'?

- a. Drinking a glass of cold soda quickly.
- b. Eating an ice cream cone quickly before it melts.
- c. Chewing a lot of ice.
- d. Slowly sipping a glass of iced tea.

7. The author of the passage mentioned of brain freezes.

- a. one cause
- b. several causes
- c. two causes
- d. three causes

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Artificial intelligence is considered the next revolution in the next few years.

(العامول ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يُعتبر الذكاء الاصطناعي هو الثورة المقبلة في السنوات القليلة القادمة.
- b. يُعتبر الذكاء الصناعي هو مستقبل البلاد القادم في السنوات القليلة القادمة.
- c. يُعتبر الذكاء الاصطناعي هو الثورة الحالية في شتي المجالات.
- d. يُعتبر الذكاء الاصطناعي هو الثورة المقبلة في العالم في السنوات القليلة القادمة.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

أصبح العالم أكثر ترابطاً بفضل التقدم الهائل في وسائل الاتصالات، فلم يعد ممكناً لأي دولة أن تنعزل عن الأخرى.

(المنيا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. The world became more linked due to the enormous progress in the means of communication. No country can be isolated from other countries anymore.
- b. The world became the most linked due to the enormous progress in the means of communication. No country can be isolated from other countries anymore.
- c. The world became more linked due to the progress in the means of communication. No country can be isolated from countries anymore.
- d. The world became more linked due to the enormous progress in the means of communication. No one can be isolated from other countries anymore.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Jim, how would you feel while staying with the pirates?

.....

2. Why do you think Silver gave Jim a gun?

.....

3. Were you surprised when Silver escaped from the boat? Why?

.....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“Hard work”

.....
.....
.....

Mini-Test on Unit 12 for Al-Azhar Students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Munir, an Egyptian doctor, arrived at Heathrow Airport in London.

Passport officer: Welcome to London. Can I see your passport, sir ?

Munir : (1).....

Passport officer: (2)..... ?

Munir : I've come here to attend a medical conference.

Passport officer: (3)..... ?

Munir : Four days.

Passport officer: Where will you stay ?

Munir : (4).....

2. Write a paragraph of 60 words on :

"The importance of teamwork"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. (A) Translate into Arabic :

Co-operation among nations of the world will result in spreading peace and security.

(B) Translate into English :

يجب أن نستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة في كل مجالات العمل.

Revision 4

Based on Units 10, 11 & 12

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 126 : 129

READING & LISTENING

1 Listening Text

Listen to a conversation in a book shop

Lesson 2 SB page 73

Man : Good morning. I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Manager : Good morning. I'm the manager. How can I help you, sir ?

Man : Well, I'd like to make a **complaint**⁽¹⁾.

Manager : I'm sorry to hear that. What's the problem ?

Man : I came here last week. I wanted to buy a book for my brother. It was his birthday, you see.

Manager : OK.

Man : I asked your assistant if he knew an exciting book that I could buy. He explained that he knew lots of exciting books. He asked me if I liked books about the past or the present. I said I liked books about the present.

Manager : Right. Which book did he **suggest**⁽²⁾ ?

Man : He told me to buy a book called Run Away Fast. So, I said I would buy it for my brother's birthday the following day.

Manager : Did your brother not like the book ?

Man : No, he didn't. He complained that the **pace**⁽³⁾ was quite slow, the story was too long and the characters were terrible.

Manager : I **apologise**⁽⁴⁾, but the problem is, we have hundreds of books in the shop and everyone likes different ones. Do you know the name of the person who told you to buy Run Away Fast ?

Man : No, but it was a young man with glasses.



(1) شكوى

(2) يقترح

(3) سرعة الأحداث

(4) اعتذر

Manager: A young man ? Well, it can't have been Tarek because he was on holiday last week. It might have been Ahmed but he doesn't usually wear glasses. I think it must have been Hassan.

(5) منصف - معقول

(6) حبكة القصة

Man: Well, can I speak to Hassan ?

Manager: I'm afraid he's not here at the moment. But this is what we can do. I'll let you buy two books for the price of one. You can give them both to your brother. I'm sure that your brother will like one of them.

Man: OK, that sounds **fair**⁽⁵⁾.

Manager: This book is my favourite. It's called Look Now. The novel is not very long, the pace is quite fast and the **plot**⁽⁶⁾ is full of surprises. And here is a book called "Summer Time". The characters are wonderful.

Man: Well, thanks. You've been very helpful. I'm sure my brother will like one of these books.

2 Reading Texts

Women Writers

Lesson 1 SB page 72

Many of the world's best writers are women. People read Egyptian writers like Aisha Abd al-Rahman and Miral Al Tahawy in different languages all over the world. You might also know Agatha Christie, famous for her **mystery**⁽¹⁾ novels, and Lucy Maud Montgomery, who wrote the **adventure**⁽²⁾ story Anne of Green Gables.



(1) لغز - سر غامض

(2) مغامرة

(3) تَحْدِي

(4) ينشر

(5) مستحيل

(6) ينافس

However, it has often been a **challenge**⁽³⁾ for women to have their books **published**⁽⁴⁾. People thought that only men could write good stories. Of course, women have always written very good stories, but in the past, it was almost **impossible**⁽⁵⁾ for women to **compete**⁽⁶⁾ with men.

In the past, parents would put **pressure**⁽⁷⁾ on women to get married. If they had a job, it would be something **practical**⁽⁸⁾ like a teacher.

George Eliot, who wrote *Silas Marner*, was really a woman called Mary Ann Evans. She gave herself a man's name so that people would take her books **seriously**⁽⁹⁾.

Since that time, people have **campaigned**⁽¹⁰⁾ for women and men writers to have **equal**⁽¹¹⁾ **opportunities**⁽¹²⁾, and it is now much easier for women. Many women writers have **achieved**⁽¹³⁾ a lot of **success**⁽¹⁴⁾. However, even today, many women writers sometimes change their names. They still believe that they will have more success as a man than as a woman. **For example**⁽¹⁵⁾, English writer J.K. Rowling said she put J.K. **rather than**⁽¹⁶⁾ Joanna on her books so more boys would read them.

(7) ضغط

(8) عملي

(9) بجدية

(10) يناصر - يؤيد

(11) متساوي

(12) فرص

(13) يحقق

(14) نجاح

(15) على سبيل المثال

(16) بدلاً من

What do they do ? This week :

Lesson 3 SB page 74

A speech therapist

Judy is a **speech therapist**⁽¹⁾ in a hospital in Cairo. A speech therapist is someone who helps people who have difficulty speaking publicly



(1) أخصائي معالجة اللُّطق

(2) بوضوح

(3) شهادة جامعية

(4) مُهتَم - مُجِب

(5) متوق به

(6) شخص أبق

• Why did you choose to become a speech therapist?

My mother is a teacher. A child at her school had problems speaking. This made it difficult for her in class, so she also had problems learning. After she saw a speech therapist, she could speak much more **clearly**⁽²⁾. Now, she is one of the best students in her class. When I heard, I decided I wanted to be a speech therapist.

• What skills do you need to be a speech therapist?

You need a **degree**⁽³⁾ and you also need to be **caring**⁽⁴⁾, **reliable**⁽⁵⁾ and a good **communicator**⁽⁶⁾.

• Can you give us some examples of the kinds of people you see?

Sometimes children find it difficult to talk because they have a **disability**⁽⁷⁾. I help by **developing**⁽⁸⁾ **muscles**⁽⁹⁾ around their mouth, for example. Other children have no disability, so you need to find out why they are finding it difficult to speak. They might not be very **confident**⁽¹⁰⁾.

• Is it the same for adults?

Most of the **adults**⁽¹¹⁾ have been ill. But there are some who are not very confident too. There is a very famous example of this.

• Who is that?

George VI was king of the United Kingdom from 1936 to 1952. When he became king, he found it very difficult to **give speeches**⁽¹²⁾. So, he asked to see a speech therapist. The therapist, who was an Australian called Lionel Logue, helped him to speak more clearly.

It **sounds**⁽¹³⁾ an **amazing**⁽¹⁴⁾ **achievement**⁽¹⁵⁾.
Thank you for talking to us.



إعاقة (7)

يُنمّي - يَفوِّي (8)

عضلات (9)

واثق (10)

الكبار - البالغين (11)

يُلقي خُطب (12)

يبدو (13)

مذهل (14)

إنجاز (15)

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing because I am interested in working at your company. However, I know that you are only interested in people who have experience in banking. Could you tell me if your company has apprenticeships for reliable people who have a degree? I am honest, loyal and a good communicator and I think I have all the qualities that you need. However, I do not have a lot of experience at the moment.

If your company gives / offers me an apprenticeship for a few weeks or months, I will be able to apply for a full-time job when I have the necessary experience.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Kind regards

Lina Mohsen



Lesson 4 SB page 75

Monthly assessments

تقييمات شهرية

1. February test اختبار فبراير

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. When a place is messy, it is

- a. ordered b. disordered c. orderly
d. tidy e. untidy

2. A hybrid car has

- a. two wings b. a petrol engine c. the ability to fly
d. three wheels e. an electric motor

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Please, open the door. It is so airless in here. I can hardly

- a. research b. breathe c. breath d. search

2. The pilot of the plane was forced to make a/an landing as one of the engines had broken down.

- a. blanket b. immediately c. emergency d. evacuation

3. My wife is used to the chicken in foil before cooking it.

- a. responding b. wrapping c. breathing d. feeding

4. Parents must care much about their children's personal

- a. evacuation b. emergency c. hygiene d. allergy

5. When the car went past us, a cloud of rose in the air.

- a. soil b. dust c. rain d. bin

6. Today, in car factories, can replace production workers.

- a. robots b. inventions c. vehicles d. rumours

7. Living things usually to the changes in their environment.

- a. chop b. breathe c. burn d. respond

8. If a volcano erupts, it dust into the atmosphere.

- a. send b. sends c. would send d. doesn't send

9. It is extremely warm in here. We better open some windows.

- a. had b. should c. ought to d. must

10. This library book is overdue. I return it today. It is necessary to do that.

- a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. must

11. I wish I were in India, I would visit the Taj Mahal. But I there now.

- a. am b. were c. am not d. weren't

12. If you let me know when your computer comes, I you connect it.

- a. help b. helped c. will help d. would help

13. You smoke in hospitals. It is forbidden.
 a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. should
14. I'm catching an early flight tomorrow, so I stay up late.
 a. should b. must c. mustn't d. need to

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Have you ever imagined life without cell phones? People who are fifty or more will find this question surprising as they used to live without mobile phones. Younger generations, on the other hand, think that they cannot do without mobile phones.

If someone had said 50 years ago that people would be walking around with small wireless telephones in their hands, we would have called him or her mad. However, almost everyone now has at least one of them.

People everywhere are walking around talking on their mobile phones. The phones are even being used for more than just communication. People use them for **numerous** purposes. Mobile phones are used to play games, watch films, listen to music, pay money online, and find information. They have become a very important part of our lives.

Mobile phones have not only made our lives more **convenient**, but they have changed the way we live. Before we had mobile phones, it was hard to reach a friend that was away from home. But thanks to these small devices, people can now get in touch with anyone, at any place, and at any time. To conclude, they have made us reachable wherever we are and whenever anyone likes.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- What can we not use mobile phone for?
 a. Playing games. b. Getting information.
 c. Washing our faces. d. Listening to music.
- About fifty years ago, we
 a. did not have mobiles b. had mobile phones
 c. used mobiles d. were mad
- Thanks to mobile phones,
 a. we cannot find information b. our lives are shorter
 c. it is harder to reach a friend d. our lives are easier
- The antonym of the underlined word "**convenient**" is.....
 a. improper b. proper c. suitable d. available
- The summary of the last paragraph is
 a. the disadvantages of cell phones b. the advantages of cell phones
 c. decreasing the use of cell phones d. improving of cell phones

6. The adjective “numerous” can be replaced with
a. many b. little c. few d. small

7. The best title for the passage can be “ ”.
a. Technology b. Watching films
c. Cell phones d. Playing games

● 4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Leaders from around the world gathered to discuss solutions to the climate change and global warming in an international conference known as COP27 last month in Egypt.

- a. حضر قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناقشة حلول لمشكلة التعديل المناخي والاحتباس الحراري في مؤتمر قاري معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ في مصر الشهر الماضي.
b. تجمع قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناقشة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحراري في مؤتمر دولي معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ في مصر الشهر الماضي.
c. قد يحضر قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناظرة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والارتفاع الحراري في مؤتمر دولي معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ في مصر الشهر الماضي.
d. قد يجتمع قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناقشة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحراري في مؤتمر دولي معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لمشكلات المناخ في مصر الشهر الماضي.

● b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

ليس من السهل أن تحافظ على صحتك هذه الأيام بسبب انتشار الوجبات السريعة، لكن من لديه عزيمة ووعي يستطيع فعل ذلك.

- a. It's not easy to keep healthy nowadays because of the spread of the fast meals, but who has the determination and the awareness can do that.
b. It's not easy to keep health nowadays because of the spread of the fast meals, but who has the separation and the awareness can do that.
c. It's not hard to keep healthy nowadays because of the spread of the fast meals, but who has the determination and the awareness can do that.
d. It's not easy to keep healthy nowadays because of the spread of the fast meals, but who has the determination and the awareness cannot do that.

● 5. Answer the following questions:

1. Why was the fort very important for Captain Smollet and his men ?

2. Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy ?

3. If you were Captain Smollet, would you accept the truce with the pirates ? Why/Why not ?

● 6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“A holiday you would like to go on giving your reasons for your choice”

Monthly assessments

تقييمات شهرية

2. March test اختبار مارس

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. Which of the following describe a governess ?
a. She is a man. b. She is a woman.
c. She teaches a child at their school. d. She teaches a child at their home.
e. She looks after the whole house.
2. Something that is makes you feel good.
a. rewarding b. unrewarding c. satisfying
d. dissatisfying e. unkind

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An is a child whose parents are dead.
a. servant b. governess c. housekeeper d. orphan
2. Encouraging works well with most students but some need to pressure on them to work.
a. get b. put c. spend d. receive
3. The word "cruel" is the word " kind".
a. antonymous with b. synonymous with
c. similar to d. the same as
4. Mrs Wafaa always asks her husband to get a to help her in the housework.
a. receptionist b. servant c. bully d. musician
5. Teaching is a/an profession. Every teacher feels rewarded when he sees his student excel.
a. cruel b. rewarding c. awarded d. harmful
6. Exams can be a/an time for students. They always feel worried and tensed.
a. rewarding b. stressful c. stressed d. enjoyable
7. Egypt has achieved a lot the last decade.
a. over b. on c. above d. under
8. He said just now that he a new car next year.
a. is buying b. would buy c. was buying d. buys
9. It wasn't Fatma had known her success news that she called me.
a. as soon as b. after c. having d. until
10. by the manager, send the letter to me.
a. Having signing b. After had been signed
c. Signed d. When it signed

11. The tennis player in the air. He had won the match.
a. jumped b. had jumped c. jump d. was jumped
12. Sara picked up her glasses. They She had stepped on them.
a. were broken b. was broken c. is broken d. are broken
13. If you well at school, you'll pass your tests.
a. do b. will do c. did d. would do
14. What if you can't sleep at night?
a. did you do b. were you doing
c. do you do d. would you do

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The celebration of Earth Day began in the city of San Francisco and was started by their **mayor** at the request of John McConnel. The first Earth Day celebration was held on March 21st which was the first day of spring. Earth Day is important because it reminds us to stop and look at the problems of our environment. These cause health problems to people living on Earth. Each of us must do our part to recycle and reuse products instead of throwing them away. The trash we deliver to our landfills each week is taking up valuable land and space we need for homes and farms. Earth Day is now celebrated each year on April 22nd. Schools around the world **take part** in making sure that our world is a cleaner place. Students volunteer to pick up trash at their schools, homes, and neighborhoods to do their part in helping our environment.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The smoke released into the air, by automobiles and industry is
a. healthy to breathe b. unhealthy to breathe
c. helpful to plants d. helpful to animals
2. What does Earth Day help us to do ?
a. Think of ways to recycle materials b. Pick up trash
c. Clean up our water sources d. All of these
3. The underlined word "**mayor**" means the
a. governor b. deliver c. scientist d. doctor
4. What can students do to help celebrate Earth Day ?
a. Have a party for it b. Sing songs
c. Pick up trash in their community d. Pick up trash to their schools
5. The first Earth Day celebration was held in.....
a. autumn b. winter c. summer d. spring
6. The phrasal verb "**take part**" can be replaced by "".
a. happen b. participate c. influence d. ignore
7. The best title of the passage is ".....".
a. Everyone has the choice b. Effects of nature
c. Earth Day d. Climatic changes

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**
Lifelong learning is a voluntary continuous process of looking for new information all the time either for personal or professional reasons.

a. التعلم مدى الحياة هو عملية اختيارية متصلة للبحث عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب علمية أو مهنية.
b. التعلم عبر الحياة هو عملية تطوعية مستمرة لتقديم عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب شخصية أو مهنية.
c. التعلم مدى الحياة هو عملية تطوعية مستمرة للبحث عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب شخصية أو مهنية.
d. التعلم عبر الحياة هو عملية تطوعية متصلة للبحث عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب شخصية أو مهنية.

- b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

من وجهة نظري الشخصية أن أحد أهم أسباب المشكلات الاجتماعية في مجتمعنا هو نقص القيم والوعي الأخلاقي في شوارعنا وبين شبابنا.

- a. In my person point of view, one of the most important causes for the social problems in out society is the lack of values and the formal awareness in our streets and among our youth.
b. In my personal point of view, one of the most important causes of the sociable problems in our society is the leak of values and the moral awareness in our streets and among our youth.
c. In my personal point of view, one of the most important causes of the social problems in our society is the lack of values and the moral awareness in our streets and among our youth.
d. In my personal point of view, one of the most important reasons for the social problems in our society is the lake of values and the moral awareness in our streets and among our youth.

5. **Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think Captain Smollett's men won the first fight? How do you know?

2. If you were Dr Livesey, would you leave the fort on your own to find Ben Gun? Why/Why not?

3. Why do you think Jim asked Hands to sail the ship to the north of the island?

6. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:**

"How modern technology help students learn better"

Treasure Island





I VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

accept (ed) (v)	يقبل	frightened (adj)	خائف
advantage (n)	ميزة	guard (ed) (v - n)	يحرص - حارس
attack (ed) (v - n)	يهاجم - هجوم	gun fire (n)	إطلاق النار
blow - blew -	تهب (الرياح) - ينفخ	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يختبئ
blown (v)	يدفع	hill (n)	تَلّ
chain (ed) (n - v)	سلسلة - يربط بسلسلة	hurt - hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي
cook (n)	طباخ	jobs (n)	مِهَام
corner (n)	رُكن	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
crazy (adj)	مجنون	mist (n)	الضباب
crew (n)	طاقم (العمل على السفينة)	offer (ed) (n - v)	عَرَض - يعرض
dark (n) , (adj)	الظلام - الليل / مظلم	pirate (n)	قُراصن
everywhere (adv)	في كل مكان	safe (adj)	أمين
except (conj. - prep.)	ما عدا	sand (n)	رمال
fence (n)	سور	supplies (n)	مُؤْن - إمدادات
fight - fought -	يقاتل	trial (n)	مُحاكَمَة
fought (v)		trick (ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
firewood (n)	خَطَب	truce (n)	هُدنة
flag (n)	عَلَم - راية	voice (n)	صوت (إنسان)
fly a flag	يرفع راية	win - won - won (v)	يفوز
fort (n)	جِصن		

Words and their definitions

- ▶ **chain (ed) (v - n)**: metal rings which are joined together in a line سلسلة
- ▶ **crazy (adj)**: very strange or not sensible مجنون عاقل
- ▶ **fort (n)**: a strong building or group of buildings used to protect important people جِصن
- ▶ **frightened (adj)**: feeling afraid خائف
- ▶ **guard (v)**: to protect a person, place or object يحرص شيء
- ▶ **honest (adj)**: someone you can trust أمين
- ▶ **mist (n)**: a light cloud low over the ground that makes it difficult for you to see very far الضباب منخفضة خفيفة
- ▶ **offer (n)**: to do something for someone or give to someone غرض شيء

▶ trial (n)	: a legal process : عملية قانونية to decide if someone has committed ارتكب a crime	محاكمة
▶ trick (n)	: an action that is meant to deceive يخدع someone	خدعة
▶ truce (n)	: stopping the war for a certain period of time	هذنة

Collocations

accept	an offer	يقبل عرض	guard	the door to a building	يحرس باب المبنى
become	ill	يَمرض		an offer	يقدم عرض
fly	a flag	يرفع راية	make	someone feel better	يجعل شخصاً يشعر بتحسن
go	on a trial	تتم محاكمته			
have	a truce with	يعقد هذنة مع	play	a trick on	يخدع
	an advantage	لديه ميزة	tell	a story	يحكي قصة

II Text of Chapter 7

Jim Hawkins:

I walked with Ben Gun and we soon saw the **fort**⁽¹⁾.

"Your friends will be inside, Jim," said Ben.

"It might be the **pirates**⁽²⁾,"

I replied.

"No, look at the **flag**⁽³⁾! They will be good men," he answered. "The fort was made by Flint. He was a **clever**⁽⁴⁾ man and he wasn't **frightened**⁽⁵⁾ of anyone, **except**⁽⁶⁾ Silver."

"Let's go inside," I said.

"I can't go in there," Gun replied. "I don't trust anyone. I'll wait for you. Remember what I told you. I can help you. Come and find me tomorrow."

Before I could go to the fort, there was the sound of more **gun fire**⁽⁷⁾ and I had to **hide**⁽⁸⁾ so I wouldn't be hit. From the trees where I waited, I could now see the Hispaniola. It was also **flying a flag**⁽⁹⁾, but it was the black pirate's flag.

When it was nearly **dark**⁽¹⁰⁾, I walked round to the back of the fort and called out. The door opened, and Dr Livesy let me inside.



- (1) حصن
- (2) القراصنة
- (3) علم - راية
- (4) ماهر - ذكي
- (5) خائف
- (6) ما عدا
- (7) إطلاق النار
- (8) يختبئ
- (9) يرفع راية
- (10) الظلام - الليل

I sat down and told them my story. The wind **blew**⁽¹¹⁾ sand inside the fort and we found it **everywhere**⁽¹²⁾, in our clothes, in our food and in our eyes. There was a fire to keep us warm, but the room was also full of smoke and we all **coughed**⁽¹³⁾.

Captain Smollett gave us all **jobs**⁽¹⁴⁾: some looked for **firewood**⁽¹⁵⁾, others went to cook food, and I was asked to **guard**⁽¹⁶⁾ the door. He kept us all busy, and that made us all feel better.

"Captain Smollett is a good man," said Dr Livesy later that day. "And what about Ben Gun? Is he a good man?"

"I don't know," I answered. "I think he's a little **crazy**⁽¹⁷⁾."

"Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy," explained the doctor.

"Did you say that he wanted some good food?"

"Yes," I replied.

"I've brought some cheese with me on this journey. Let's give it to Ben Gun!" said the doctor.

That evening, the men talked about how little food we had. We hoped that the pirates would leave the island with the Hispaniola. The doctor said that they would become ill if they slept outside on the island for long. And if the pirates left, we could wait until help arrived.

I slept very well that night. The next morning, a **voice**⁽¹⁸⁾ woke me up. I heard someone say, "Some pirates are coming to the fort with a white flag. Look, it's Silver! He wants a **truce**⁽¹⁹⁾!"

I got up and looked from the fort. It was a cold morning, and although it was sunny, there was a low **mist**⁽²⁰⁾. We could only see the head of Silver and another pirate.

"Stay in the fort," said Captain Smollett. "I'm sure that this is a **trick**⁽²¹⁾." Then he called out to Silver, "Tell us what you want."

"I want a truce," said Silver.

Captain Smollett quietly told us to move to different **corners**⁽²²⁾ of the fort and to watch Silver carefully. Then he called to Silver, "What do you want us to do?"

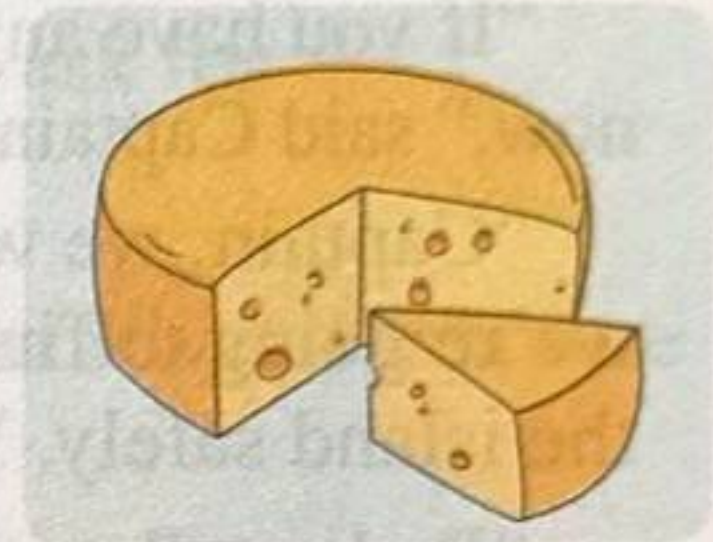
"Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home," said Silver.

"Your ship? I didn't know you had a ship here," replied Captain Smollett.

"Well, the **crew**⁽²³⁾ chose me to be their captain after you left the ship," said Silver.

"If you have something to say, you can come into the fort and say it," said Captain Smollett.

(11)	تدفع - تحمل
(12)	في كل مكان
(13)	يكف - يسعل
(14)	مهام
(15)	خطب
(16)	يحرص
(17)	مجنون
(18)	صوت إنسان
(19)	هدنة
(20)	الضباب
(21)	خدعة
(22)	أركان
(23)	طاقم العمل في السفينة



The other pirate tried to stop Silver, but he **laughed**⁽²⁴⁾ and walked quickly towards the fort. He climbed over one of the **fences**⁽²⁵⁾ and walked slowly up the **hill**⁽²⁶⁾. Soon he was standing in front of Captain Smollett, who was waiting for him outside the door to the fort.

"Can't I come inside?" asked Silver. "It's a cold morning."

"If you were an **honest**⁽²⁷⁾ man, you could come inside," said Captain Smollett. "But are you my ship's **cook**⁽²⁸⁾, who I looked after, or Captain Silver, a pirate?"

"OK, we can stay here," said Silver, sitting down on the sand. "You've got a nice place here. Look, there's Jim! Good morning."

"If you have anything to say, say it now," said Captain Smollett.

"Captain, we want the treasure, and we're going to find it. However, I think you all want to leave the island safely. You have the map, don't you?" asked Silver.

"Perhaps," said Captain Smollett.

"I know you have it," said Silver. "We don't want to **hurt**⁽²⁹⁾ you. Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship. We'll take you to somewhere **safe**⁽³⁰⁾. Or, if you prefer, we'll leave you some **supplies**⁽³¹⁾ and you can stay on the island. Then we can ask another ship to come and take you home. It's a kind **offer**⁽³²⁾, and I hope you all want to take it." He said this last part loudly, so that we could all hear in the fort.

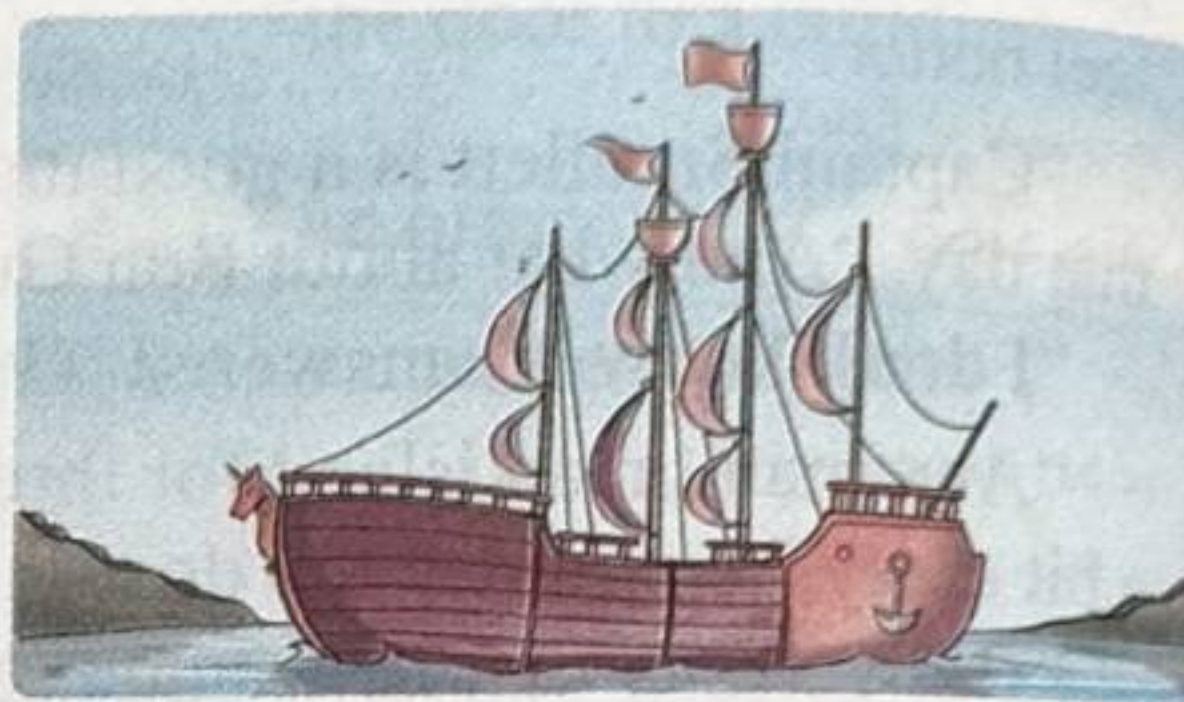
"Is that all you can offer?" said Captain Smollett.

"It is, and if you don't **accept**⁽³³⁾ my offer, all you will hear from me is the sound of **guns**⁽³⁴⁾!"

"Now you can listen to me," replied Captain Smollett. "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in **chains**⁽³⁵⁾ and take you back to England for **trial**⁽³⁶⁾. If you don't, you'll have problems. You can't find the treasure. You don't have enough men to sail the ship, and you can't **fight**⁽³⁷⁾ us here in the fort."

Silver looked very angry. "This will not end well for any of you," he said, and then he walked slowly back down the hill.

Captain Smollett came back into the fort and said to us, "He'll be back in an hour to **attack**⁽³⁸⁾ us. There are more of them than us, but we have the **advantage**⁽³⁹⁾ inside the fort, and I am sure that we can **win**⁽⁴⁰⁾."



(24) يضحك

(25) أسوار

(26) تَلْ

(27) صادق - أمين

(28) طبّاخ

(29) يؤذي

(30) آمن

(31) فُؤُن - إمدادات

(32) عرض

(33) يقبل

(34) بنادق

(35) سلاسل

(36) مُحاكمة

(37) يقاتل

(38) بهاجم - هجوم

(39) ميزة

(40) يخسب - يفوز

III Main Points of Chapter 7

1. Ben and Jim find the fort. Ben can see the Hispaniola flying the Pirates' flag. Jim goes inside the fort. His friends are there.
2. The wind blows sand inside. The room is full of smoke and sand. Captain Smollett gives them jobs to do. They are better.
3. Jim thinks Ben is a bit crazy and Dr Livesy agrees. "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy." They give some cheese to Ben.
4. They hope the Pirates will leave the island with the Hispaniola but the Pirates come with a white flag. Silver is with them to ask for a truce هدنه.
5. Captain Smollett asks them to be careful. He speaks to Silver. He is sure it was a trick.
6. Silver asks them to go to his ship and talk about how to go home. The captain asks Silver to come into the fort. Silver comes and speaks to the captain.
7. The captain asks Silver if he is a cook or a pirate then.
8. Silver asks for the map and in return he will take them home safely on the ship or he will leave them some supplies to stay on the island and he can ask another ship to go and take them.
9. Silver hopes they can accept his offer or they will only hear the sound of guns. The captain says if Silver and his men come, the captain will put them in chain and take them for trial.
10. The captain tells Silver that Silver can't find the treasure without the map nor does he have enough men to sail the ship back to England.
11. Silver is angry. Captain Smollett says Silver will attack the fort but the captain thinks they have the advantage inside the fort.

IV Questions and Answers

A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1. How do you think Jim got to the fort?

- Perhaps Ben Gun led him to the fort.

(SB)
برأيك، كيف وصل «جيم» إلى الحصن؟
ربما قاده «بن غان» إلى الحصن.

2. Why do you think the fort was very important for Captain Smollett and his men?

- The fort gave Captain Smollett and his men protection from the pirates. It was where they had a fire for warmth and food to eat.
- (SB)
لماذا في اعتقادك كان الحصن مهماً جداً للكابتن «سموليت» ورجاله؟
لقد منح الحصن القبطان «سموليت» ورجاله الحماية من القراصنة. إنه المكان الذي كانوا يوقدون فيه النار من أجل الدفء وكان لديهم طعام ليأكلوه.

3. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to enter the fort with Jim?

- I think he didn't want to take part in the conflict between the two groups.
- برأيك، لماذا رفض «بن غان» دخول الحصن مع «جيم»؟
أعتقد أنه لم يكن يريد الدخول في الصراع بين الطرفين.

4. What do you think showed Jim that the Pirates took control of the Hispaniola?

- The ship had the pirates' flag.
- في رأيك، ما الذي أظهر لـ «جيم» أن القراصنة سيطروا على السفينة «هيسبانيولا»؟
كانت السفينة ترفع علم القراصنة.

5. Captain Smollett proved to be a wise leader inside the fort. Show how.

- He gave everybody jobs to do and that made them all feel better.
- أثبت القبطان «سموليت» أنه قائد حكيم داخل الحصن. وضح كيف.
لقد كلف كل فرد بالقيام بمهمة، وهذا جعلهم جميعاً يشعرون بتحسين.

6. Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy?

- I think living alone on the island for three years had a bad effect on him.
- برأيك، لماذا كان «بن غان» يبدو مجنوناً بعض الشيء؟
أعتقد أن العيش بمفرده في الجزيرة لمدة ثلاث سنوات كان له تأثير سيء عليه.

7. Why do you think some pirates came to the fort with a white flag?

- I think they wanted to show that they were not attacking the fort. They only wanted a truce.
- برأيك، لماذا أتى بعض القراصنة إلى الحصن بعلم أبيض؟
أعتقد أنهم أرادوا إظهار أنهم لن يهاجموا الحصن. لقد أرادوا فقط الهدنة.

8. Doctor Livesey proved to be generous. Show how.

- He offered to give Ben Gun some cheese.
- لقد أثبت الدكتور «ليفسي» أنه كريم. وضح كيف.
لقد عرض أن يعطي «بن غان» بعض الجبن.

9. If you were Captain Smollett, would you accept the truce with the pirates? Why/Why not?

- I wouldn't accept it because it was just a trap.
- لو كنت القبطان «سموليت»، هل تقبل الهدنة مع القراصنة؟ لماذا/لماذا لا؟
لم أكن لأقبلها لأنها مجرد خدعة.

10. "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home." What do you think the message Silver wanted to convey was?

- «تعالوا إلى سفينتي ويمكننا أن نتحدث عن كيفية العودة.» ما رأيك في الرسالة التي أراد «سيلفر» إيصالها؟
- He wanted to show that he took control over the Hispaniola.
- أراد أن يظهر أنه سيطر على السفينة «هيسبانيولا».

11. What advantages did the Pirates have over Captain Smollett and his men?

- ما المزايا التي كانت تميز القراصنة على القبطان «سموليت» ورجاله؟
- They were more in number. They had the ship and they had more weapons.
- كانوا أكثر عدداً، وكانت لديهم السفينة وكان لديهم أسلحة أكثر.

12. What advantages did Captain Smollett and his men have over the Pirates?

- ما هي المزايا التي كانت تميز القبطان «سموليت» ورجاله على القراصنة؟
- They had a strong fort. They also had the map to the treasure.
- كان لديهم حصن قوي، وكان لديهم أيضاً خريطة الكنز.

13. What do you think of Silver as a negotiator?

- ما رأيك في «سيلفر» كمفاوض؟
- He was intelligent and cunning.
- لقد كان ذكياً وماكراً.

14. "... I hope you all want to take it." Why do you think Silver says these words loudly?

- «... أتمنى أن ترغبوا جميعاً في قبوله.» برأيك، لماذا قال «سيلفر» هذه الكلمات بصوت عالٍ؟
- I think he wanted Captain Smollett's men to hear this offer and accept it against their leader's will.
- أعتقد أنه أراد أن يسمع رجال القبطان «سموليت» هذا العرض وأن يقبلوه ضد إرادة قائدهم.

B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students:

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. What did Long John Silver want from Captain Smollett? (SB)

- ماذا أراد «لونغ جون سيلفر» من القبطان «سموليت»؟
- أراد «سيلفر» الخريطة إلى الكنز.
- Silver wanted the map to the treasure.

2. Why did Silver arrive at the fort with a white flag? (SB)

- لماذا وصل «سيلفر» إلى الحصن بعلم أبيض؟
- He wanted a truce. He wanted to make an offer so that he could get the map to the treasure.
- لقد أراد الهدنة. أراد أن يقدم عرضاً حتى يتمكن من الحصول على خريطة الكنز.

3. Why didn't Captain Smollett allow Silver to enter the fort? (SB)

- لماذا لم يسمح القبطان «سموليت» لـ «سيلفر» بدخول الحصن؟
- لأن «سيلفر» كان شخص غير أمين.
- Because Silver was dishonest.

4. What did Silver want the men in the fort to do? (SB)

- ماذا أراد «سيلفر» من الرجال في الحصن أن يفعلوا؟

- He wanted them to protest against Captain Smollett and accept the offer.
- أراد منهم الاحتجاج على القبطان «سموليت» وقبول العرض.

5. Why did Captain Smollett refuse Silver's offer to leave them with some supplies? (SB)

- لماذا رفض القبطان «سموليت» عرض «سيلفر» بتركهم مع بعض الإمدادات لهم؟
- It was a bad offer from a dishonest man who wouldn't keep his word.
- لقد كان عرضاً سيئاً من رجل غير أمين لن يلتزم بكلمته.

General Exercises on Chapter 7

1. Do you think Ben Gun was a careful person? How can you prove your opinion?
.....
2. "The fort was made by Flint. He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver." What can we infer from these words?
.....
3. Captain Smollett proved to be a good leader. Illustrate.
.....
4. Living alone on the island for three years affected Ben Gun. Discuss.
.....
5. In your point of view, who suffered a lot from living on the island? Why?
.....
6. "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home." Does the speaker really have a ship? What does he mean by these words?
.....
7. "If you were an honest man, you could come inside." What does the speaker mean by these words?
.....
8. "Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship." Why do you think Captain Smollett refused Silver's offer?
.....
9. "It is, and if you don't accept my offer, all you will hear from me is the sound of guns!" What can we understand from these words?
.....
10. Do you think Silver and his men really have the ability to control the situation on the island? Why / Why not?
.....
11. What do you think of Captain Smollett's reaction to Silver's offer?
.....
12. Despite Silver's threat, he knew that it wouldn't be easy to get the map? Why?
.....



I VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

anchor (n)	مِزْسَاة (هَلْب)	paddle (d) (n - v)	مِجْدَاف - يَجْدَف
badly (adv)	بشکل سِیء - بشدّة	pocket (n)	جَنْب
both (deter. - pron.)	کلا - کلتا	prepare (d) (v)	يُعِدّ - يَجْهّز
by (adv. - prep.)	بجوار - عند	quickly (adv)	بسرعة
Cape (n)	رأس (جغرافياً)	realise (d) (v)	يَذَرِك
cliff (n)	مُنْحَدَر صخري	rope (n)	حَبْل
completely (adv)	بالکامل - تماماً	seem (ed) (v)	يبدو
cry (n)	صَيْحَة - صياح	shore (n)	شاطئ
darkness (n)	الظلام	shot (n)	طلق ناري
distant (adj)	بعيد	side (n)	جانب
fast (adj - adv)	سريع - بسرعة	skin (n)	جلد - بشرة
fence (n)	سور	steer (ed) (v)	يُوجّه - يحدد اتجاه
fire (d) (v - n)	يُطْلِق النار - النار	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
fort (n)	جُضْن	sword (n)	سيف
impossible (adj)	مستحيل	tent (n)	خَيْمَة
lie - lay - lain (v)	يتمدد - يرقد	terrible (adj)	سِیء - فظيع
mist (n)	الضباب	thick (adj)	سميك - غليظ
mostly (adv)	في الغالب	waves (n)	أمواج
noise (n)	ضوضاء - ضجيج	weakly (adv)	بضعف - بوهن
on its own	من تلقاء نفسها	weapon (n)	سلاح

Words and their definitions

▶ anchor (n)	: a heavy object used to stop a boat moving	مِزْسَاة (هَلْب)
▶ cry (n)	: a loud sound made by an animal or bird	صَيْحَة - صياح
▶ fence (n)	: a structure made of wood, metal, etc. that surrounds a piece of land	سور
▶ noise (n)	: a high sound	ضوضاء - ضجيج
▶ paddle (n)	: a short pole used to move a small boat along	مِجْدَاف
▶ rope (n)	: very big, strong string	حَبْل
▶ shot (n)	: an act of firing a gun	طلق ناري
▶ steer (ed) (v)	: to control the direction of a car, boat etc.	يُوجّه - يحدد اتجاه
▶ tent (n)	: a structure for sleeping in, usually made of cloth fixed to metal poles	خَيْمَة
▶ thick (adj)	: wide (for an object)	سميك - غليظ

Collocations

climb	a fence	يتسلق السور	fire	a gun	يطلق النار من بندقية
put	something in your pocket	تضع شيئاً في جيبك	run	through the door	يمر من الباب
			steer	a boat	يوجه المراكب

II Text of Chapter 8

Jim Hawkins:

We **prepared**⁽¹⁾ our **weapons**⁽²⁾ and the captain told us what to do.

"Doctor, you stay **by**⁽³⁾ the door. Hunter, stay at the east of the **fort**⁽⁴⁾. Joyce can stand at the west. Gray and Trelawney will stay at the north. If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we're **in trouble**⁽⁵⁾."



After an hour, Joyce said that he saw someone coming. We all looked and listened, and we got our weapons ready. Suddenly, Joyce **fired**⁽⁶⁾ his gun. Then, we heard guns firing at us from all **sides**⁽⁷⁾ of the fort. There was a lot of noise and smoke, but nobody was hurt. Then everything went quiet again.

"Did you hit anyone?" the captain asked Joyce.

"I don't think so," he replied.

"How many people fired on your side, Doctor?" asked Captain Smollett.

"There were three," he replied.

"How many on your side, Trelawney?"

Trelawney and Gray were not sure. They thought seven, eight or nine. There was only one **shot**⁽⁸⁾ fired from the east and west. So, we knew that the pirates wanted to attack **mostly**⁽⁹⁾ from the north. But Captain Smollett told us to stay where we were.

We didn't have much time to talk. A group of pirates ran from the trees towards the north of the fort, and their guns started firing again. Some of the pirates tried to climb the **fence**⁽¹⁰⁾, but Joyce shot two of them and one ran back to the trees. However, four were now inside the fences and seven more continued to fire at us from the trees.

Our men fired at the four pirates, but did not hit them. They were now running up the hill to the fort, and one of them climbed up and took Hunter's gun. Another ran in through the door, where the doctor killed him.

Captain Smollett then told us to go to the other side of the fort. I ran there quickly, and suddenly found one of the pirates, Anderson, **in front of me**⁽¹¹⁾. He was going to attack me with his **sword**⁽¹²⁾, but Gray saw him

- (1) يُعَدّ - يُجَهّز
- (2) أسلحة
- (3) بجوار - عند
- (4) حصن
- (5) في ورطة
- (6) أطلق النار
- (7) جوانب
- (8) طلق ناري
- (9) في الغالب
- (10) سور
- (11) أمامي
- (12) سيف

and killed him before I was hurt. At the same time, the pirates inside the fences were killed by our guns.

I was safe, but others were not. Poor Joyce and Hunter were dead and Captain Smollett was hurt.

"Have the pirates gone?" asked Captain Smollett weakly⁽¹³⁾.

"Some of them have gone," said Doctor Livesy, "but five of them will never walk again."

"That's good," said Captain Smollett. "There are fewer pirates for us to fight. I know that we can win."

The pirates did not return that day, so we had time to eat and look after the people who were hurt. Doctor Livesy said that Captain Smollett would get better, but he should not walk or even talk if he didn't need to.

In the early afternoon, Doctor Livesy took his hat and a gun, then he put the map in his **pocket**⁽¹⁴⁾ and left the fort.

"What is he doing?" asked Gray when we saw him walk into the trees. "Is he crazy?"

"The doctor has a plan," I said. "I think he's going to visit Ben Gun."

That afternoon, I thought about where the doctor was. I remembered how good it felt to walk through the trees and on the beach. It was much nicer than staying inside the hot fort. I decided to take some biscuits and a gun. I wanted to go down to the rocks where Ben Gun said there was a boat. When nobody was looking, I quietly left the fort.



I walked quickly towards the east of the island. It was now late afternoon but the sun was still high. As I went nearer to the coast, the wind became stronger and it wasn't as hot. Soon I could see the big waves of the blue sea and then I walked down the beach, feeling happy.

At the end of the beach I climbed a hill. I could see the Hispaniola, with the pirate flag flying in the wind. And I could see Silver in one of the small boats, talking to his men. I could not hear what they said, although I could hear the **cry**⁽¹⁵⁾ of the parrot, Captain Flint.

The sun was going down and soon there was a **mist**⁽¹⁶⁾. I knew that I needed to be quick and find the boat that evening. It took me a long time to walk to the white rock where Ben Gun said his boat was. It was nearly dark when I finally found it inside a **tent**⁽¹⁷⁾ made of animal **skins**⁽¹⁸⁾. It was badly made from old wood and it was very small, although I thought that it would be very fast on water.

(13) بضعف - بوهن

(14) جيب

(15) صيحة / صياح

(16) الضباب

(17) خيمة

(18) جلود

Now, I had my own plan. I thought that I could go to the Hispaniola in the night and cut the **rope**⁽¹⁹⁾ to the **anchor**⁽²⁰⁾. So, I ate my biscuits while I waited for it to become dark.

When I stood up later, there was mist everywhere. I picked up the boat and carried it to the beach. In the **darkness**⁽²¹⁾, I could just see a fire where the pirates were sleeping in the trees, and another **distant**⁽²²⁾ light from the Hispaniola. I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship.

I found that the boat was very difficult to **steer**⁽²³⁾, but the wind helped me to get to the Hispaniola. Soon, I was next to the big ship and I began cutting the **thick**⁽²⁴⁾ anchor rope. I could now hear some of the pirates talking on the ship. One of the men was called Hands, but I did not know the other man. They **both**⁽²⁵⁾ **seemed**⁽²⁶⁾ angry.

The rope finally broke, and I moved away from the ship. As I was leaving, I saw a light in one of the windows where the sailors were talking. I don't know why, but I decided to look into the window. I saw that Hands and the other pirate were fighting each other.

I sat down in the boat, but I realised that the wind was taking me quickly out to sea. Now it no longer had the anchor rope, the wind was moving the Hispaniola, too! The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a **terrible**⁽²⁷⁾ end, dreaming of my home and the Admiral Benbow.

The next thing I knew, it was light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island. The sun was up, but I couldn't see it because of the high **cliffs**⁽²⁸⁾ on this side of the island. There were big waves hitting the rocks below, and it would be **impossible**⁽²⁹⁾ for me to take the boat to the **shore**⁽³⁰⁾.

I remembered that on the map, there was a place called **Cape**⁽³¹⁾ of Woods. This was a place of tall trees and it also had a beach. I would try to get there. The boat sailed well, but when I tried to steer it, the boat hit the waves and I was soon completely wet. I **realised**⁽³²⁾, however, that if I **lay**⁽³³⁾ down in the boat, it found its way through the waves **on its own**⁽³⁴⁾. I used a **paddle**⁽³⁵⁾ to steer the boat a little, and it moved very slowly towards the Cape of Woods.



(19)	خَبِلَ
(20)	مِرْسَاة (هَلْب)
(21)	الظلام
(22)	بعيد
(23)	يُوجِّه - يحدد اتجاه
(24)	سميك
(25)	كلا - كلنا
(26)	يبدو
(27)	سيء - فظيع
(28)	مُنَحْدَرَات صخرية
(29)	مستحيل
(30)	شاطئ
(31)	رأس
(32)	أدرك
(33)	يتمدد - يرقد
(34)	من تلقاء نفسها
(35)	مجداف



III Main Points of Chapter 8

1. The captain told his men what to do, the Pirates attacked the fort. Nobody was hurt.
2. The Pirates attacked again from the north. Joyce shot two but the Pirates got inside the Fences and were killed. Joyce and Hunter were dead. The captain was hurt.
3. They won over the Pirates and killed many of them. The Pirates didn't attack the following day.
4. The doctor took the map and left the fort. He had a plan. Maybe he was going to visit Ben Gun. Jim also took a gun and went down the east of the island.
5. The weather became better. Jim found Ben's boat. He saw the ship and Silver talking to his men in a boat. Jim had a plan to go to the ship in the dark and cut the rope to the anchor.
6. The boat was difficult to steer but the wind helped him. He cut the rope and heard some pirates fighting.
7. The wind was taking his boat and the ship out to sea. The wind took the boat into a large wave.
8. Jim fainted then found himself on the south-west end of Treasure Island but he couldn't take the boat to the shore because of the big waves.
9. Jim remembered a place on the map, called Cape of Woods that had tall trees and a beach. He tried to sail the boat to get there.
10. Jim got wet but he lay down in the boat and it moved through the waves on its own; it moved slowly towards the Cape of Woods.

IV Questions and Answers

A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1. Which side of the fort do you think is the weakest? How do you know?

في إعتقادك، أي جانب كان الأضعف في الحصن؟ كيف عرفت ذلك؟

- I think it was the north side. Captain Smollett asked two men to protect that side.

أعتقد أنه كان الجانب الشمالي، فلقد طلب القبطان «سموليت» من رجلين حماية هذا الجانب.

2. Do you think Captain Smollett's men won the first fight? How do you know?

هل تعتقد أن رجال القبطان «سموليت» انتصروا في المعركة الأولى؟ كيف علمت بذلك؟

- Yes. They killed five of the pirates but lost only two men.

نعم، لقد قتلوا خمسة من القراصنة لكنهم فقدوا رجلين فقط.

3. If you were one of the Pirates, would you go into the fort? Why/Why not?

لو كنت أحد القراصنة، هل ستذهب إلى الحصن؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. It would be easy for the people inside to kill me.

لا، لن أفعل، فمن السهل على الأشخاص الموجودين بالداخل قتلي.

4. Do you think Captain Smollett is a good captain? Why/Why not? (SB)

هل تعتقد أن القبطان «سموليت» كان قائداً جيداً؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- Yes, because he made good decisions in the fight with the Pirates.

نعم، لأنه اتخذ قرارات جيدة في الحرب مع القراصنة.

5. Why do you think Captain Smollett said, "I know that we can win" after the fight? (SB)

لماذا قال القبطان «سموليت» بعد القتال: «أعلم أننا قادرون على الفوز»؟

- There are fewer pirates now because some of them died in the fight.

أصبح عدد القراصنة أقل الآن لأن بعضهم مات في القتال.

6. If you were Dr Livesy, would you leave the fort on your own to find Ben Gun? Why/Why not?

لو كنت الدكتور «ليفسي»، هل ستترك الحصن بمفردك للعثور على «بن غان»؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. It was easy for the Pirates to kill him.

لا، لن أفعل، فمن السهل على القراصنة قتله.

7. Why do you think Dr Livesy wanted to find Ben Gun? (SB)

برأيك لماذا أراد الدكتور «ليفسي» العثور على «بن غان»؟

- I think he wanted Ben to tell him about the place of the treasure.

أعتقد أنه أراد من «بن» أن يخبره عن مكان الكنز.

8. What was Jim's plan when he saw the little boat? Was his plan successful till the end? (SB)

- ماذا كانت خطة «جيم» عندما رأى القارب الصغير؟ وهل كانت خطته ناجحة حتى النهاية؟
- He planned to go to the Hispaniola in the night and cut the rope to the anchor. So, it would float away. This plan was successful until his boat was carried in the waves.
- لقد خطط للذهاب إلى السفينة «هيسبانيولا» ليلاً وقطع حبل المرساة حتى تتحرك السفينة بعيداً. كانت هذه الخطة ناجحة حتى جرفت الأمواج قاربه.

9. Do you think Jim was right to cut the rope on the Hispaniola? Why/Why not? (SB)

- هل كان «جيم» على حق في قطع حبل «هيسبانيولا»؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟
- Yes, I think he was right. The ship gave the Pirates an advantage over them.
- نعم، أعتقد أنه كان على حق. أعطت السفينة القراصنة ميزة عليهم.

10. Jim proved to be brave. Show how.

- لقد أثبت «جيم» أنه شجاع. وضح كيف.
- He left the fort alone, took Ben's boat and cut the rope of the Hispaniola.
- لقد ترك الحصن بمفرده، وأخذ قارب «بن» وقطع حبل السفينة «هيسبانيولا».

11. In what way do you think Jim was lucky? كيف كان «جيم» محظوظاً؟

- He didn't drown when he lost control over the small boat.
- لم يغرق عندما فقد السيطرة على القارب الصغير.

12. Why do you think Dr Livesey left the fort? Do you agree that he is crazy as Gray said?

- لماذا في رأيك غادر الدكتور «ليفسي» الحصن؟ هل توافق على أنه مجنون كما قال «غراي»؟
- He wanted to find Ben Gun. I agree that it was a crazy thing to do.
- أراد أن يجد «بن غان». أوافق على أنه كان أمراً مجنوناً للقيام به.

B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students:

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. Why did Dr Livesey leave the fort? (SB)

- لماذا غادر الدكتور «ليفسي» الحصن؟
- لقد أراد أن يزور «بن غان».
- He wanted to visit Ben Gun.

2. Why did Jim leave the fort? (SB)

- لماذا غادر «جيم» الحصن؟
- He thought it was much nicer to be outside the fort and to find the boat.
- كان يعتقد أنه من الأجمل أن تكون خارج الحصن أن تجد القارب.

3. Where did Jim find the boat?

- He found it by a white rock inside a tent made of animal skins.

وجدته بالقرب من صخرة بيضاء داخل خيمة مصنوعة من جلود الحيوانات.

4. What did Jim find near a white rock?

- He found a small boat.

ما الذي وجدته «جيم» بالقرب من صخرة بيضاء؟

لقد وجد مركباً صغيراً.

5. Describe the boat that Ben Gun made.

- It was badly made from old wood and was very small.

كانت مصنوعة بشكل سيء من الخشب القديم وكانت صغيرة جداً.

6. Where was Jim when he opened his eyes?

- He was in the boat in the south west end of Treasure Island.

كان على متن القارب في الطرف الجنوبي الغربي من جزيرة الكنز.

7. Who did Jim see through the window of the Hispaniola and what were they doing?

- He saw Hands and another pirate fighting each other.

من الذي رآه «جيم» من خلال نافذة السفينة «هيسبانيولا» وماذا كانوا يفعلون؟

لقد رأى «هاندز» وقرصاناً آخر يتقاتلان مع بعضهما البعض.

8. Why did Jim expect a "terrible end"?

- He thought that his boat was going to sink.

لماذا توقع «جيم» «نهاية مأساوية»؟

كان يعتقد أن قاربه سوف يغرق.

General Exercises on Chapter 8

1. Why do you think there were two men to protect the north side?

.....

2. In your point of view, did the Captain and his men prepare well for the first fight with the Pirates? How did they do that?

.....

3. Captain Smollett studied the situation well and was a good leader for the first fight. To what extent do you agree with this sentence? Why?

.....

4. The Pirates' first attack was just the beginning. Illustrate.

.....

5. Joyce did a great job before his death. Discuss.

.....

6. Despite their big number, the Pirates lost the first fight against Captain Smollett's men. Give two reasons.

.....

7. Compared to Silver, Captain Smollett was more efficient? Do you agree? Why / Why not?

.....

8. "But five of them will never walk again." What does this sentence mean?

.....

9. "Have the pirates gone?" asked Captain Smollett weakly. What can we infer from this question?

.....

10. Captain Smollett's men proved to be brave and adventurous. Give two examples.

.....

11. If you were Jim, would you risk your life to cut the rope to the anchor? Why?

.....

12. Many things helped Jim to succeed in his adventure to cut the rope to the anchor. Mention two things.

.....



I VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

away from	بعيدا عن	paddle (d) (n - v)	مُجَدِّف - يُجَدِّف
bandage (n)	ضفّادة	painfully (adv)	بشكل مؤلم
catch - caught -	يقبض على - يمسك بـ	pick (ed) (v)	يتناول - يلتقط
caught (v)		reach (ed) (v)	يتناول - يصل إلى
close (d) (v - adj)	يُغْلِق - قريب	rocky (adj)	صخريّ
come any closer	يقترّب أكثر	sail (ed) (n - v)	يسّاع - يبحر
correct (adj)	صحيح	shallow (adj)	ضحل - غير عميق
dead (adj)	ميت	shoulder (n)	كف
deck (n)	سطح السفينة	steer (ed) (v)	يؤجّه
dirty (adj)	مُتَسَبِّخ - قذر	thirsty (adj)	عطشان
empty (adj)	فارغ	towards (prep.)	إتجاه
flat (adj)	مُسْتَوِي - مُسَطَّح	weapon (n)	سلاح
getting closer	يدنو - يقترّب أكثر	wet (adj)	مبلّل - رطب
give a cry	يصرخ	worried (adj)	قلق
lying (adj)	مُفَدَّد - راقِد	wound (ed) (n - v)	جرح - يجرّح
mast (n)	صاري السفينة	wreck (n)	خُطام السفينة
move (d) (v)	يتحرّك	wreck (ed) (v)	تتحطم السفينة

Words and their definitions

- bandage (n)** : a long piece of cloth that you can put around an injury ضفّادة
- catch (v)** : to stop someone from escaping يقبض على - يمسك بـ
- deck (n)** : the top part of a ship where you can walk سطح السفينة
- flat (adj)** : smooth and level مُسْتَوِي - مُسَطَّح
- mast (n)** : the tall pole which carries the sails on a ship صاري السفينة
- reach (v)** : to move your hand or arm forward to hold or take something يصل إلى
- shallow (adj)** : not deep; measuring only a short distance from the top to the bottom ضحل - غير عميق
- shoulder (n)** : the part of your body between your arms and your neck كف
- wound (n)** : an injury, especially a deep cut from a knife; a sword, etc. جرح
- wreck (n)** : a ship that is badly damaged and cannot be used again خُطام السفينة

Collocations

fly	through the air يطير في الهواء	sail	a ship يقود سفينة
go	downstairs ينزل للطابق الأسفل	take down	a flag يُنزل / يُنكس راية
make	a lot of noise يُحدث ضجة كبيرة		

II Text of Chapter 9

Jim Hawkins:

It was very hot and I was **thirsty**⁽¹⁾. The trees were near now, but before I could feel happy, I saw the Hispaniola **sailing**⁽²⁾ around. I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me.



I watched the Hispaniola and saw that it went east, then west, then stopped. Then it did the same again and again. Nobody was sailing it! But, where were the men? I thought if I could get onto the ship, I could return it to Captain Smollett.

I started to **paddle**⁽³⁾ the boat, sometimes hitting waves, but slowly **getting closer**⁽⁴⁾ to the ship. As I got nearer, I saw nobody on the ship. It was so **close**⁽⁵⁾ that I could almost touch it. Suddenly, the wind changed and the ship was almost on top of me. I held onto a rope at the side of the ship just before it hit my little boat, which went under the waves. So, I found myself on the Hispaniola, with no other boat to save me.

I climbed up onto the **deck**⁽⁶⁾, which seemed **empty**⁽⁷⁾. The wind blew and the **sails**⁽⁸⁾ moved to the right, and then I saw them: Hands and the man he was fighting. I thought they were both dead, but then Hands said weakly: "Water!"

I went downstairs. The pirates had broken all the cupboard doors when they were looking for the map, and the floor was dirty with sand and mud from the island. I found some water and some food, which I put in my bag, and I went back to give the water to Hands. He drank all of it, very quickly.

"Are you hurt?" I asked him.

"With a doctor, I'll be fine," he said. "And where have you been?"

"Well, I've decided to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain," I said.

He looked at me angrily, but he also looked very ill.

"Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship,"

- (1) عطشان
- (2) يتجرح - شراع
- (3) مجداف - يجذف
- (4) يدنو - يقترب أكثر
- (5) قريب
- (6) سطح السفينة
- (7) فارغ
- (8) شراع

I said, and then I went to take down the black pirate flag. Hands looked at me, and then said, "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk."

"That's a good idea," I agreed.

"I don't think you can sail this ship," Hands said.

"So, if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound⁽⁹⁾, I'll help you."

"OK," I said, "But I'm not going back to where the ship was before. We're going to the north of the island."

"The north?" he asked. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go!"

So, I agreed to help him. I found a **bandage**⁽¹⁰⁾ to put on his wound and I also gave him some food and some more water. He soon looked better.

He told me how to sail the ship. It moved quickly along the coast of Treasure Island and soon we could see the **rocky**⁽¹¹⁾ north of the island. I felt good. I had water and food. The only thing that worried me was Hands. He looked at me all the time and I knew that he was planning something.

We arrived near the north of the island, and Hands told me how to stop the ship without an anchor. Then we sat down to eat.

"Could you go downstairs and get me some more water?" he asked.

I did not think for a minute that Hands was an honest man. He wanted me to leave the deck for a reason, but I did not know what this was. However, I also knew that Hands was not a clever man, so I agreed to go.



I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship, where I could see him. He was moving slowly and **painfully**⁽¹²⁾ across the deck, where he **picked**⁽¹³⁾ up a knife. He then hid the knife in his jacket and sat down where he was.

Now, I knew that he could move, that he had a **weapon**,⁽¹⁴⁾ and that he planned to hurt me. I did not know what he planned to do after that, but I knew that he could not hurt me until the ship stopped in a safe place near the island.

I went back downstairs, put on my shoes and returned with a bottle of water. Hands was sitting quietly, and took the bottle without saying thank you. Then he said, "Look, the wind has changed. If we **move**⁽¹⁵⁾ the ship now, we'll be safe."

We had only two miles to go to the shore. It was difficult to get to the correct place on the coast, but Hands told me what to do. This part of the

(9)	جرح
(10)	ضمادة
(11)	صخري
(12)	بشكل مؤلم
(13)	يلتقط
(14)	سلاح
(15)	يتحرك - يحرك

island was full of trees and we could see the **wreck**⁽¹⁶⁾ of an old ship **lying**⁽¹⁷⁾ on a **flat**⁽¹⁸⁾ beach.

"We can stop there, on the beach," said Hands.

I **steered**⁽¹⁹⁾ the ship slowly onto the beach, where it stopped with a low noise. I was so excited to arrive back at the island that I forgot to watch Hands. I suddenly turned round and there he was, standing with a knife in his hand.

I cried out and he jumped at me. I moved quickly to one side and he fell on the deck. Before he could stand up again, I took a gun from my jacket. However, the gun was wet from my journey and it did not work. I was very angry with myself.

I was surprised at how fast he could move with the wound in his leg. As he ran **towards**⁽²⁰⁾ me, I got ready to run away from him again, and he stopped. I remembered a game that I used to play with my friends in Black Hill Cove when one of us would try to catch the other. I was always good at this game and I thought that I could easily run **away from**⁽²¹⁾ this older pirate with a bad leg.

At that moment, a wave hit the Hispaniola. When the ship moved, we both fell over and I nearly fell onto Hands. Before he could stand, I decided to climb up the **mast**⁽²²⁾ of the ship. Up in the sails, I had time to repair my gun and soon it would be ready to fire again.

Hands looked up at me and saw my plan. He, too, started to climb the sails, but he could only climb slowly because of his bad leg. Before he was near me, I had the gun ready.

"If you **come any closer**⁽²³⁾, Mr Hands, you will be dead!"

He stopped and I could see he was thinking about what he could do.

"You're clever, Jim Hawkins," he said. "You've won."

I started to laugh, thinking I was clever, when suddenly he threw something at me. His knife flew through the air and hit me in the **shoulder**⁽²⁴⁾. I was so surprised that, without knowing how, my gun fired. Hands **gave a cry**⁽²⁵⁾ and fell down into the sea. I never saw him again.

The knife passed through my shoulder into the wood of the mast, so I could not move. It **hurt**⁽²⁶⁾ badly. It took a long time before I could think. When I finally looked at the knife, I saw that it only went through a small piece of skin. It was not difficult to take out.

I climbed back to the deck and found a bandage for my wound. I was now alone on the ship and it was nearly dark. I quickly took down all the sails I could reach and then jumped down into the **shallow**⁽²⁷⁾ water. I walked onto the sand, leaving the Hispaniola half on the beach and half in the water.

(16) خُطَام

(17) مُقَدَّد - راقِد

(18) مُسْتَوِي - مُسَطَّح

(19) يُوْجِه

(20) تَجَاه

(21) بَعِيداً عَنِ

(22) صَارِي السَّفِينَةِ

(23) يَقْتَرِبْ أَكْثَر

(24) كَتَف

(25) يَصْرُخ

(26) يُوْذِي

(27) ضَحْل - غَيْر عميق

III Main Points of Chapter 9

1. Jim was very thirsty and then saw the ship but nobody was sailing it.
2. Jim decided to go to the ship and could climb to it through a rope.
3. Jim saw Hands and the man he was fighting. Hands asked for water. Jim brought him some. Jim asked Hands to call him captain.
4. Hands agreed to help Jim take the ship to the north if Jim gave him some food and drink, and helped him with his wound.
5. Hands helped Jim sail the ship and stop it without an anchor. Jim knew Hands was not honest and was planning something.
6. Hands sent Jim to get him some water and then Hands moved painfully and picked a knife and hid it. Jim saw him.
7. Jim knew Hands could not hurt him until the ship stopped in a safe place. Hands tried to attack Jim. Jim moved quickly, got a gun but it didn't work.
8. Jim was good at games and could easily escape from Hands. Jim climbed the mast and could repair the gun.
9. Hands climbed the mast as well and could throw his knife into Jim's shoulder. The gun fired at Hands who fell down into the sea.
10. Luckily, the knife went through a small piece of Jim's skin. Jim took it out, found a bandage for the wound, put down most of the sails, and jumped into the shallow water, leaving the ship half on the beach and half in the water.

IV Questions and Answers

A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1. "I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the Pirates found me." What do you think Jim means by this?

- «لقد كنت عطشاً جداً لدرجة أنني لم أكن أعرف ما إذا كنت سأكون سعيداً أم حزيناً إذا وجدني القراصنة». في رأيك ماذا يقصد «جيم» بهذا؟

- He meant that he was so thirsty that he wanted to find water anyway.
- كان يقصد أنه كان عطشاً جداً لدرجة أنه كان يريد أن يجد الماء بأي طريقة.

2. If you were Jim, would you sail to the Hispaniola on your own?

- لو كنت مكان «جيم»، هل ستبحر إلى السفينة «هيسبانيولا» بمفردك؟

- No, I wouldn't. The ship was under the Pirates' control.
- لا، لن أفعل. لقد كانت السفينة تحت سيطرة القراصنة.

3. How do you think Jim tried to prove to be strong?

- في رأيك كيف أثبت «جيم» أنه قوي؟

- He climbed up the mast quickly.
- صعد الصاري بسرعة.

4. How did Jim prove to be kind?

- كيف أثبت «جيم» أنه طيب؟

- He gave Hands some water and a bandage.
- أعطى «هاندز» بعض الماء وضمادة.

5. To what extent did Jim prove to be brave?

- إلى أي مدى كيف أثبت «جيم» أنه شجاع؟

- He sailed out to the ship alone and got onto it just as his small boat was destroyed.

- أبحر إلى السفينة بمفرده وصعد إليها في لحظة تحطم قاربه الصغير.

6. Why do you think Jim wanted to take the Pirates' flag down from the ship?

(WB)

- في رأيك لماذا أراد «جيم» إنزال علم القراصنة من السفينة؟

- To show that he was captain then, not the Pirates.
- لإظهار أنه كان القبطان في ذلك الوقت، وليس القراصنة.

7. What does a flag mean to a ship?

(WB)

- ماذا يعني العلم للسفينة؟

- It shows who (or which country) a ship belongs to.
- إنه يُظهر من يملك (أو إلى أي بلد تنتمي) السفينة.

8. In what way can Hands help Jim?

(WB)

- بأي طريقة يمكن أن يساعد «هاندز» «جيم»؟

- Hands knows how to sail the ship and Jim doesn't.
- كان «هاندز» يعرف كيف تبحر بالسفينة لكن «جيم» لا يعرف.

9. Why do you think Jim asked Hands to sail the ship to the north of the island?

- برأيك، لماذا طلب «جيم» من «هاندز» الإبحار بالسفينة إلى شمال الجزيرة؟

- I think he wanted to keep the ship away from the Pirates.

- أعتقد أنه أراد إبعاد السفينة عن القراصنة.

10. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go." Did Hands really help Jim? How?

(SB)

- بالطبع، سأبحر بالسفينة إلى أي مكان تريد الذهاب إليه. هل حقاً قام «هاندز» بمساعدة «جيم»؟ كيف؟

- Yes, he did. He helped Jim by showing him how to sail the ship.

- نعم لقد فعل. لقد ساعد «جيم» من خلال تعليمه كيفية الإبحار بالسفينة.

11. What kind of person do you think Hands was? Why?

- برأيك، أي نوع من الأشخاص كان «هاندز»؟ لماذا؟

- I think he was dishonest. He planned to kill Jim with a knife.

- أعتقد أنه كان غير أمين. لقد خطط لقتل «جيم» بسكين.

12. "I went downstairs and made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and quietly to another part of the ship." Why do you think Jim does this?

(SB)

- نزلت إلى الطابق السفلي وأحدثت ضجة كبيرة، ثم خلعت حذائي وذهبت بهدوء إلى جزء آخر من السفينة. لماذا يفعل «جيم» هذا؟

- Because he wanted to watch Hands secretly to see what he would do.

- لأنه أراد أن يراقب «هاندز» سراً ليرى ماذا سيفعل.

13. "I went downstairs and made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and quietly went to another part of the ship." What does this tell you about Jim?

(SB)

- نزلت إلى الطابق السفلي وأحدثت ضجة كبيرة، ثم خلعت حذائي وذهبت بهدوء إلى جزء آخر من السفينة. ماذا يخبرك هذا عن «جيم»؟

- It shows that Jim is clever and does not trust Hands.

- يدل على أن «جيم» ذكي ولا يثق في «هاندز».

14. How did Jim prove to be clever?

- كيف أثبت «جيم» أنه ذكي؟

- He quietly watched Hands and realised he cannot be trusted.

- راقب «هاندز» بهدوء وأدرك أنه لا يمكن الوثوق به.

B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students:

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. After he had left the Hispaniola on the small boat, why did Jim return to it?

(SB)

- بعد أن غادر «جيم» السفينة «هيسبانيولا» على متن القارب الصغير، لماذا عاد إليها؟

- He thought nobody was on the ship, so he thought he could return the Hispaniola to Captain Smollett.

- كان يعتقد أنه لا يوجد أحد على متن السفينة، لذلك اعتقد أنه يستطيع إعادة السفينة «هيسبانيولا» إلى القبطان «سموليت».

2. How did the Hispaniola look when Jim came nearer to it? (WB)

- كيف كانت تبدو السفينة «هيسبانيولا» عندما اقترب «جيم» منها؟

- It looked empty. - لقد بدت فارغة.

3. What happened to Ben Gun's boat? (SB)

- ماذا حدث لقارب «بن غان»؟

- The Hispaniola hit it and it went into the sea.

- لقد صدمته السفينة «هيسبانيولا» وغرق البحر.

4. How was Jim saved after the Hispaniola hit his boat? (WB)

- كيف تم إنقاذ «جيم» بعد أن اصطدمت السفينة «هيسبانيولا» بقاربه؟

- He held onto a rope at the side of the ship.

- لقد أمسك بحبل على جانب السفينة.

5. What did Jim give the Pirate (Hands)? (SB)

- ماذا أعطى «جيم» للقرصان «هاندز»؟

- Some water. - بعض المياه.

6. Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'? (WB)

- لماذا ينادي «هاندز» على «جيم» بلقب «الكابتن هوكينز»؟

- Because Jim said he was taking over the ship from the Pirates so he is now the captain.

- لأن «جيم» قال أنه سيتولى قيادة السفينة من القراصنة، لذا فهو الآن القبطان.

7. "Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship." What flag did Jim mean? (WB)

- «أيضاً يا سيد «هاندز»، لا يمكننا رفع هذا العلم على السفينة.» ما العلم الذي يقصده «جيم»؟

- The Pirates' flag. - إنه علم القراصنة.

8. How did Jim take the Hispaniola back to the island? (SB)

- كيف أعاد «جيم» السفينة «هيسبانيولا» إلى الجزيرة؟

- The Pirate, Hands, showed him how to sail the ship.

- لقد أخبره القرصان «هاندز» كيفية الإبحار بالسفينة.

9. What did Hands plan to do with Jim? (WB)

- ماذا خطط «هاندز» ليفعل مع «جيم»؟

- He planned to kill him. - لقد خطط لقتله.

General Exercises on Chapter 9

1. Jim wasn't afraid of looking for adventure everywhere. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

.....

2. Thirst led Jim to get control on the Hispaniola. Illustrate.

.....

3. "Nobody was sailing it!" Why do you think Jim knew that?

.....

4. Ben Gun's small boat was very useful to Jim. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

.....

5. What's your opinion of Jim's reaction to Hands when he asked for water?

.....

6. In your opinion, was Jim serious when he told Hands to call him "Captain" ?

.....

7. If you were Jim, how would you behave with Hands?

.....

8. Although Jim was kind to Hands, Hands was a wicked and cunning person. Illustrate.

.....

9. "So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I'll help you." What do you think of the speaker?

.....

10. "If you come any closer, Mr Hands, you will be dead!" Why did the speaker say so?

.....

11. At the end of his adventure with Hands, Jim managed to kill him. Do you think he deserved it? Why?

.....

12. Jim was Lucky in his fight with Hands. Do you think so? Why / Why not?

.....



I VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	now that (conj.)	لأن - بما أن
alive (adj)	علي قيد الحياة	parrot (n)	ببغاء
anchor (n)	مرساة (الهرب)	pleased (adj)	سعيد
anymore (adv)	بعد الآن - مرة أخرى	remain (ed) (v)	يظل - يبقى
badly (adv)	بشدة - بشكل سيء	rule (n)	قاعدة - قانون
bring - brought - brought (v)	يُخْضِر	run into (v)	يصطدم بـ - يصادف
care (ed) (v - n)	يهتم - اهتمام	save (d) (v)	يُنْقِذ
dark (n - adj)	الظلام - مُظْلِم	somewhere (adv)	مكان ما
find my way	أجد طريقي	still (adv)	مازال
frightened (adj)	خائف	take back to (v)	يُعيد إلى
gang (n)	عصابة	torch (n)	شُعْلَة - كشاف
go back (v)	يعود	trap (ped) (v)	يحتجز - يقع في فخ
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	trapped (adj)	مُخْتَجَز
leader (n)	قائد	trial (n)	مُحاوَلَة - مُحاكَمَة
look after	يرعى	unusual (adj)	غير مألوف
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste (d) (v)	يُتَدَد - يُضَيِّع
more of a man	أكثر رجولة	weak (adj)	ضعيف

Words and their definitions

alive (adj)	: living; not dead	علي قيد الحياة
care (v)	: to be concerned about or interested in something	يهتم - يري
rules (n)	: instructions about what you can and can't do	قواعد
torch (n)	: a stick that you burn at one end for light	شُعْلَة
trapped (adj)	: unable to leave or escape	يُخْضِر

Collocations

cut	a rope	يقطع حبل	look	after (someone)	يرعى شخص
hold on	to someone	يتشبث بـ	look	telling (someone) (something)	
lie down	on a bed	يتمدد علي فراش	forward to		يتطلع لأن يخبر شخص بشيء

II Text of Chapter 10

Jim Hawkins:

At last, I was back on the island. The ship was safe from the pirates, ready for our men to **go back to**⁽¹⁾ sea. I **looked forward to**⁽²⁾ telling my friends about my latest **adventure**⁽³⁾ and started to walk back across the island.



I remembered the map, so I knew how to return to the place where I had met Ben Gun for the first time.

As I continued, it was very **dark**⁽⁴⁾. It was difficult for me to **find my way**⁽⁵⁾, but the light of the moon helped me. When I was near the **fort**⁽⁶⁾, I went more slowly. I did not want my friends to think I was a pirate. Suddenly, I saw a red light through trees. What was it? Then I saw that there was a big fire next to the fort. I thought that this was **unusual**⁽⁷⁾, as Captain Smollett was always very careful not to **waste**⁽⁸⁾ wood for the fire.

I quietly went back inside the dark fort, and I was very **pleased**⁽⁹⁾ to hear the men inside talking quietly. However, I realised that they were not good **guards**⁽¹⁰⁾ because nobody saw me return.

I was about to climb into my bed when I heard the words, "Who is it? Who is it?" I realised that it was Captain Flint, Silver's **parrot**⁽¹¹⁾!

Everyone in the room woke up, and I heard someone call out: "Who's there?" It was Long John Silver! I turned to run away but I **ran into**⁽¹²⁾ a man, who held on to me. I was **trapped**⁽¹³⁾.

"**Bring**⁽¹⁴⁾ a **torch**⁽¹⁵⁾, Dick," said Silver.

When he returned with a torch, I could see inside the room. I realised that the fort was now full of pirates. Our food was on the table, too, but I could not see any of my friends. Was it possible that they were all dead?

There were five pirates standing in the room. Another pirate lay in bed. He looked **badly**⁽¹⁶⁾ hurt. Silver looked tired. His parrot was on his **shoulder**⁽¹⁷⁾, and his clothes were dirty.

(1) يُعَوِّدُ إِلَى

(2) يَنْتَظِرُ إِلَى

(3) مَغَامِرَةٌ

(4) فَظْلِمٌ

(5) أَجَدُ طَرِيقِي

(6) جِصْنٌ

(7) غَيْرُ مألُوفٍ

(8) يَتَنَدَّدُ - يُضَيِّعُ

(9) سَعِيدٌ

(10) حُرَّاسٌ

(11) بَيْغَاءٌ

(12) بِصُطْدَمٍ - بِصَافٍ

(13) مُحْتَجِزٌ - يَقَعُ فِي فَخٍّ

(14) يُخَضِّرُ

(15) مُصْبَاحٌ - كُشَافٌ

(16) بِشَدَّةٍ - بِشَكْلِ سَيِّئٍ

(17) خُلف

"So, Jim Hawkins!" said Silver. "It's nice of you to visit us. You don't have to stand up for Jim!" he told his men and they lay down on their beds again.

"I knew you were clever," Silver said to me.

"I always wanted you to be one of us, because I was like you when I was a boy. Now, you can't **go back**⁽¹⁸⁾ to your friends because they think you've left them. So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to **join**⁽¹⁹⁾ us now."

I was pleased to hear that my friends were **still**⁽²⁰⁾ alive, but I was not happy to hear that they did not want me **anymore**⁽²¹⁾.

"Now, you don't have to say yes," said Silver. "I can't tell you what to do."

"I'll answer you," I said, in a **weak**⁽²²⁾ voice. "First, I want to know where my friends are."

"Yesterday morning," explained Silver, "Dr Livesy came down with a white flag. He told me that the Hispaniola was not there any more."

We looked round and he was right! The ship was gone! Then the doctor said that we could have the fort. I asked him how many of them were in the fort, and he said there were four, and one of them was hurt. And he said he did not know or **care**⁽²³⁾ where you were. So, here we are. I don't know where they are now."

"Do I have to decide now?" I asked.

"Yes, you have to decide now," said Silver.

"Very well. But there are some things you need to know. First, you have lost your ship, you have lost your treasure and you have lost many of your men. How did you lose them? It was me! I heard your plans on the Hispaniola and told Captain Smollett. And I cut the **anchor**⁽²⁴⁾ ropes of the ship, and took it to a place that you don't know. I'm not **frightened**⁽²⁵⁾ of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: if you don't kill me, I'll help you at your **trial**⁽²⁶⁾. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?"

I stopped talking and all the men looked at me angrily.

"That was the boy who knew Black Dog in Bristol!" said one of the pirates called Morgan. "And he was the boy who got the map from Billy Bones!" Morgan then stood up with a knife.



(18) يعود

(19) ينضم إلى

(20) لا يزال

(21) بعد الآن - مرة أخرى

(22) ضعيف

(23) يهتم - اهتمام

(24) مرساة (الهرب)

(25) خائف

(26) مُحَاكَمَة - مُحَاوَلَة

"Stop!" called Silver. "Do you think that you're the captain now? You do as I say!"

Morgan and the other pirates were quiet.

"I like this boy," Silver continued. "I've never seen a better boy than him. He's **more of a man**⁽²⁷⁾ than any of you."

The other pirates did not look happy and they started to talk quietly to each other.

"What are you saying?" said Silver.

"We don't like all of your **rules**⁽²⁸⁾," said one of the pirates. "We're going to talk together without you. You can't stop us."

Soon, all the men left the room, and only Silver and I **remained**⁽²⁹⁾.

"Listen Jim," said Silver. "I don't think that they want me to be the captain any more. But I can **look after**⁽³⁰⁾ you, if you look after me."

"Do you mean that they want to kill you?"

"They don't need me **now that**⁽³¹⁾ I don't have the ship. But if you **save**⁽³²⁾ me, I can save you."

I was surprised to hear this. He was the **leader**⁽³³⁾ of the **gang**⁽³⁴⁾ of pirates, and now he wanted the help of a boy.

"I'll do what I can," I told him.

"You're a good boy!" he said. "I know you've got the ship safe **somewhere**⁽³⁵⁾. I don't know how you did it, but you did. Remember, I'm now with Mr Trelawney and his men. So, why did the doctor give me the map, Jim?"

He saw that I was surprised.

"Yes, he gave it to me. He must have a plan, you know. Let's hope it's a good one."

I looked out of the fort and saw the pirates talking in a group. One of the men had some paper and a knife and the others were watching him. Then they started to walk back towards us.

"They're coming!" I told Silver.

"Let them come!" he said.



(27)	أكثر رجولة
(28)	قواعد - قوانين
(29)	يظل - يبقى
(30)	يعتلى - يرعى
(31)	لأن - بما أن
(32)	يُنقذ
(33)	قائد
(34)	عصابة
(35)	مكان ما

III Main Points of Chapter 10

1. Jim was excited to go back and looked forward to telling his friends about his latest adventure.
2. Jim was trapped because the fort was full of pirates who caught him when captain Flint said "Who is it ? Who is it ?".
3. Silver asked Jim either to stay alone or join them because his friends thought he left them.
4. Jim was clever and could show to the Pirates that they needed him because he knew where the ship was and could help them so it was them to decide.
5. Morgan tried to kill Jim but Silver shouted at him and stopped him. Silver said he liked Jim and had never seen a better boy than Jim.
6. The other Pirates didn't like Silver or his plans and decide to talk alone away of Silver.
7. When the Pirates knew that Silver didn't have the ship, they didn't want him to be the captain
8. Silver asked Jim to help him and then Silver could look after Jim.
9. Silver told Jim that he was with Mr Trelawney and his men and that the doctor gave him the map. Jim was surprised.
10. The other pirates talked to each others and went towards Silver and Jim.

IV Questions and Answers

A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1. To what extent was Jim successful in his adventure on the Hispaniola?

إلى أي مدى نجح «جيم» في مغامرته على السفينة «هيسبانيولا»؟

- He was very successful. He took over the ship and took it away from the Pirates' control.

لقد كان ناجحاً جداً. لقد استولى على السفينة وأبعد عنها عن سيطرة القراصنة.

2. If you were Jim, would you join the Pirates? Why/Why not?

لو كنت «جيم»، هل ستتنضم إلى القراصنة؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. They were all evil criminals.

لا، لن أفعل. لقد كانوا جميعاً مجرمون أشرار.

3. Silver tried to mislead Jim concerning his friends. Explain how.

حاول «سيلفر»، تضليل «جيم»، فيما يتعلق بأصدقائه. اشرح كيف.

- He tried to make him think that his friends thought he had left them and would never want him with them again.

حاول أن يجعله يعتقد أن أصدقائه ظنوا أنه تركهم ولن يريدوه معهم مرة أخرى.

4. When Jim arrived at the fort, he was sad, then he was very happy but worried. Explain.

(WB)

عندما وصل «جيم» إلى الحصن، كان حزيناً ثم أصبح سعيداً جداً ولكنه قلق. اشرح ذلك.

- He was sad because at first, he thought his friends were dead.

He was happy when he found they were alive, but worried because he did not know where they were.

كان حزيناً لأنه في البداية ظن أن أصدقائه قد ماتوا، وأصبح سعيداً عندما وجدهم على قيد الحياة، لكنه كان قلقاً لأنه لم يكن يعرف مكانهم.

5. Jim was in trouble, but he could turn things upside down. Explain.

(WB)

كان «جيم» في ورطة، لكنه استطاع أن يقلب الأمور رأساً على عقب. اشرح ذلك.

- Although he was with the Pirates - and in trouble - he could use his knowledge of where the ship was to have power over Silver.

على الرغم من وجوده مع القراصنة - وفي ورطة - إلا أنه استطاع استخدام معرفته بمكان السفينة ليتمكن من السيطرة على «سيلفر».

6. "I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: If you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?" Why do you think Jim was not frightened of Silver? (WB)

- «أنا لست خائفاً منك! يمكنك قتلي إذا أردت، لكن تذكر: إذا لم تقتلني، فسوف أساعدك في محاكمتك. لذا، عليك الآن أن تقرر. ماذا سوف تفعل بي؟» لماذا تعتقد أن «جيم» لم يكن خائفاً من «سيلفر»؟

- Because Silver knew that Jim had the ship, so he could not do anything to Jim.

- لأن «سيلفر» كان يعلم أن «جيم» كانت لديه السفينة، لذلك لن يتمكن من فعل أي شيء ضد «جيم».

7. "I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: If you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?" Do you think Jim was right to offer to help Silver in his trial? (WB)

- «أنا لست خائفاً منك! يمكنك قتلي إذا أردت، لكن تذكر: إذا لم تقتلني، فسوف أساعدك في محاكمتك. لذا، عليك الآن أن تقرر. ماذا سوف تفعل بي؟» هل تعتقد أن «جيم» كان على حق في عرض مساعدة «سيلفر» في محاكمته؟

- Yes, because this was a good way for him to protect himself. He wanted to offer Silver something.

- نعم، لأن هذه كانت وسيلة جيدة له لحماية نفسه. لقد أراد أن يعرض على «سيلفر» شيئاً.

8. "I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: If you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?" Do you think Jim was right to say this in front of all Silver's men? (WB)

- «أنا لست خائفاً منك! يمكنك قتلي إذا أردت، لكن تذكر: إذا لم تقتلني، فسوف أساعدك في محاكمتك. لذا، عليك الآن أن تقرر. ماذا سوف تفعل بي؟» هل تعتقد أن «جيم» كان على حق في قول هذا أمام جميع رجال «سيلفر»؟

- This was perhaps not a good idea, as the pirates became angry with both him and Silver, because they knew Jim was right.

- ربما لم تكن هذه فكرة جيدة، فلقد غضب القراصنة منه ومن «سيلفر»، لأنهم كانوا يعرفون أن «جيم» كان على حق.

9. Silver had two offers to Jim and both were surprising. Explain. (WB)

- سيلفر كان لديه عرضان لـ «جيم»؛ وكلاهما كان مثيراً للدهشة. اشرح ذلك.

- First, he asks Jim to join the Pirates, then he asks Jim to help him, perhaps against the pirates.

- أولاً، طلب من «جيم» الانضمام إلى القراصنة، ثم طلب من «جيم» مساعدته، ربما ضد القراصنة.

10. Would you prefer to have Silver as a friend or an enemy? Why? (WB)
 هل تفضل أن يكون «سيلفر» صديقك أو عدوك؟ لماذا؟
 - I would like to have him as an enemy. He was dishonest.
 أود أن يكون عدواً. لقد كان غير أمين.

B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students:

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. How did Jim know where things were on the island? (SB)
 كيف عرف «جيم» أين كانت الأشياء في الجزيرة؟
 - He remembered the map.
 لقد تذكر الخريطة.
2. Why was Jim surprised to see a fire next to the fort? (SB)
 لماذا تفاجأ «جيم» برؤية حريق بجوار الحصن؟
 - Captain Smollett did not usually waste wood.
 لم يكن الكابتن «سموليت» يهدر الحطب عادة.
3. Why did Jim think the guards were not good? (SB)
 لماذا ظن «جيم» أن الحراس لم يكونوا جيدين؟
 - They did not see him when he walked in.
 لم يروه عندما دخل.
4. Why did Silver say that Jim had to join him? (SB)
 لماذا قال «سيلفر» أن «جيم» يجب أن ينضم إليه؟
 - Because he was like Jim as a boy, and because Jim was clever.
 لأنه كان مثل «جيم» عندما كان صبياً، ولأن «جيم» كان ذكياً.
5. How did Silver take the fort? (SB)
 كيف استولى «سيلفر» على الحصن؟
 - Dr Livesy told him he could have it.
 لقد أخبره الدكتور «ليفسي» أنه يمكن أن يحصل عليه.
6. Why did the Pirates no longer need Silver? (SB)
 لماذا لم يعد القراصنة بحاجة إلى «سيلفر»؟
 - Because he didn't have a ship any more.
 لأنه لم يعد لديه سفينة.

General Exercises on Chapter 10

1. Why do you think Jim was able to walk around the island easily?

2. Despite being young, Jim helped his friends a lot during their journey. Discuss.

3. Jim noticed many things before getting into the fort, but he was trapped. Illustrate.

.....

4. Do you think it was Jim's mistake to be trapped in the fort? Why / Why not?

.....

5. If it hadn't been for Silver's parrot, Jim would have escaped. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

.....

6. Being trapped in the fort wasn't the only thing that disappointed Jim. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

.....

7. "So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to join us now." Silver said to Jim. What can we infer from this sentence?

.....

8. "Now, you can't go back to your friends because they think you've left them." In your point of view, how did Jim feel on hearing these words?

.....

9. "And he said he did not know or care where you were." Do you think the speaker tells the truth? Why / Why not?

.....

10. Do you think Jim was afraid when he was trapped in the fort? Why / Why not?

.....

11. "I've never seen a better boy than him. He's more of a man than any of you." How do you think these words saved Jim's life?

.....

12. "They don't need me now that I don't have the ship. But if you save me, I can save you." What do you think the speaker mean by these words?

.....



I VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

agreement (n)	اتفاق - موافقة	patient (n - adj)	مريض - صبور
arrest (ed) (v)	يقبض علي	perhaps (adv)	ربما
be friends with	يُصادق	promise (d) (v)	يُعد - يعطي وعداً
come to an agreement	يتوصل لاتفاق	remind (ed) (v)	يُذكّر
except (for) (adv)	فيما عدا - باستثناء	right (n)	حق
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع - يتتبع	show - showed - shown (v)	يُوضّح - يُبين
forward (adv)	للأمام	sound (ed) (v)	يبدو
good (n)	الخير	stay safe	يبقي بأمان
jump (ed) (v - n)	قفزة - يقفز	trial (n)	محاكمة
let - let - let (v)	يسمح ل - يدع	trick (ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
malaria (n)	مرض الملاريا	trust (ed) (v - n)	يثق - الثقة
negotiate (ed) (v)	يُفاوض - يتفاوض	turn (ed) (v)	يستدير - يلف
nervously (adv)	بتوتر - بعصبية	wake - woke - woken (v)	يوقظ - يستيقظ
nod (ded) (v - n)	يومئ - إيماءة		

Words and their definitions

agreement (n)	: a decision made by two or more people	اتفاق
arrest (v)	: the police take someone away for doing something bad	يقبض علي
malaria (n)	: a serious illness that comes from mosquitos	مرض الملاريا (البعوض)
negotiate (v)	: discuss a situation to find a good result for everyone	يُفاوض - يتفاوض
nod (n)	: a movement of your head that gives someone a sign	حركة إشارة
promise (v)	: say you will certainly do something	يُعد - يعطي وعداً

Collocations

come	to an agreement	يتوصل لاتفاق	stay	safe	يبقي بأمان
know	how to do something	يعرف كيف يفعل شيء ما	take	medicine	يتناول الدواء
save	lives	ينقذ حياة	take	lives	يُهلك

II Text of Chapter 11

Jim Hawkins:

The pirates walked in through the door. One of the men was holding a piece of paper, and he **nervously**⁽¹⁾ walked **forward**⁽²⁾ to give it to Silver.



Silver read it. "So, I'm not the captain now, is that it?" he said. "Can I have the **torch**⁽³⁾ for a minute, so I can read it better?"

"Don't try your **tricks**⁽⁴⁾ on us," said one of the pirates, called George.

"I'm still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn't be," said Silver.

"We can tell you," said George. "First, your plans haven't worked. Second, you let Trelawney and his men leave the fort, and we're sure that they have a plan. Third, you wouldn't let us **follow**⁽⁵⁾ them. And fourth, there's the boy!"

"Is that all?" asked Silver.

"That's enough, isn't it?" said George.

"I'll answer each reason," said Silver. "First, who didn't do what I asked them to do? Anderson, Hands and you, George! If we are **arrested**⁽⁶⁾ when we return to England, it is because of those people! Second, we have a doctor on the island. He's important because some of us are very ill at the moment. The doctor and I **came to an agreement**⁽⁷⁾ so that he would help us. And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to **negotiate**⁽⁸⁾. And what about reason three? Well, this is why we didn't follow them!" he continued, and **showed**⁽⁹⁾ them the treasure map.

I was very surprised and I did not understand why the doctor had given the map to him. The pirates, however, looked at it with wonder.

"That's Flint's map!" said George. "But, how are we to take his treasure home if we don't have a ship?"

"Listen, George," said Silver. "You lost my boat, but I can find the treasure. So, who should be captain now?"

"Silver's **right**⁽¹⁰⁾," said Morgan, and the other pirates agreed. Silver was still the captain.

The pirates now seemed happy, **except for**⁽¹¹⁾ George. Silver made him guard the fort all night while the other men laughed and sang.

(1) بتوتر - بعصبية

(2) للأمام

(3) شعلة

(4) خدع

(5) يتبع - يتتبع

(6) يقبض علي

(7) يتوصل لاتفاق

(8) يفاوض - يتفاوض

(9) يوضح - يبين

(10) حق

(11) فيما عدا - باستثناء

I lay down and thought about Silver. I understood that he was very clever. He knew how to **be friends with**⁽¹²⁾ all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to **stay safe**⁽¹³⁾.

The next morning, a voice **woke**⁽¹⁴⁾ us all up (and I mean all of us, even George, the guard). It was Dr Livesy calling us. I was very happy to hear him, but also worried. I had left my friends and now I was with Silver's gang. What would Dr Livesy think?

"Good morning, Doctor," said Silver. "Come in! George will open the door for you. We've got a surprise for you, too!"

"Do you mean Jim?" asked Dr Livesy. He looked surprised as he came near us.

"That's right," said Silver.

The doctor did not speak for some time. Then he said, "Let me see your **patients**⁽¹⁵⁾."

He walked into the fort and, with a small **nod**⁽¹⁶⁾ to me, walked up to the ill pirates. He talked to them as if they were any English patient, although he knew they were all dangerous men.

"I hope you took your medicine?" he said to George.

"Yes, sir, I did," he replied.

"Good, because now I'm a pirate's doctor, I want to keep you all healthy so we can get you back to England for **trial**⁽¹⁷⁾," he said.

The pirates looked at each other but they said nothing.

"Dick doesn't feel well," said Morgan.

"Let me look at you," the doctor replied.

"Yes, you have **malaria**⁽¹⁸⁾. That's what happens when you sleep outside on an island like this. I'm surprised that a clever man like Silver didn't realise."

He gave Dick some medicine, then said, "Now I'd like to talk to the boy, please."

"No!" said George.

"Be quiet!" shouted Silver. "Doctor, you've been kind to help us with our medicine, so you can talk to the boy. But first he must promise not to run away."

I agreed.

"Good. Now you can go outside, doctor, and you can talk to the boy through the window. He can stay inside," said Silver.

(12) يُضَاق

(13) يبقى بأمان

(14) أيقظ

(15) مرضى

(16) إيماءة

(17) محاكمة

(18) مرض الملاريا



When the doctor went outside, the other pirates told Silver that they were not happy that the doctor could talk to me. Silver **reminded**⁽¹⁹⁾ them they did not know where the treasure was yet. They needed my help, and **perhaps**⁽²⁰⁾ the doctor's help as well, until the time was right.

Silver took me to a window where I could talk to the doctor. When he knew the pirates could not hear, he spoke to the doctor, but he **sounded**⁽²¹⁾ different.

"Tell the others that I helped you, doctor," he said. "The boy will tell you how I saved him, too. If you help me, you will also help the boy stay safe."

"I think you're frightened!" said Dr Livesy.

"I'm not frightened," said Silver, "but I know you're a good man and you'll see the **good**⁽²²⁾ in me. Now, I'll **let**⁽²³⁾ you and Jim talk."

Silver walked away and sat down, where he could not hear us.

"Jim, what happened? Why did you leave us when we needed you?" the doctor asked me.

I felt very bad and started to cry. "I'm sorry, doctor! I was wrong. They were going to kill me, but Silver saved me. I must stay here now."

"No," said the doctor. "You can't stay here. One **jump**⁽²⁴⁾ and you're out of the fort, and we can run."

"I can't," I said. "Silver **trusts**⁽²⁵⁾ me now. But if they hurt me, I will have to tell them where the ship is. Because I got the ship! It's in the north of the island, half on a beach."

"You've got the ship!" said the doctor.

I quickly told him my story.

"You've saved our lives many times on this journey," said the doctor. He then **turned**⁽²⁶⁾ to Silver.

"It'll be dangerous to look for that treasure, Silver," he said. "Don't try to find it."

"But I can only save my life and the boy's life if I find it," Silver replied.

"OK, then keep the boy close to you. If you need help, shout. Goodbye, Jim," he said, and left the fort.

"We can look for the treasure now, Jim," said Silver. "You stay close to me. We'll look after each other."

(19) يَذْكُر

(20) ربما

(21) يبدو

(22) الخير

(23) يسمح لـ - يَدْعُ

(24) قفزة

(25) يثق

(26) يستدير - يلف



III Main Points of Chapter 11

1. The other pirates hand a paper to Silver that he is not the captain for many reasons. Silver's plans failed. He let Trelawney and his men leave and stopped them following Trelawney, and because of the boy.
2. Silver defends himself and persuades them to remain the captain because it was the pirates who disobeyed him. They could be arrested in England and the doctor agreed to help them.
3. Silver was clever. He knew how to be friends with all pirates.
4. The following morning Dr Livesy came to check the patients and was surprised to see Jim. The doctor spoke to them all in a friendly way asking them to get better to take them to England for trial.
5. The doctor gave them medicine and asked to speak to Jim. Silver agreed although the other pirates were not happy.
6. Silver told them they needed Jim's help to find the treasure and the doctor's help as well.
7. Silver asked the doctor quietly to tell the other men that Silver helped him (the doctor) and saved the boy.
8. Jim told the doctor his story and that he had the ship in the north of the island, but he couldn't escape because Silver trusted him.
9. The doctor was happy. He said Jim saved their lives many times. The doctor told Silver it was difficult to find the treasure.
10. Silver said it was the only way to save his life and the boy's life as well. Silver asked Jim to stay close to him to look after each other.

IV Questions and Answers

A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1. "Can I have the torch for a minute, so I can read it better?" What do you think really made Silver ask for the torch?

- «هل يمكنني الحصول على المصباح لمدة دقيقة، حتى أتمكن من قراءتها بشكل أفضل؟» ما السبب الحقيقي الذي جعل «سيلفر» يطلب المصباح؟

- I think he wanted to get some time to think.

- أعتقد أنه أراد الحصول على بعض الوقت للتفكير.

2. In your opinion, were the Pirates right on their attempt not to keep Silver as a captain? Why/Why not?

- هل كان القراصنة على حق في محاولتهم عدم الإبقاء على «سيلفر» كقائد؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟

- Yes, they were. He cared only for himself and his interests.

- نعم. كان يهتم فقط بنفسه ومصالحه.

3. Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the Pirates' questions? (SB)

- لماذا برأيك ظل «جورج» غاضباً بعد أن أجاب «سيلفر» على أسئلة القراصنة؟

- Because he wanted to be the captain instead of Silver. He probably thinks Silver and Jim are planning something, too.

- لأنه أراد أن يكون الكابتن بدلاً من «سيلفر». ربما يعتقد أن «سيلفر» و«جيم» يخططان لشيء ما أيضاً.

4. "And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to negotiate" What do you think Silver means by this?

- «والصبي؟ سيكون مفيداً إذا أردنا التفاوض. ماذا يقصد «سيلفر» بهذا في رأيك؟

- I think he meant that they might need to use Jim as an important point of pressure if they wanted anything from Dr Livesy and his group.

- أعتقد أنه كان يقصد أنهم قد يحتاجون إلى استخدام «جيم» كنقطة ضغط مهمة إذا أرادوا أي شيء من الدكتور «ليفسي» ومجموعته.

5. Why do you think Jim thinks that Silver would do or say anything to stay safe? (SB)

- في اعتقادك، لماذا يعتقد «جيم» أن «سيلفر» سيفعل أو يقول أي شيء ليظل آمناً؟

- Because he has seen him do this many times.

- لأنه رآه يفعل ذلك مرات عديدة.

6. Why does Jim think that Silver was very clever? (SB)

- لماذا يعتقد «جيم» أن «سيلفر» كان ذكياً جداً؟

- Because he is always able to keep the Pirates on his side.

- لأنه قادر دائماً على إبقاء القراصنة إلى جانبه.

7. If you were Dr Livesy, would you look after the ill pirates? Why/Why not?

- لو كنت الدكتور «ليفسي»، هل ستعتني بالقراصنة المرضى؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟
 - Of course I would. It is the duty of a doctor to look after patients regardless of anything else.
 - بالطبع سأفعل. من واجب الطبيب رعاية المرضى بغض النظر عن أي شيء آخر.

8. Why did Dr Livesy think that Silver was frightened? (SB)

- لماذا اعتقد الدكتور «ليفسي» أن «سيلفر» كان خائفاً؟
 - Because he did not have a ship and he was not sure that the Pirates would follow him.
 - لأنه لم يكن لديه سفينة ولم يكن متأكداً من أن القراصنة سيتبعونه.

9. Are you surprised that Dr Livesy agreed to let Jim stay with Silver? Why/Why not? (SB)

- هل تفاجأت بموافقة الدكتور «ليفسي» على السماح لـ «جيم» بالبقاء مع «سيلفر»؟ لماذا لا؟
 - Yes, I am surprised. Dr Livesy was supposed to be responsible for Jim who was just a child.
 - نعم أنا مندهش. كان من المفترض أن يكون الدكتور «ليفسي» مسؤولاً عن «جيم» الذي كان مجرد طفل.

10. Why does Dr Livesy agree to let Silver look for the treasure? (SB)

- لماذا يوافق الدكتور «ليفسي» على السماح لـ «سيلفر» بالبحث عن الكنز؟
 - He probably has a plan.
 - ربما لديه خطة.

11. Silver often said that he liked Jim. Do you think he really liked him or did he say this for another reason? (SB)

- كثيراً ما قال «سيلفر» إنه يحب «جيم». هل تعتقد أنه أحبه حقاً أم أنه قال ذلك لسبب آخر؟
 - I think he liked Jim because he was clever and he remembered that he was like Jim as a boy. But he also wanted to use Jim for his own plans to get the treasure.
 - أعتقد أنه أحب «جيم» لأنه كان ذكياً وتذكر أنه كان مثل «جيم» عندما كان صبياً. لكنه أراد أيضاً استخدام «جيم» في خطته الخاصة للحصول على الكنز.

12. Dr Livesy told Silver that he did not care about Jim. Do you believe this, or did he say this for another reason? (SB)

- أخبر الدكتور «ليفسي» «سيلفر» أنه لا يهتم بـ «جيم». هل تصدق هذا أم أنه قال هذا لسبب آخر؟
 - I think he only said this because he did not want Silver to know he was worried about Jim. This would have given Silver more power to negotiate with him.
 - أعتقد أنه قال هذا فقط لأنه لم يكن يريد أن يعرف «سيلفر» أنه قلق بشأن «جيم». كان هذا من شأنه أن يمنح «سيلفر» المزيد من القوة في التفاوض معه.

13. Why do you think that Dr Livesy came to an agreement with Silver?

(SB)

- في اعتقادك، لماذا توصل الدكتور «ليفسي» إلى اتفاق مع «سيلفر»؟
- Silver was pleased because Dr Livesy could help the ill Pirates. Dr Livesy wanted Silver to trust him so that he could carry out his plan.
- كان «سيلفر» سعيداً لأن الدكتور «ليفسي» يمكنه مساعدة القراصنة المرضى، أراد الدكتور «ليفسي» أن يثق به «سيلفر» حتى يتمكن من تنفيذ خطته.

14. Why did Jim decide to stay with Silver, and not leave with Dr Livesy?

(SB)

- لماذا قرر «جيم» البقاء مع «سيلفر» وعدم المغادرة مع الدكتور «ليفسي»؟
- He knew that Silver trusted him so he perhaps thought it would be more useful staying with Silver.
- كان يعلم أن «سيلفر» يثق به، لذا ربما اعتقد أنه سيكون من المفيد البقاء مع «سيلفر».

B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students:

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. What did Silver plan to do with Jim?

(SB)

- ماذا خطط «سيلفر» أن يفعل مع «جيم»؟
- He planned to keep him safe so that they could help each other until they find the treasure.
- لقد خطط للحفاظ عليه آمناً حتى يتمكنوا من مساعدة بعضهم البعض حتى يعثروا على الكنز.

2. How could Silver convince the Pirates to let him be the Captain again?

(SB)

- كيف تمكن «سيلفر» أن يقنع القراصنة بالسماح له بأن يصبح القبطان مرة أخرى؟
- He showed them the map for the treasure.
- أظهر لهم خريطة الكنز.

3. What did Dr Livesy do when he found out that Jim lived with the gang?

(SB)

- ماذا فعل الدكتور «ليفسي» عندما اكتشف أن «جيم» يعيش مع العصابة؟
- He spoke to Jim, then he got Silver to promise he would look after Jim.
- تحدث إلى «جيم» ثم جعل «سيلفر» يعهده بأنه سيعتني بـ «جيم».

4. Why did Dr Livesy look after the ill Pirates?

(SB)

- لماذا اعتنى الدكتور «ليفسي» بالقراصنة المرضى؟
- He said he wanted them to be well so he could take them to England for trial.
- قال إنه يريد لهم أن يكونوا بخير حتى يتمكن من أخذهم إلى إنجلترا للمحاكمة.

5. The Pirates were angry to see Dr Livesy talking to Jim. What reassured them?

(SB)

- كان القراصنة غاضبين لرؤية الدكتور «ليفسي» يتحدث إلى «جيم». ما الذي طمأنهم؟
- Silver said that they might need Jim and the doctor's help to find the treasure.
- قال «سيلفر» إنهم قد يحتاجون إلى مساعدة «جيم» والطبيب للعثور على الكنز.

6. Why do the pirates choose to keep Silver as their captain? (SB)

لماذا يختار القراصنة الإبقاء على «سيلفر» كقائد لهم؟
لأنه لديه الخريطة.

- Because he has the map.

General Exercises on Chapter 11

1. Silver was a persuasive person. Do you agree? Why / Why not?
.....
2. "Third, you wouldn't let us follow them." Do you think Silver was right not to follow the men? Why / Why not?
.....
3. "I'm still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn't be." Do you think the speaker deserves to be the captain? Why / Why not?
.....
4. What do you think of Silver's punishment to George who led the mutiny?
.....
5. Although the pirates refused to keep Jim alive, Silver persuaded them. How do you think he did it?
.....
6. At first, Jim couldn't believe that Silver had Flint's real map. Why do you think Mr Trelawney gave it to him?
.....
7. "He would do and say anything to stay safe." Who does the speaker talk about?
.....
8. Jim was worried that Dr Livesy would think about him badly. Do you agree with Jim? Why / Why not?
.....
9. "Let me see your patients." Why do you think Dr Livesy didn't show any interest about Jim when he came into the fort?
.....
10. Dr Livesy proved to be an honest man. Discuss.
.....
11. "The boy will tell you how I saved him, too. If you help me, you will also help the boy stay safe." What can we infer from this quotation?
.....
12. "You've saved our lives many times on this journey," said the doctor. About whom was the doctor talking? How do you think he really did that?
.....



I VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

attach (ed) (v)	يربط - يوصل	hole (n)	حفرة - فتحة
before then (conj)	قبل ذلك الحين	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
blow - blew - blown (v)	تدفع - تهب	look (ed) (v)	يبدو
bottom (n)	قاع - أسفل	point (ed) (v)	يشير - يَصُوب
cave (n)	كهف	shout (ed) (n - v)	صرخة - يصرخ
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	skeleton (n)	هيكل عظمي
comfortable (adj)	مريح - مستريح	slow (ed) (v)	يَتَطَّئ
crazy (adj)	مجنون	smile (d) (v - n)	يتسمم - ابتسامة
destroy (ied) (v)	يحطم - يدمر	so that (conj)	لكي
dig - dug - dug (v)	يحفر	sound (ed) (v)	مثل
drink (n)	مشروب	spade (n)	جاروف
empty (ied) (v - adj.)	يَفْرَغ - فارغ	supplies (n)	المؤن
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	terrible (adj)	سيء - فظيع
find out (phr. - v)	يكشف	thief (n)	لص
ground (n)	الأرض	tired (adj)	مُتْعَب
heavy (adj)	صعب - شاق	useless (adj)	عديم الفائدة
hill (n)	تَلّ	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق

Words and their definitions

attach (v)	: to join one thing to another	يربط - يوصل
cave (n)	: a large hole in the side of a mountain	كهف
ground (n)	: the top part of the earth	الأرض
point (v)	: to move your finger in the direction of something to show it to someone	يشير - يَصُوب
skeleton (n)	: the bones of a whole animal or person	هيكل عظمي
smile (v)	: to have a happy expression on your face using your mouth	يتسمم - ابتسامة
useless (adj)	: not useful at all	عديم الفائدة

Collocations

be gone	يضيع	reach	the coast	يصل للساحل
give ... an advantage	يمنح ... ميزة	slow	... down	يَتَطَّئ
make a plan	يخطط	sound	like a person singing	كما لو كان شخصاً يغني
play a trick on	يخدع	think	of a plan	يفكر في خطة

II Text of Chapter 12

Jim Hawkins:

Silver went back to the pirates and said, "I've **found out**⁽¹⁾ that the doctor's men have the ship. I don't know where it is, but when we find the treasure, we'll find the ship. That will give us the advantage. We'll keep Jim with us **before then**⁽²⁾. When we go home, we can leave him on the island."



The pirates looked happy with this news, but it **worried**⁽³⁾ me. What was Silver really planning? When he found the treasure, was he going to help Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney or these **terrible**⁽⁴⁾ pirates? I did not know.

We all left the fort. The pirates were carrying **supplies**⁽⁵⁾, **spades**⁽⁶⁾ and their weapons. We then got into the small boats and looked at the map to see where we should go. We took the boats down a river, then we left them and walked through some tall trees. The pirates **attached**⁽⁷⁾ me to Silver with a rope **so that**⁽⁸⁾ I could not **escape**⁽⁹⁾, and we walked up a **hill**⁽¹⁰⁾.

We walked for many hours. It was very hot, but this side of the island was very beautiful, with many flowers and birds. Then we heard a **shout**⁽¹¹⁾. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face. It was the **skeleton**⁽¹²⁾ of a man lying on the ground.

"The skeleton is **pointing**⁽¹³⁾ north!" said Morgan.

"He is," said Silver. "I think this was one of Flint's games. He **killed**⁽¹⁴⁾ the man and put him there."

"Flint was a terrible man," said Morgan.

The pirates looked worried and when we continued, they were much quieter. Suddenly, we heard a voice singing from the trees in front of us.

"That **sounds**⁽¹⁵⁾ like Flint!" said George.

"Flint's dead," said Silver. "It is someone **playing a trick**⁽¹⁶⁾."

Then the voice called out, "McGraw, bring me a **drink**⁽¹⁷⁾, please!"

"That was what Flint said, just before he died!" said Morgan.

Now the pirates all looked very frightened.

"Listen men," said Silver. "There's a lot of treasure near here. I don't think that was Flint. I think it was Ben Gun."

(1) اِكتَشَفَ

(2) قَبْلَ ذَلِكَ الْوَقْتِ

(3) يَحْزِنُ

(4) رُفْسٌ - فُظِيحٌ

(5) الْمَوْنُ

(6) جَارُوفٌ

(7) يَرْبِطُ - يُوْضِلُ

(8) لِكِي

(9) يَهْرِبُ

(10) تَلٌّ

(11) صَرْخَةٌ - يَصْرُخُ

(12) هَيْكَلٌ عَظْمِي

(13) بَشِيرٌ - يُصَوِّبُ

(14) يَقْتُلُ

(15) صَوْتُهُ مِثْلُ

(16) بَخْذٌ

(17) مَشْرُوبٌ

"I thought he was dead, too, but I'm not frightened of him," said George. The pirates looked happier and continued walking, although Dick looked **tired**⁽¹⁸⁾ and ill.

Soon we saw a very tall tree. The tree was on our map and we knew that we were now close to the treasure. I could see that all the pirates were excited. Silver, too, **looked**⁽¹⁹⁾ different. His eyes looked **crazy**⁽²⁰⁾ and dangerous, and I thought he would do anything to go home safely with the treasure.

The pirates all ran to the **bottom**⁽²¹⁾ of the tree. George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry.

"Look!" he said.

We saw what he was pointing at. Near the bottom of the tree there was a big **hole**⁽²²⁾ in the **ground**⁽²³⁾. Someone had been there before us. The treasure **was gone**⁽²⁴⁾!

The pirates said nothing, but I could see that Silver was already **making a plan**⁽²⁵⁾.

"Take this, and be ready for trouble," he said quietly, and he gave me a gun.

Then the pirates all jumped into the hole and started **digging**⁽²⁶⁾ with their spades. Perhaps there was treasure still there. Morgan found a gold **coin**⁽²⁷⁾ and held it up for the others to see.

"One coin? You told us there was seven hundred thousand pounds here, Silver!" shouted George angrily. "You knew about this, didn't you?"

The pirates looked very angry. They climbed out of the other side of the hole, looking dirty and hot.

"Let's get them, men!" said George.

Suddenly, there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two of the pirates fell down and the other three started to run. We were safe!

Dr Livesy, Gray and Ben Gun came out from the trees.

"Thank you, doctor," said Silver. "You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!"

Ben Gun said hello to Silver, but I could see that he was frightened of him.

As we walked back to the boats, we heard how Ben Gun had helped us. Ben Gun had dug up the treasure and put it in a **cave**⁽²⁸⁾ in the north of the island before we arrived on the Hispaniola.

Ben Gun told all of this to Dr Livesy, when the doctor gave him some cheese. The doctor then thought of a plan. He gave the map to Silver

(18) متعب

(19) يبدو

(20) مجنون

(21) قاع - أسفل

(22) حفرة - فتحة

(23) الأرض

(24) يضيع

(25) يخطط

(26) يحفر

(27) عملة معدنية

(28) كهف



because he knew it was useless. Then he took his friends up to the cave, where Ben Gun had supplies as well as the treasure.

When he knew that Silver was taking me and the men to look for the treasure, the doctor came back with Ben Gun and Gray. To **slow**⁽²⁹⁾ the pirates down, Ben Gun sang a song to frighten them. This had given the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole.

After a few hours, we reached the coast again. Ben Gun helped Gray to **destroy**⁽³⁰⁾ one of the boats so that the other pirates could not use it. We took the other boat around the island.

After three miles, I was surprised to see the Hispaniola! The wind had **blown**⁽³¹⁾ it from the beach and it was sailing **empty**⁽³²⁾ on the sea.

We helped Gray to get onto the ship so that he could look after it, and we continued to the beach. We then climbed the hill to Ben Gun's cave, where Trelawney was looking after Captain Smollett.

"Silver," Trelawney said when he saw him.

"You are a pirate and a **thief**⁽³³⁾, but the doctor says that you have helped us. I must thank you."

Silver said nothing, but he **smiled**⁽³⁴⁾.

Inside the big cave, Captain Smollett was lying by a fire. Behind him, I could see lots of coins and gold. It was Flint's treasure.

The next morning, we began to take the treasure down the hill to the boat. It was **heavy**⁽³⁵⁾ work, and it took us days to move all the coins and gold.

We knew there were still three pirates on the island. We looked for them all the time, but we did not see them again. We decided to leave the island without them, but we left some food and medicine.

It was a difficult journey back on the Hispaniola because the crew was so small. Captain Smollett lay on his bed and told us what to do. After a few days, we reached a town in South America, where we went to find more people for our crew. When we returned to the Hispaniola later that day, Ben Gun told us that Silver had taken a boat and some money. He was gone, but nobody was sad about that.

With a bigger crew, it was easier to return to Bristol. The treasure helped us all back in England. Captain Smollett stopped working and Gray decided to buy his own ship. Ben Gun quickly spent all of his money.

I have a **comfortable**⁽³⁶⁾ life now. I often think about the island and Long John Silver, but I never saw him again.

(29) يَنْطِي

(30) يَحْطِمُ - يَدْمُر

(31) تَدْفِعُ - تَهْب

(32) فَارِغٌ - يُفْرَغُ

(33) لَص

(34) يَبْتَسِمُ - ابْتِسَامَةٌ

(35) صَعْبٌ - شَاقٌ

(36) مُرِيحٌ - مُسْتَرِيحٌ



III Main Points of Chapter 12

1. Silver tells the pirates that the doctor's men have the ship but he will find the treasure first then the ship. He will leave Jim on the island in the end. They are happy. Jim suspects Silver.
2. They go to find the treasure. They attach Jim to Silver with a rope in order not to escape. They see a skeleton of a man pointing north. The Pirates looked worried.
3. They heard a voice singing. The Pirates thought it was Flint. Silver thought it was Ben Gun.
4. They were excited when they saw a big tree. George saw a big hole near the bottom of the tree. Someone had been there before them.
5. Silver gave a gun to Jim and said "Be ready for trouble". They started digging but found only a gold coin.
6. Suddenly there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two pirates were killed. The other three escaped. Dr Livesy, Gray and Ben Gun saved Silver and Jim.
7. Ben Gun had found the treasure before and put it in a cave. Ben told the doctor who took his men to the cave where Ben had supplies and the treasure.
8. The doctor had given the map then to Silver as it was useless. He brought Gray and Ben to slow the pirates to give the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole.
9. They found the Hispaniola sailing empty on the sea. Gray was helped to get into it. Trelawney was looking after captain Smollett in the cave. They moved the treasure to the boat.
10. They looked for the three pirates but left without them. It was a difficult journey with a small crew. Silver escaped after taking some money and a boat when they reached South America. The treasure helped them all back in England.

IV Questions and Answers

A. Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers:

1. What do you think of Silver?

- ما رأيك في «سيلفر»؟

- I think he was an evil pirate. However, he was an intelligent negotiator.
- أعتقد أنه كان قرصاناً شريراً، ومع ذلك فقد كان مفاوضاً ذكياً.

2. If you were Jim, how would you feel while staying with the Pirates?

- لو كنت مكان «جيم»، ما هو شعورك أثناء إقامتك مع القراصنة؟

- I would be very frightened because they were all evil pirates.
- سأكون خائفاً جداً لأنهم جميعاً كانوا قرصنة أشرار.

3. "We heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face." Do you think this thing helped the Pirates and Jim? How?

(WB)

- «سمعنا صرخاً. كان «مورغان» ينظر إلى شيء ما بوجه خائف.» هل ساعد هذا الشيء القراصنة و «جيم»؟ كيف؟

- Yes, it pointed to where the treasure was buried.
- نعم، أشار إلى المكان الذي دُفن فيه الكنز.

4. Why do you think Morgan said, "Flint was a terrible man"?

(SB)

- في رأيك لماذا قال «مورغان»: «كان «فلينت» رجلاً فظيلاً؟

- They found the skeleton of a man. It was pointing north and they thought Flint did this to the man as a game. He was not a good man.
- لقد عثروا على هيكل عظمي لرجل. كان يشير إلى الشمال، واعتقدوا أن «فلينت» فعل هذا بالرجل على سبيل التسلية. فهو لم يكن رجلاً طيباً.

5. In your opinion, why did Ben Gun pretend to be Flint?

(SB)

- في رأيك لماذا تظاهر «بن غان» بأنه «فلينت»؟

- He wanted to frighten the Pirates and slow them down.
- أراد تخويف القراصنة وإبطائهم.

6. In your opinion, why do you think Silver gave Jim a gun?

(SB)

- برأيك، لماذا قام «سيلفر» بإعطاء «جيم» مسدساً؟

- He perhaps thought the Pirates would attack them because there was no treasure.
- ربما ظن أن القراصنة سيهاجمونهم لعدم وجود كنز.

7. Why did Dr Livesy give the map to Silver though it was the key to the treasure?

(SB)

- لماذا أعطى الدكتور «ليفسي» الخريطة لـ «سيلفر» رغم أنها مفتاح الكنز؟

- Because Dr Livesy knew that Ben Gun had the treasure, so the map was useless.
- لأن الدكتور «ليفسي» كان يعلم أن «بن غان» كان لديه الكنز، لذلك كانت الخريطة عديمة الفائدة.

8. Were you surprised when Ben Gun told Dr Livesy where to find the treasure? Why/ Why not? (SB)

- هل تفاجأت عندما أخبر «بن غان» الدكتور «ليفسي» بمكان العثور على الكنز؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

- No, because the treasure was useless on the island. Ben Gun can only use it if he leaves the island with Dr Livesy and his friends.

- لا، لأن الكنز كان عديم الفائدة في الجزيرة. لا يمكن لـ «بن غان» استخدامه إلا إذا غادر الجزيرة مع الدكتور «ليفسي» وأصدقائه.

9. Were you surprised when Silver escaped from the boat? Why? (SB)

- هل تفاجأت عندما هرب «سيلفر» من القارب؟ لماذا؟

- No, because Silver always looks after himself. He knew that he would go to trial if he returned to England.

- لا، لأن «سيلفر» يعتني بنفسه دائماً. كان يعلم أنه سيحاكم إذا عاد إلى إنجلترا.

B. Factual questions & Answers for Al Azhar students:

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1. "We heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face." What was the thing that frightened Morgan? (WB)

- «سمعنا صراخاً. كان «مورغان» ينظر إلى شيء ما بوجه خائف.» ما هو الشيء الذي أخاف «مورغان»؟

- It was a skeleton. إنه هيكل عظمي.

2. "George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry." What was the reason for George's cry? (WB)

- «كان «جورج» أمامهم لكنه توقف فجأة وهو يصرخ.» ما هو سبب صراخ «جورج»؟

- There was a hole in the ground where the treasure had been.

- كان هناك حفرة في الأرض حيث كان يوجد الكنز.

3. "George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry." What does it mean? What did Silver do to face it? (WB)

- «كان «جورج» أمامهم لكنه توقف فجأة وهو يصرخ.» ما الذي كان يعنيه ذلك؟ ماذا فعل «سيلفر» لمواجهة؟

- It means that someone had taken the treasure. Silver had a plan for this. He gave Jim a gun and told him to be ready for trouble.

- هذا يعني أن شخصاً ما قد أخذ الكنز. كان لدى «سيلفر» خطة لذلك. أعطى «جيم» مسدساً وأخبره أن يكون مستعداً للمتاعب.

4. How did Silver look when they were near the treasure? (SB)

- كيف كان يبدو «سيلفر» عندما كانوا بالقرب من الكنز؟

- His eyes looked crazy and dangerous. بدا في عينيه الجنون والخطورة.

5. "Thank you, doctor. You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!" Why does Silver thank Dr Livesy? (WB)

- «شكراً لك يا دكتور. لقد أنقذتنا. انظر، إنه «بن غان»! لماذا يشكر «سيلفر» الدكتور «ليفسي»؟
- Because Dr Livesy shoots the Pirates before they can hurt Silver.
- لأن الدكتور «ليفسي» أطلق النار على القراصنة قبل أن يتمكنوا من إيذاء «سيلفر».

6. "Thank you, doctor. You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!" How could Ben Gun help them? (WB)

- «شكراً لك يا دكتور. لقد أنقذتنا. انظر، إنه «بن غان»! كيف يمكن لـ «بن غان» مساعدتهم؟
- He dug up the treasure and put it in a cave. Then he frightened the Pirates to slow them down. Finally, he helped Gray to destroy the Pirates' boat.
- استخرج الكنز ووضعه في الكهف. ثم أخاف القراصنة لإبطائهم. وأخيراً، ساعد «جراي» في تدمير قارب القراصنة.

7. "Thank you, doctor. You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!" When did they last see Ben Gun? (WB)

- «شكراً لك يا دكتور. لقد أنقذتنا. انظر، إنه «بن غان»! متى رأوا «بن غان» لآخر مرة؟
- They last saw him in Bristol, in England.
- لقد رأوه آخر مرة في «بريستول»، في إنجلترا.

8. What did they want to do concerning the three pirates who escaped? (WB)

- ماذا كانوا يريدون أن يفعلوا فيما يخص القراصنة الثلاثة الذين هربوا؟
- They wanted to take them back to England for trial, but they couldn't find them and left them food and medicine. If they find them one day, they will probably want to send them for trial.
- أرادوا إعادتهم إلى إنجلترا للمحاكمة، لكنهم لم يتمكنوا من العثور عليهم وتركوا لهم الطعام والدواء. إذا عثروا عليهم يوماً ما، فمن المحتمل أن يرغبوا في إرسالهم للمحاكمة.

9. Why was the journey to South America difficult? (SB)

- لماذا كانت الرحلة إلى أمريكا الجنوبية صعبة؟
- Because they had a very small crew.
- لأن طاقمهم كان صغيراً جداً.

10. How did the story end for Jim? (SB)

- كيف انتهت القصة بالنسبة لـ «جيم»؟
- He had a comfortable life back in England.
- كان يتمتع بحياة مريحة في إنجلترا.

General Exercises on Chapter 12

1. Silver was an ambiguous غامض person. Do you agree with this? Why / Why not?

2. Why did Morgan shout during the journey to the treasure?
.....
3. Do you think Silver was afraid of the skeleton? Why / Why not?
.....
4. From the Pirates' point of view, their journey on the island looking for the treasure wasn't an easy one. To what extent do you agree with this sentence?
.....
5. Although the journey was long, it wasn't boring. Illustrate.
.....
6. Jim was very important for the pirates. How can you prove this?
.....
7. Although the pirates had the map and got to the place of the treasure, they couldn't get it. Why do you think that happened?
.....
8. "You knew about this, didn't you?" In your opinion, what did the speaker mean?
.....
9. If it hadn't been for the doctor and his friends, Silver and Jim would have been killed. Discuss.
.....
10. How do you think Dr Livesy and his friends got the treasure?
.....
11. Why do you think the journey back home was a difficult one?
.....
12. Silver proved to be a thief at the end of the novel. Do you agree? Why / Why not?
.....

⊛ Answer the following questions:

A. 1. Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the Pirates' questions?

.....

2. To what extent was Jim successful in his adventure on the Hispaniola?

.....

3. In what way can Hands help Jim?

.....

B. 1. If you were one of the Pirates, would you go into the fort? Why/Why not?

.....

2. Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy?

.....

3. In your opinion, why did Ben Gun pretend to be Flint?

.....

C. 1. Doctor Livesey proved to be generous. Show how.

.....

2. Why do you think Captain Smollett said, "I know that we can win" after the fight?

.....

3. If you were Jim, would you sail to the Hispaniola on your own?

.....

1) **A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What did Silver plan to do with Jim?

.....

2. Why did Jim think the guards were not good?

.....

3. Why do you think that Dr Livesy came to an agreement with Silver?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The rope to the anchor was so it was strong.

a. thin b. thick c. soft d. long

2. Captain Smollet didn't trust Silver because he was a/an man.

a. clever b. honest c. good d. dishonest

3. When you are , you're unable to move or escape from a place.

a. alive b. fine c. trapped d. free

2) **A. Answer the following questions:**

1. How did Silver look when they were near the treasure?

.....

2. Why does Hands call Jim 'Captain Hawkins'?

.....

3. Silver tried to mislead Jim concerning his friends. Explain how.

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Dr Livesy said "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit

....."

a. sensible b. obstinate c. sensitive d. crazy

2. Some pirates came to the fort with a white flag and wanted a

a. war b. battle c. truce d. truth

3. Silver wanted the to the treasure and he'll leave them safely.

a. mop b. map c. tap d. tape

Answers of Advanced level

Unit (7)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. I saw some people asleep
2. b. research 3. c. bacterium
4. b. burn 5. c. cleaners

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. It is banned
2. a. am forbidden from
3. c. must
4. c. should have arrived
5. b. should have been written

Unit (8)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. click 2. c. vehicle
3. d. quizzing 4. a. invented
5. c. applies

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. is 2. b. were asked
3. d. needed 4. c. to study
5. b. unless

Unit (9)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. b & c
2. c. school 3. d. bullied
4. b. orphan 5. a. include

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. On 2. d. had had
3. d. chose 4. b. went

Unit (10)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. construction 2. d. Industrious
3. c. meet 4. c. apply
5. d. Reliance

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. whether 2. b. didn't use
3. b. had stayed 4. b. did he turn
5. c. returned

Unit (11)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. as well as 2. b. is
3. c. their 4. a. are
5. d. for

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. sent to 2. c. where
3. d. whose 4. d. whose

Unit (12)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. plot 2. d. pace
3. a. woven 4. b. plotted
5. c. at

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. must
2. c. couldn't have
3. a. can't
4. d. can't
5. b. could

New Hello! & Treasure Island

In this book ...

- A detailed explanation for each unit divided into lessons (Vocabulary, Structures & Language skills).
- Exercises on each two lessons (Vocabulary, Structures & Language skills).
- A sample test on each unit.
- Treasure Island.



FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE

1st
Sec.
2024
SECOND TERM

NOW

El-Moasser in Math & French
for Secondary Stage

يُصرف مجاناً مع هذا الكتاب
ملحق Question Bank



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com

15014



/ElMoasser.eg



6 223007 311373